



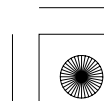
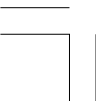
---

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all versions. Therefore, you may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.





## Introduction

Congratulations! Your selection was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several other booklets explain the warranties that protect your new vehicle. Read the Service Book/warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the service reminder shown in the instrument panel or the schedules given in this manual or the Service Book helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

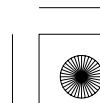
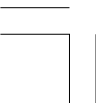
Best wishes and happy motoring.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

(On German type)

1. Mounting the front licence plate:  
Mount the front licence plate to the provided holder taking care that the upper edge of the licence plate does not project above the upper surface of the bumper.
2. Mounting the rear licence plate:  
Mount the rear licence plate to the back of the vehicle so that its lower edge is flush with the lower end of the surface provided for mounting.





## Introduction

---

### **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

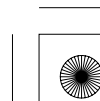
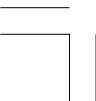
This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

### **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.






## A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

**You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.**

 **WARNING**

**You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.**

 **CAUTION**

**You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.**

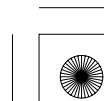
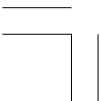
- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.





10/10/25 18:29:12 32TF0630\_005





## Contents

Turn to the beginning of each section for a complete list of subjects.

### **Your Vehicle at a Glance..... 2**

#### **Driver and Passenger Safety..... 7**

Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.

#### **Instruments and Controls ..... 77**

Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator, message and symbol on the multi-information display, gauge, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.

#### **Features..... 181**

How to operate the heating and air conditioning system/climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.

### **Before Driving ..... 257**

What petrol to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.

#### **Driving..... 271**

The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park; plus what you need to know if you're planning to tow a trailer.

### **Maintenance ..... 305**

The service reminder system or maintenance schedule shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer for maintenance service. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.

### **Appearance Care ..... 375**

Tips on cleaning and protecting your vehicle.

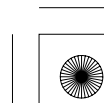
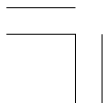
#### **Taking Care of the Unexpected ..... 383**

This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.

### **Technical Information..... 431**

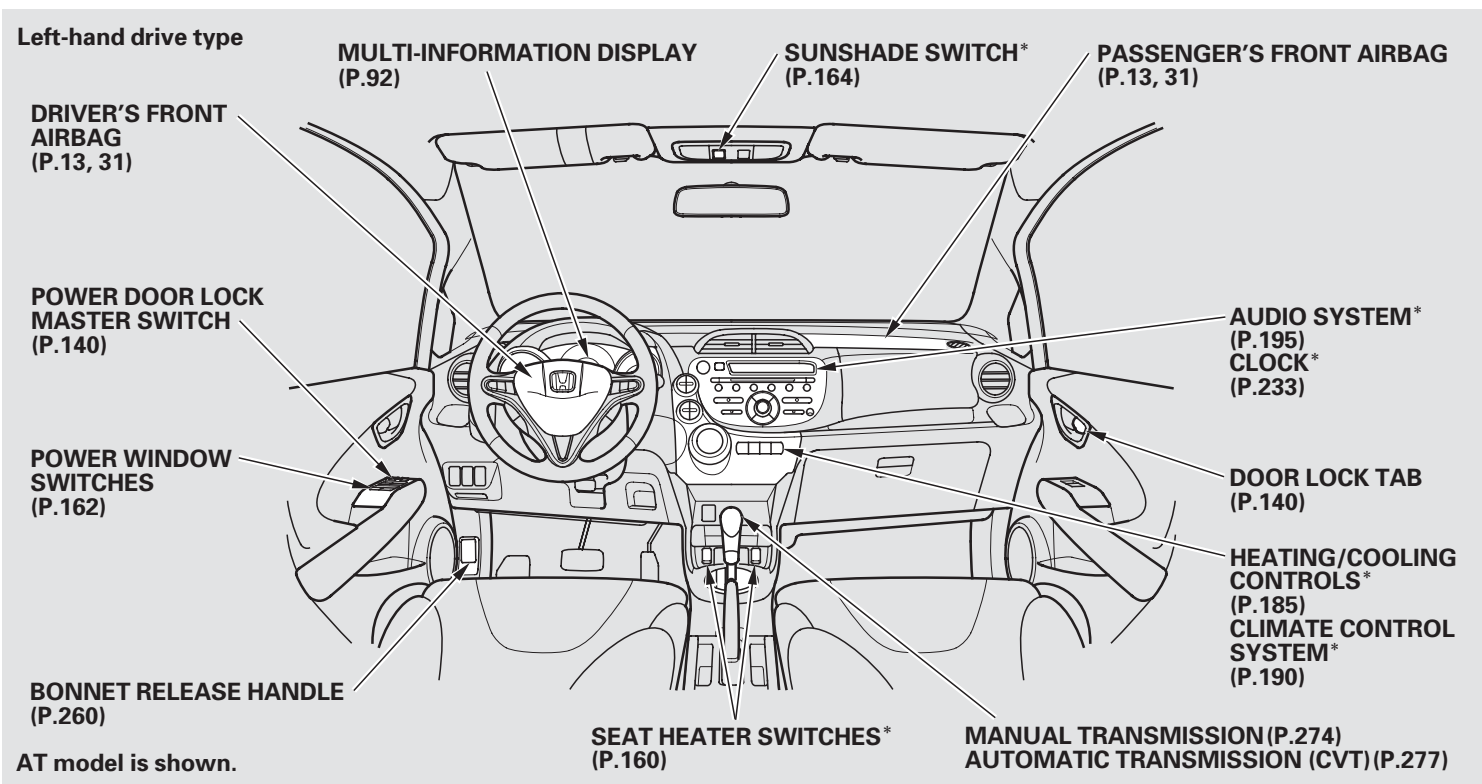
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.

### **Index ..... 439**

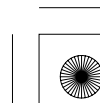
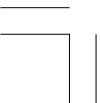




## Your Vehicle at a Glance

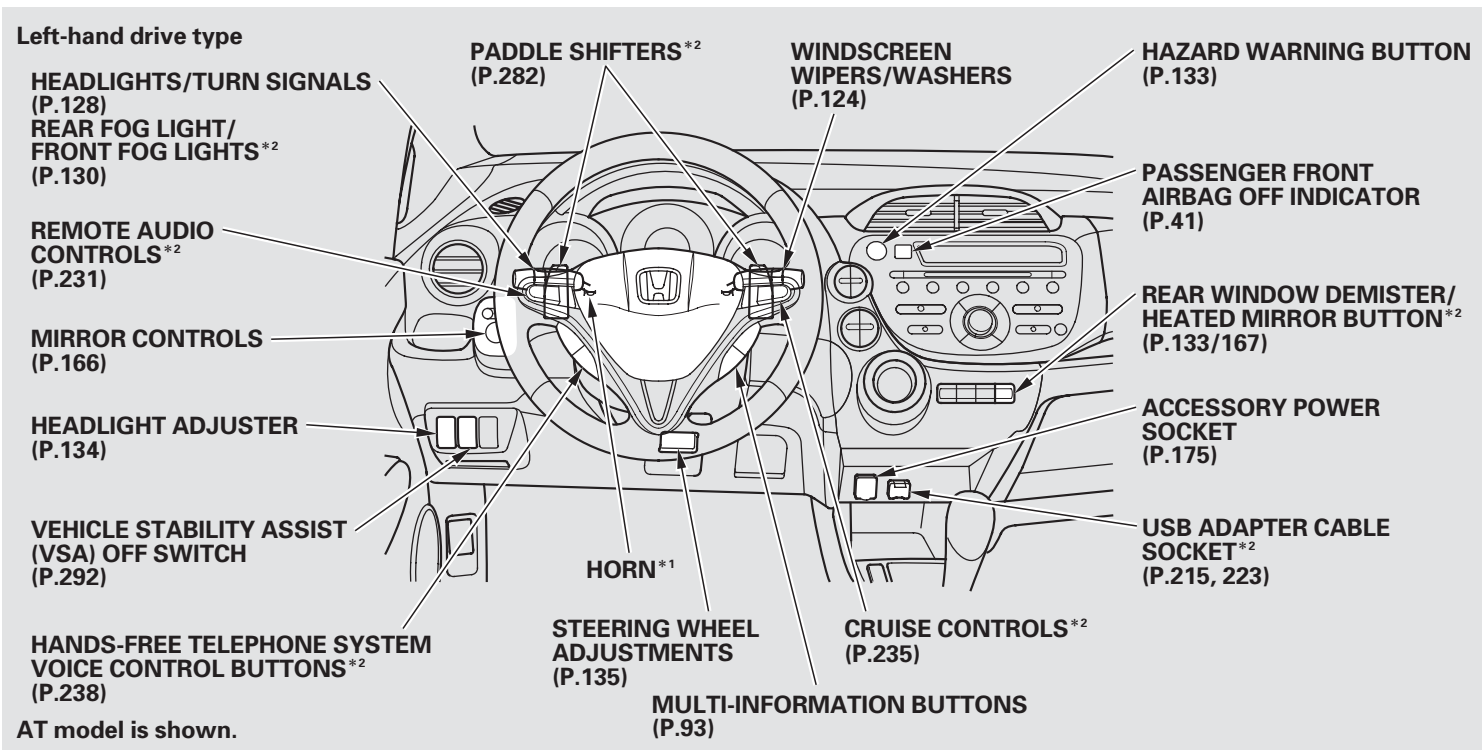


\* : If equipped



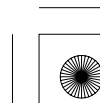
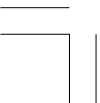


## Your Vehicle at a Glance



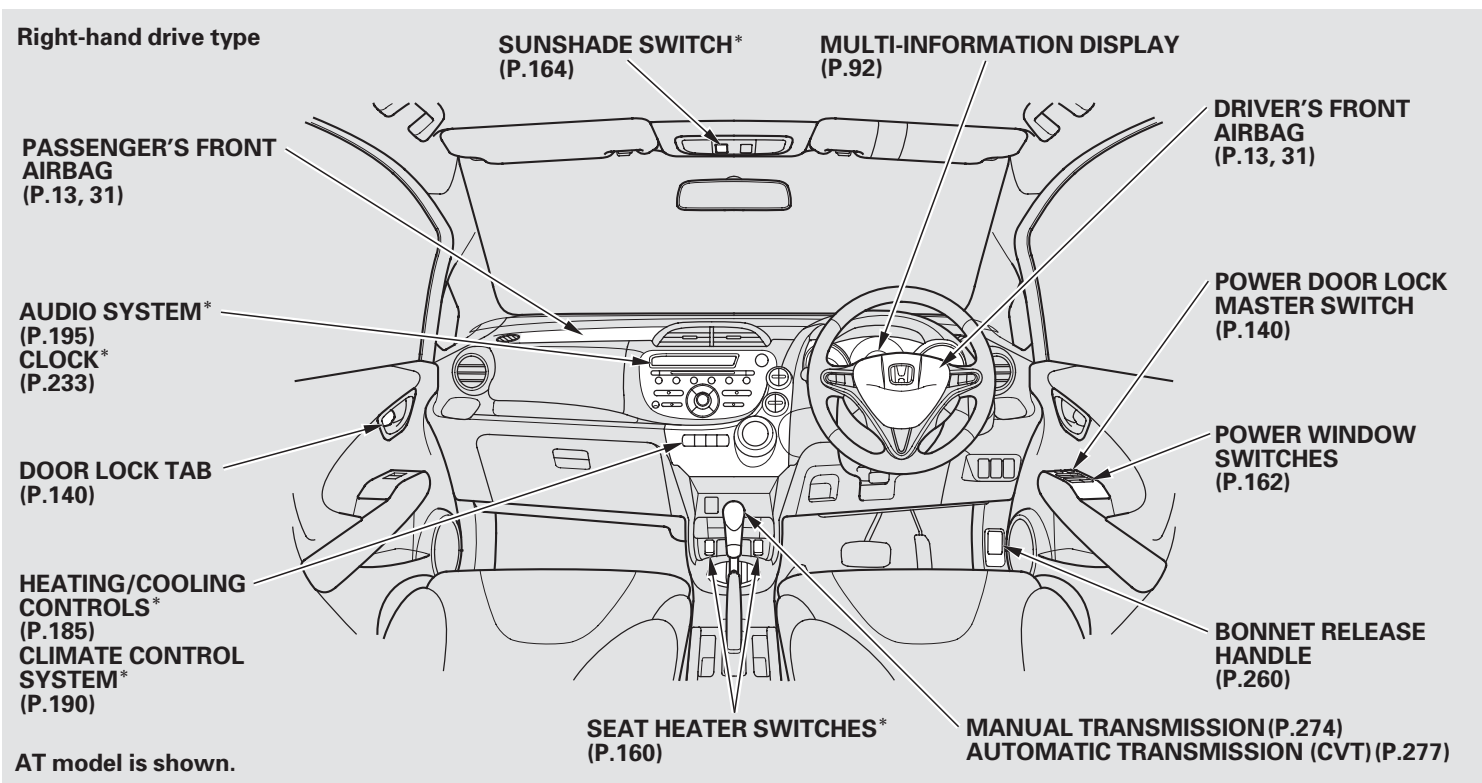
\*1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

\*2 : If equipped

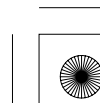
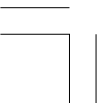




## Your Vehicle at a Glance

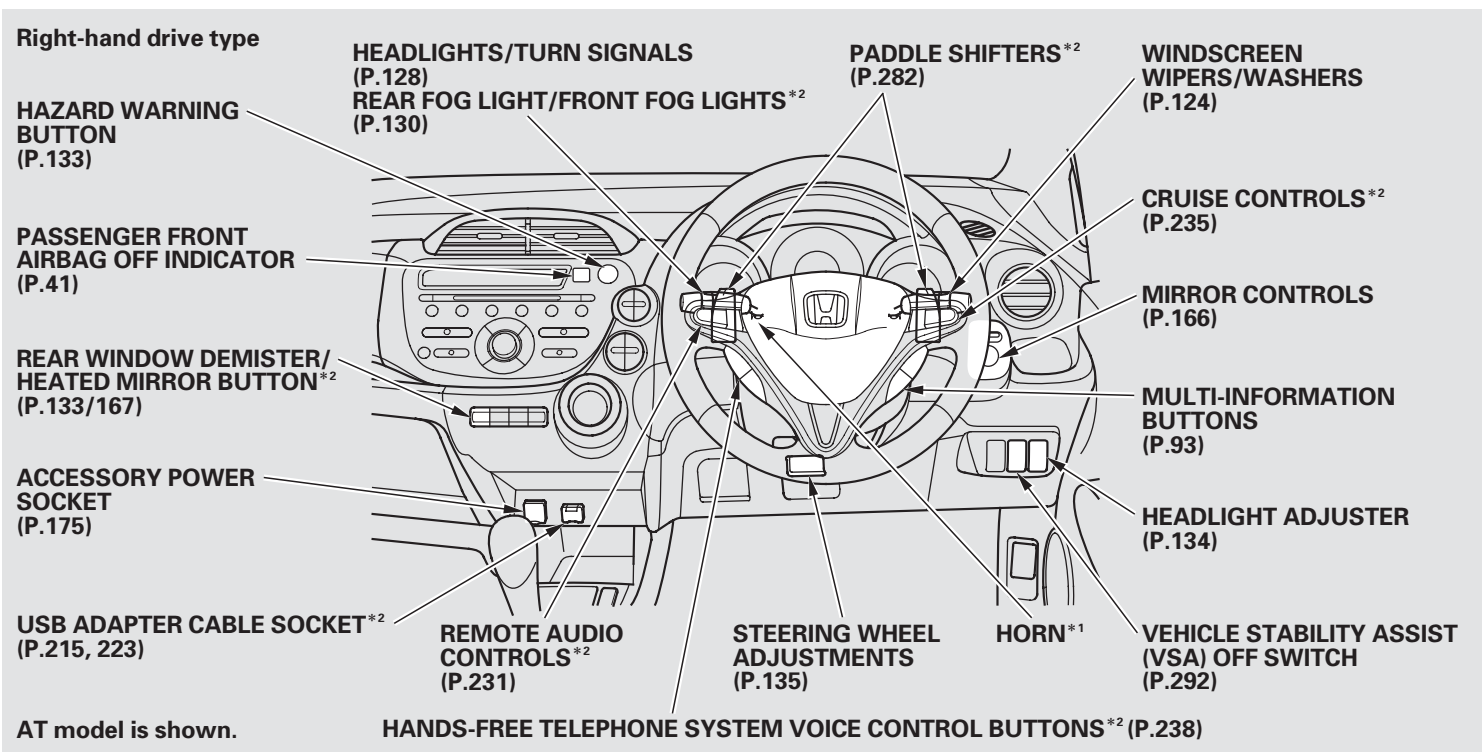


\* : If equipped



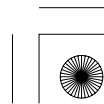
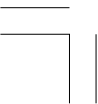


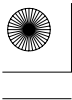
## Your Vehicle at a Glance



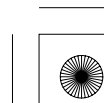
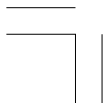
\*1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

\*2 : If equipped





10/10/25 18:29:56 32TF0630\_011





## Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions .....	8
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	10
Seat Belts .....	11
Airbags .....	13
Protecting Adults and Teens.....	15
1. Close the Doors .....	15
2. Adjust the Front Seats .....	16
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs .....	17
4. Adjust the Head Restraints ....	17
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts .....	18
6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position .....	20
Advice for Pregnant Women.....	21
Additional Safety Precautions....	21
Additional Information About Your	
Seat Belts .....	23
Seat Belt System Components...	23

Lap/Shoulder Belt .....	26
Automatic Seat Belt	
Tensioners .....	27
Seat Belt Maintenance .....	28
Additional Information About	
Your Airbags .....	30
Airbag System Components.....	30
How Your Front Airbags Work.....	31
Passenger Front Airbag Off	
System.....	33
How Your Side Airbags Work....	38
How Your Side Curtain	
Airbags Work.....	39
How the SRS Indicator Works... ..	40
Passenger Front Airbag Off	
Indicator.....	41
Airbag Service .....	41
Additional Safety Precautions....	42
Protecting Children — General	
Guidelines .....	43
All Children Must Be	
Restrained .....	43
All Children Should Sit in a	
Back Seat .....	44
The Passenger's Front Airbag	
Poses Serious Risks.....	44

The Side Airbag Poses Serious	
Risks .....	47
If You Must Drive with Several	
Children .....	48
If a Child Requires Close	
Attention .....	48
Additional Safety Precautions....	48
Protecting Infants and Small Children...	50
Protecting Infants .....	50
Protecting Small Children .....	52
Selecting a Child Restraint	
System.....	54
Installing a Child Restraint System .....	56
Child Restraint System for EU	
Countries .....	57
With the Lower Anchorages .....	59
With a Lap/Shoulder Belt .....	62
With a Tether .....	67
Protecting Larger Children .....	69
Checking Seat Belt Fit .....	69
Using a Booster Seat.....	70
When Can a Larger Child Sit in	
Front.....	71
Additional Safety Precautions....	72
Carbon Monoxide Hazard .....	73
Safety Labels .....	74





## Important Safety Precautions

---

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

### **Always Wear Your Seat Belt**

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 18).

### **Restrain All Children**

Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 43 – 72).

### **Be Aware of Airbag Hazards**

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ***Passenger Front Airbag Off System***

Turn off the passenger front airbag system by using your vehicle's ignition key, if it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat. Make sure to turn the system back on after you remove the rearward facing child restraint system (see page 33).





## Important Safety Precautions

### **Don't Drink and Drive**

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### **Pay Appropriate Attention to the Task of Driving Safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert attention away from driving.

### **Control Your Speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

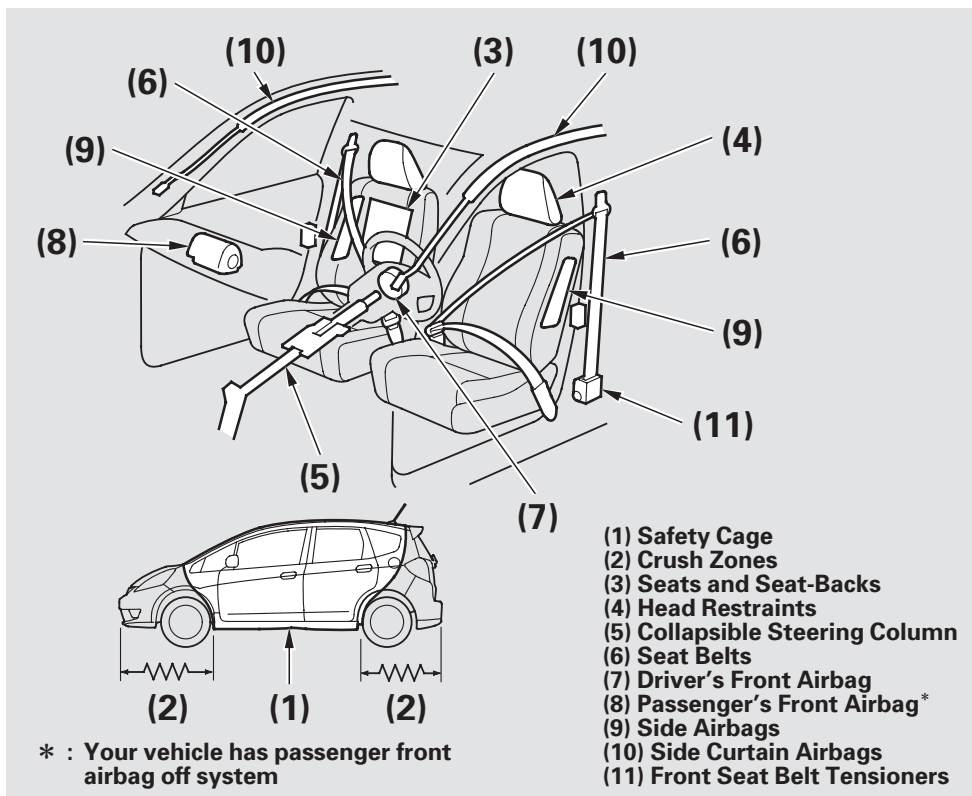
### **Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see the Service Book that came with your vehicle, and see page 319 on vehicles without Service Book).





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



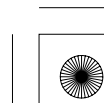
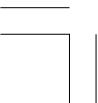
Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in the correct position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### 10 Driver and Passenger Safety





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

### Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

### *Why Wear Seat Belts*

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child restraint systems.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In most European Countries there is a law covering the use of seat belts. Please take time to familiarize yourself with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
  - frontal impacts
  - side impacts
  - rear impacts
  - rollovers
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

*CONTINUED*





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

---

Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

***What You Should Do:***

Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

**WARNING:**

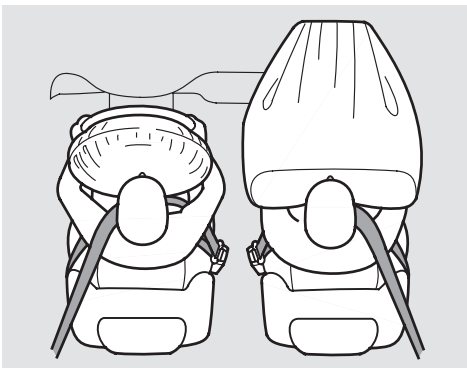
- *Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.*
- *Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.*
- *Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.*
- *Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.*





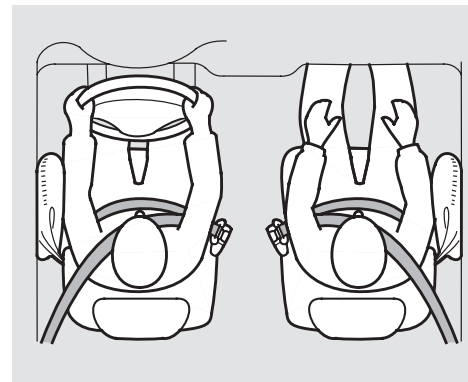
## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

### Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 31 for more information on how your front airbags work).

***Passenger Front Airbag Off System***  
Turn off the passenger front airbag system, if it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat (see page 33).



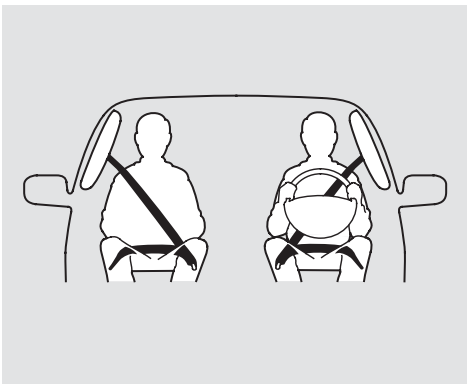
Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 38 for more information on how your side airbags work).

CONTINUED





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side or front impact (see page 39 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear collisions, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

***What you should do:*** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.





## Protecting Adults and Teens

### Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers, and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front.

See pages 43 — 72 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

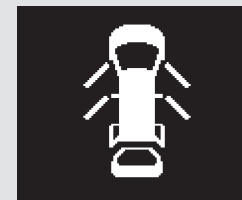
### 1. Close the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors and the tailgate are closed.



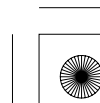
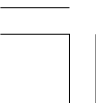
Your vehicle has a door and tailgate open indicator on the instrument panel to indicate when any door or the tailgate is not tightly closed.

See page 83 for how the door and tailgate open indicator works.



**This shows all doors and the tailgate open.**

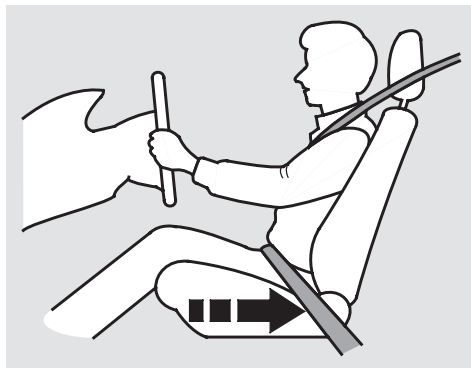
Your vehicle has a door and tailgate open indicator on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the tailgate is not tightly closed.





## Protecting Adults and Teens

### 2.Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.

In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, and in and out on some types (see page 135 ).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

**Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.**

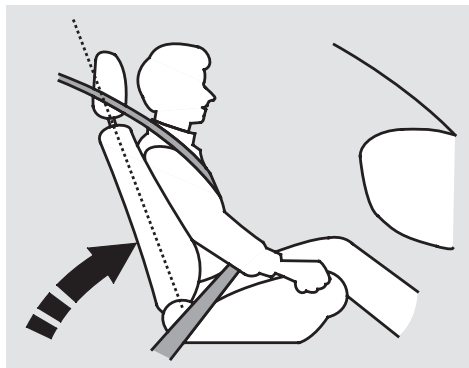
Once your seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked into position. See page 149 for how to adjust the front seats.





## Protecting Adults and Teens

### 3. Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

### **⚠ WARNING**

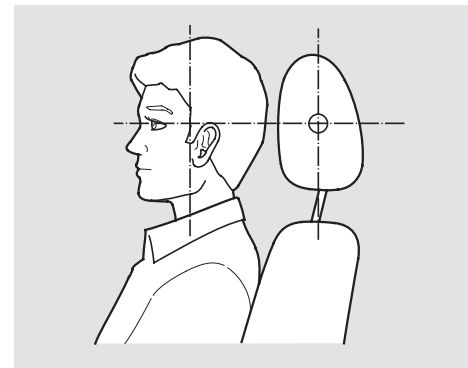
**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 149 for how to adjust the seat-backs.

### 4. Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the centre of the back of your head rests against the centre of the restraint.

Have passengers with adjustable head restraints adjust their restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

*CONTINUED*





## Protecting Adults and Teens

When a passenger is seated in the rear seating position, make sure the rear head restraint is adjusted to its highest position.

### **WARNING**

**Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.**

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 151 for how to adjust the head restraints and how the driver's and front passenger's active head restraints work.

### **5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts**

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

The seat belt in the centre position of the back seat can be unlatched and retracted to allow the back seat to be folded up or down. This seat belt should be latched whenever the seat-back is in an upright position. See page 158 for how to unlatch and relatch the seat belt.





## Protecting Adults and Teens



Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

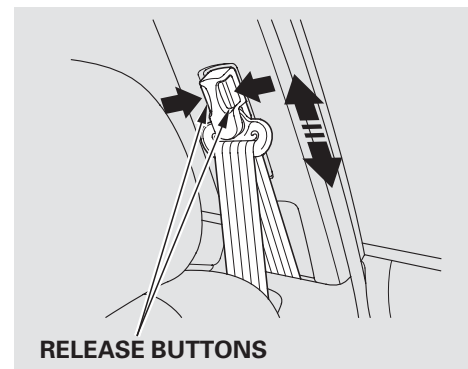
This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.**

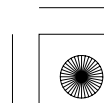
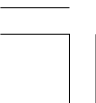
**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, squeeze the two release buttons, and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

*CONTINUED*





## Protecting Adults and Teens

***Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.*** This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work as it should, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

***No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt.*** Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 23 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

### 6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

If a front passenger leans sideways and his head is in the deployment path of the side airbag, an inflating side airbag can strike the passenger with enough force to very seriously injure him.

#### **WARNING**

**Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.**





## Protecting Adults and Teens

### Advice for Pregnant Women



If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never let passengers ride in the luggage area or on top of a folded-down back seat.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Two people should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on seat belts.*** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

CONTINUED





## Protecting Adults and Teens

---

- ***Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.*** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- ***Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.*** Objects on the covers marked “SRS AIRBAG” could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- ***Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.*** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbag inflates.
- ***Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.*** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- ***Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook.*** This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbags inflate.
- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.
- ***When a rearward facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat, make sure the passenger front airbag system is on (see page 33).*** To see whether the system is on, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Check if the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on for several seconds, and then goes out.





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

### Seat Belt System Components

Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all five seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.



This system monitors the seat belts in all seating positions.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

You will also see a symbol “” (for a driver)/“” (for a front passenger), or a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message with a symbol on the multi-information display to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

*CONTINUED*





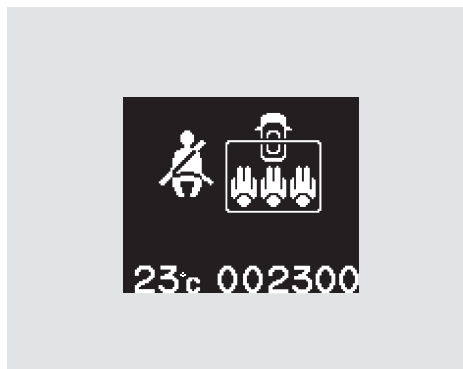
## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

The front passenger's seat belt use monitoring system uses the occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat. The system may not work properly under these conditions:

- You place heavy items on the front passenger's seat.
- You place a cushion on the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger does not sit properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when there is no front passenger or there are no objects on the front seat.

### *Rear Seat Belt Use Monitor*



The seat belt system also monitors the seat belt use of all three rear seating positions according to the activation of each seat belt retractor.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the multi-information display shows the rear seat belt use by pressing the INFO button (i) repeatedly.

The current display will be interrupted and the rear seat belt monitor will also be displayed on the multi-information display if either rear door is opened and closed, or any of the rear passengers latches their seat belt.

This monitor goes off after about 30 seconds. It will also go off when you change the display by pressing the INFO button (i) on the steering wheel.





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts



23°C 002300

Seat belts in right and centre positions are used.

The system shows you how many rear seat belts are being used and reminds you and your passengers to fasten their seat belts. According to the rear seat belt use (1 through 3), you will see the indicator(s) highlighted on the multi-information display.

### ⚠ WARNING

The rear seat belt monitor system judges the use of the rear seat belt based on the amount of seat belt pulled out from the retractor. It is not an indicator to show that the rear seat belt is actually latched. Correct latching of the seat belts should be confirmed whenever the indicator shows a rear seat belt is in use.

While driving, you can also confirm the rear seat belt use. Press and release the INFO button (i) repeatedly to change the display.



23°C 002300

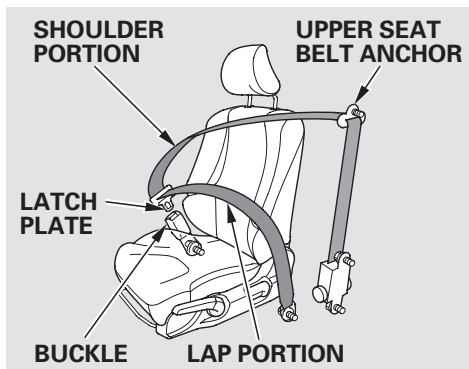
If the system cannot detect the seat belt use, you will see three dashes. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position to reset the system. If this happens repeatedly, have your vehicle checked by your dealer.





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

### Lap/Shoulder Belt



The lap and shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 18 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, push the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

### **⚠ WARNING**

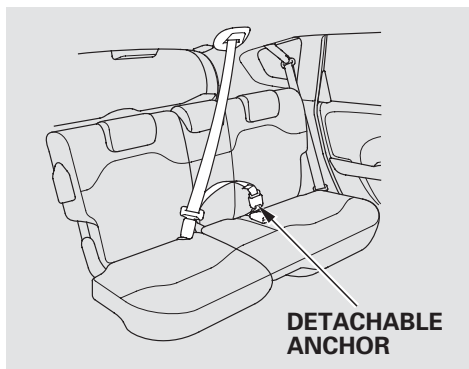
**Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.**

**Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.**





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts



The lap/shoulder belt in the centre seating position on the rear seat is equipped with a detachable seat belt that has two parts: a small latch plate and an anchor buckle.

The detachable seat belt should normally be latched whenever the seat-backs are in an upright position. For more information about the detachable seat belt, see page 158 .

### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to deploy.

The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not deploy*. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the extra tension in the seat belt could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.



The SRS indicator will come on if there is a problem with your automatic seat belt tensioners (see page 40 ).





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

---

### Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 381 ). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** *No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.*

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by your dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

**WARNING:** *It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.*

**WARNING:** *Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.*





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

### **⚠ WARNING**

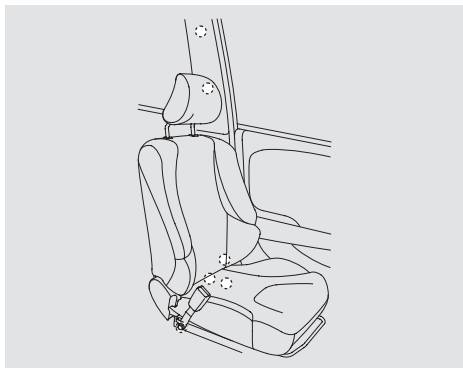
**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

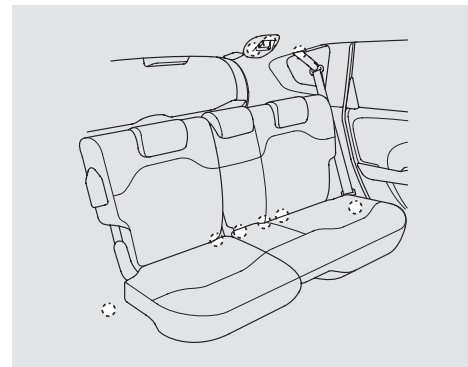
### ***Anchorage Points***

When replacing the seat belts, make certain to use the anchorage points shown in the illustrations.

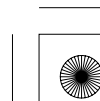
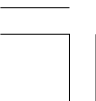
(Front Seat)



(Rear Seat)



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts. The centre seating position on the rear seat has a detachable seat belt.





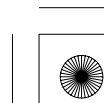
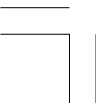
## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

### Airbag System Components

Your airbag system includes:

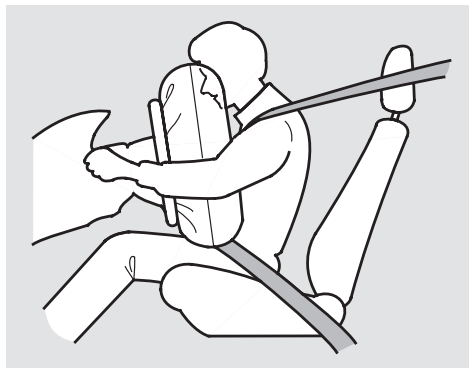
- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 31 ).
- The passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch is located on the side panel of the front passenger-side instrument panel (see page 34 ).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 38 ).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling above the side windows. The front and rear pillars on both sides are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 39 ).
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 27 ).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact or side impact.
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and the front passenger's seat belt are latched or unlatched (see page 23 ).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners (see page 40 ).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that reminds you when the passenger front airbag is off.
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

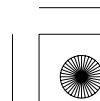
If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the driver's and front passenger's front airbags, and activate the automatic seat belt tensioners.

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, while the tensioner tightens and locks the seat belt to help keep you in place, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

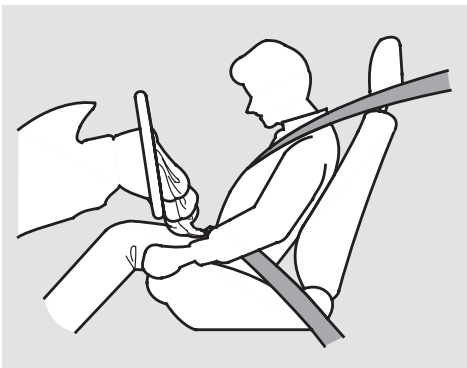
*CONTINUED*





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---



After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### ***Passenger Front Airbag Off System***

Although Honda does not recommend to have an infant ride in front, if it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually turn off the passenger front airbag system using the ignition key. This will help protect an infant in the rearward facing child restraint system from an impact created by an inflating front airbag (see page 33).





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

Make sure to turn the system back on when you remove the rearward facing child restraint system after use.

### **WARNING**

**The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat. If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.**

### **WARNING**

**Make sure that the passenger front airbag off indicator goes off to activate the passenger front airbag system when a rearward facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat. Deactivating the passenger front airbag system can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

### **Passenger Front Airbag Off System**

Although Honda does not recommend to have an infant ride in front, if it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

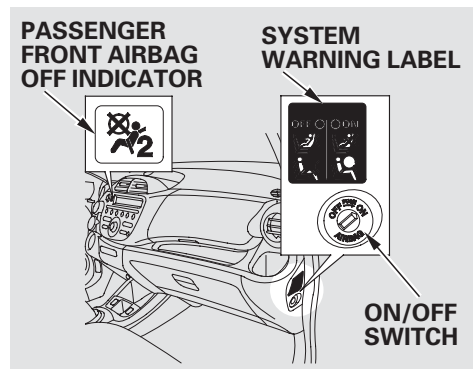
*CONTINUED*





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### *Passenger Front Airbag Off System Components*



The passenger front airbag off system includes:

- The passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger-side instrument panel.

- The passenger front airbag off indicator is located near the centre of the instrument panel. This indicator reminds you when the passenger front airbag system is off.
- The SRS indicator comes on if there is a malfunction in the passenger front airbag. The malfunction is also indicated on the multi-information display.

### *How to deactivate the passenger front airbag system*

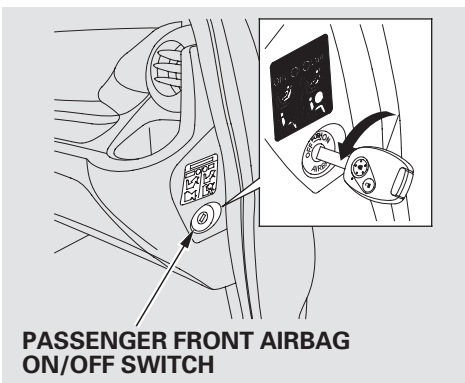
To turn the passenger front airbag system off:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position and remove the key.
3. Open the front passenger's door.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags



4. Insert the ignition key to the passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch located on the side panel of the instrument panel. Turn the key from the "ON" to the "OFF" position anticlockwise, then remove the key. When the key is removed from the switch, the passenger front airbag system is deactivated.

**OFF** — When the switch is in this position, it means the passenger front airbag system is deactivated. In this condition, when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the passenger front airbag off indicator in the instrument panel should remain on. However, it is possible that the indicator may come on for several seconds, go off, and then come back on. It should then remain on.

**ON** — When the switch is in this position, it means the passenger front airbag system is activated. When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the passenger front airbag off indicator will come on for several seconds, and then go out.

5. Remove the ignition key from the switch before you close the door.
6. Check if the passenger front airbag off indicator located near the centre of the instrument panel stays on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Or, check if the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on, and then goes out in a short period of time, and then comes back shortly and stays on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

*CONTINUED*



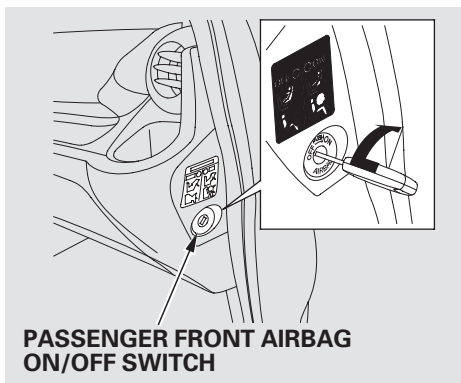


## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### ***How to activate the passenger front airbag system***

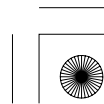
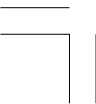
To turn the passenger front airbag system on:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position and remove the key.
3. Open the front passenger's door.



4. Insert the ignition key to the passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch located on the side panel of the instrument panel. Push the key into the switch, then let go of the key from the "OFF" to the "ON" position, and remove the key. When the key is removed from the switch, the passenger front airbag system is activated.

5. Remove the ignition key from the switch before you close the door.
6. Check if the passenger front airbag off indicator located near the centre of the instrument panel comes on for several seconds then goes out when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### ***Precautions for deactivating the passenger front airbag system:***

- Do not use a key other than your vehicle's ignition key to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to "ON" or "OFF". If you use a key other than your vehicle's ignition key, the passenger airbag ON/OFF switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly. Also, with an inappropriate key, you may not be able to switch the setting of the passenger front airbag system back to "ON" or "OFF".
- Do not close the door or apply excessive load on the ignition key while the key is in the passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch. The switch or the ignition key can get damaged.

- It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to "OFF" when you put a rearward facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat. If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.**

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure that the passenger front airbag off indicator goes off to activate the passenger front airbag system when a rearward facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat. Deactivating the passenger front airbag system can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

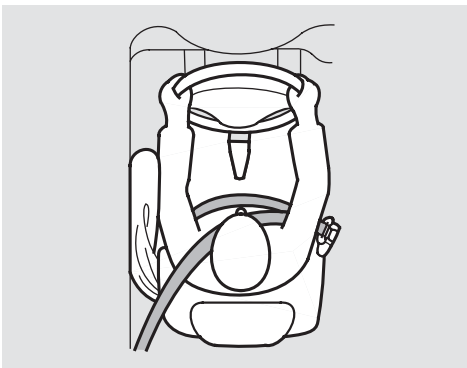




## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

### How Your Side Airbags Work

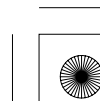
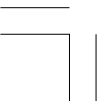


If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

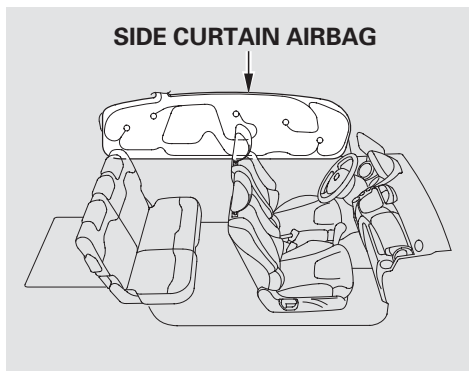
If a front seat passenger leans sideways and his head is in the deployment path of the side airbag, he can be seriously injured by an inflating side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a child. For the information of the side airbags hazards, see pages 47 and 69.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work

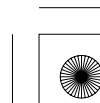
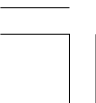


In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag on the driver's or the passenger's side of the vehicle.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate to severe frontal collision which causes the front airbags to deploy.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags




### How the SRS Indicator Works

The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags, sensors, seat belt tensioners, or passenger front airbag off system.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on for several seconds then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

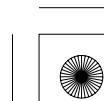
You will also see the symbol “” or the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

### **WARNING**

**Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.**

**Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.**





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### **WARNING**

**Remove the rearward facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.**

**The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.**



### **Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator**

This indicator is located next to the audio display. It comes on for several seconds to check the system when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If the passenger front airbag system is active, the indicator will come on for several seconds, and then will go off after the system checkup. If the passenger front airbag system is inactive, the indicator should remain on after the system checkup, or it may come on for several seconds, go off for a short period of time after the system checkup, and then come back on. It should then remain on.

### **Airbag Service**

Your airbag systems and automatic seat belt tensioners are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- ***An airbag ever inflates.*** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.

Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by your dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.

- ***The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.*** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly. *CONTINUED*





## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

Handling is allowed by trained personnel only. It is prohibited to remove the airbag unit/belt-tensioner from the vehicle. In case of malfunction, shutdown or after airbag inflation/belt-tensioner operation you have to ask a qualified shop for repair or removal.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.*** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- ***Do not tamper with airbag and automatic seat belt tensioner components or wiring for any reason.*** Tampering could cause the airbags and automatic seat belt tensioners to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.
- ***Do not expose the front seat-backs to liquid.*** If water or another liquid soaks into the seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag system from working properly.





## Protecting Children – General Guidelines



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

### All Children Must Be Restrained

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle collisions are the number one cause of the death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

***Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle*** (see pages 50 – 68 ).

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.**

**Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.**

***Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly*** (see pages 69 – 72 ).

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children — General Guidelines

---

In most countries, child restraint systems must meet the specifications of the ECE 44 regulation.

In many countries, the law requires children younger than 12 years of age and less than 150 cm (60 in) in height to be secured in an officially approved and suitable child restraint system. In those countries, officially approved and suitable child restraint systems must therefore be used in order to transport a child on any passenger seat whatsoever. Please check your local legal requirements.

### **All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat**

According to crash statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat. It is recommended that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

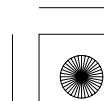
Children who ride in back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating airbag when they ride in the back.

### **The Passenger's Front Airbag Poses Serious Risks**

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

#### ***Infants***

***Never put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag.*** If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child restraint system with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.





## Protecting Children – General Guidelines

As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;



If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with great force. The rearward facing child restraint system can be dislodged or struck with enough force to cause very serious injury to the infant.

We strongly recommend to put a rearward facing child restraint system in a rear seating position. If it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you should turn the passenger front airbag system off. In addition, make sure to turn the system back on after you remove the rearward facing child restraint system.

### ***Small Children***

***Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

### ***Larger Children***

***Children who have outgrown child restraint systems are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag.*** Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 69 for important information about protecting larger children).

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children — General Guidelines

In all cases observe the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has the warning label on the front passenger's sun visor. Your vehicle also has the warning label for the passenger front airbag off system at the side panel on the front passenger-side instrument panel. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

### Front Passenger's Sun Visor



### Passenger-side Instrument Panel *Passenger Front Airbag Off System*





## Protecting Children — General Guidelines

### The Side Airbag Poses Serious Risks

Side airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe side impact.

If any part of a child's body is in the path of a deploying airbag, an inflating side airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a child.

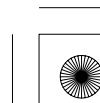
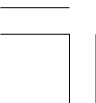
To remind you of the side airbags hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in the back seat, your vehicle has the warning label on each front doorjamb.

### **WARNING**



**Leaning over the front door can result in serious injury or death if the side airbag inflates.**

**Always sit upright with their back against the seat-back.**





## Protecting Children – General Guidelines

---

### If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has a back seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 69 ).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 16 ).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 20 ).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 18 ).

### If a Child Requires Close Attention

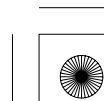
Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision or a side impact, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in the back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- ***Never let two children use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.





## Protecting Children — General Guidelines

- ***Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.*** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in some countries, and can be very hazardous.

For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

- ***Lock all doors and the tailgate when your vehicle is not in use.*** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles.

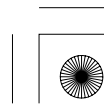
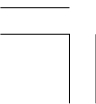
- ***Use the childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the rear doors.*** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 142 ).

- ***WARNING: Use the main power window switch to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver (see page 162 ).***

- ***Keep vehicle keys and remote transmitters out of the reach of children.*** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the tailgate, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

**WARNING:** *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*

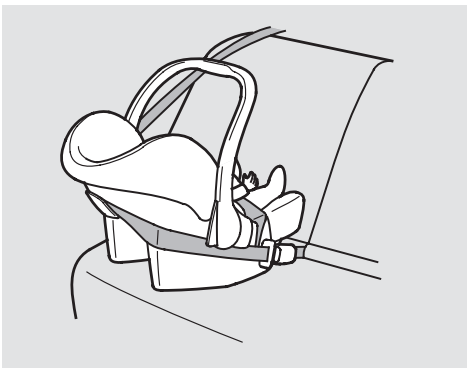
“Never let children kneel on seats or stand while the vehicle is in motion. The violent forces created during emergency braking will cause the children to be thrown forward. The children could be seriously injured or killed.”





## Protecting Infants and Small Children

### Protecting Infants



#### ***Child Restraint System Type***

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the child reaches the restraint system maker's weight or height limit for the restraint system, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rearward facing child restraint system provides proper support for a baby's head, neck and back.

Two types of restraints may be used: a restraint system designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible restraint system used in the rearward facing, reclining mode.

#### ***EU models***

Refer to page 57 for the recommended child restraint system.

***Do not put a rearward facing child restraint system in a forward-facing position.*** If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

#### ***Rearward Facing Child Restraint System Placement***

A rearward facing child restraint system can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat.***

#### ***EU models***

An approved rearward facing child restraint system should be placed in any seating position in the back seat (see page 57 ).

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the restraint with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.





## Protecting Infants and Small Children

When properly installed, a rearward facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

In either situation, we strongly recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or you may wish to get a smaller rearward facing child restraint system.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Placing a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.**

**Always place a rearward facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.**

As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;

### **⚠ WARNING**



**Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.**

*CONTINUED*





## Protecting Infants and Small Children

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with great force. The rearward facing child restraint system can be dislodged or struck with enough force to cause very serious injury to the infant.

### ***Passenger Front Airbag Off System***

We strongly recommend to put a rearward facing child restraint system in a rear seating position. If it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you should turn the passenger front airbag system off. In addition, make sure to turn the system back on after you remove the rearward facing child restraint system.

### **Protecting Small Children**



### ***Child Restraint System Type***

A child who is at least one year old, and who fits within the child restraint system maker's weight and height limits, should be restrained in a front facing, upright child restraint system.

Of the different restraint systems available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.





## Protecting Infants and Small Children

We also recommend that a small child uses the child restraint system as long as possible, until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the restraint system.

### *EU models*

Refer to page 57 for the recommended child restraint system.

### ***Child Restraint System Placement***

We strongly recommend placing a front facing child restraint system in a back seat, not the front.

### ***Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous.***

If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

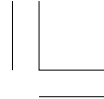
If it is necessary to put a front facing child restraint system in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child restraint system is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the restraint system.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.**

**If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.**





## Selecting a Child Restraint System

---

When buying a child restraint system, you need to choose either a conventional child restraint system, or one designed for use with the lower anchorages and tethers.

Conventional child restraint systems must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint systems are secured by attaching the restraint to hardware built into the two outer seating positions in the back seat.

Since lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint systems are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

We also recommend selecting a lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint system with a rigid, rather than a flexible, anchor (see page 59 ).

In EU countries, a child restraint system with a flexible anchor is not available.

In seating positions not equipped with lower anchorages, a lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint system can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of child restraint you choose, to provide proper protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements:

**1. *The child restraint system should meet safety standards.*** In most countries, child restraint systems must meet the specifications of the ECE 44 regulation. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not assume any responsibility for damage which would be caused by a defect inherent in the recommended child restraint system.





## Selecting a Child Restraint System

***2. The child restraint system should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.***

Rearward facing for infants, front facing for small children.

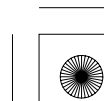
Make sure the restraint system fits your child. Check the manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits.

***3. The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Before purchasing a conventional child restraint system, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the restraint system in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the child restraint system will be used.

*EU models*

Refer to page 57 for the recommended child restraint system.





## Installing a Child Restraint System

---

After selecting a proper child restraint system and a good place to install the restraint system, there are three main steps in installing the restraint system:

**1. Properly secure the child restraint system to the vehicle.** All child restraint systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the lower anchorages system. A child whose restraint system is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

*On vehicles without lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned*

If you use a lap/shoulder belt, be sure you install a locking clip on the seat belt (see page 66 ).

**2. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured.** After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child restraint system secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be “rock solid.” Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child restraint system’s effectiveness.

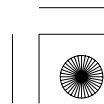
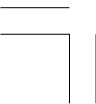
If the child restraint system is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child restraint system that can be firmly secured.

*EU models*

Refer to page 57 for the recommended child restraint system.

**3. Secure the child in the child restraint system.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint system according to the child restraint system maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child restraint system can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide the recommended child restraint systems for EU countries and guidelines on how to properly install a child restraint system. A front facing child restraint system is mainly used in most of examples, but the instructions are the same for a rearward facing child restraint system.





## Installing a Child Restraint System

### Child Restraint System for EU Countries

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass Group	Seating Position			
	Front passenger		Rear passenger	
	Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch position		Outboard	Centre
	OFF	ON		
group 0 Up to 10 kg	Honda BABY-SAFE	X	U	U
group 0+ Up to 13 kg	Honda BABY-SAFE	X	IL (Honda BABY-SAFE ISO FIX) or U	U
group I 9 kg to 18 kg	Honda Eclipse*		IUF (Size class A, B1, B) or U	U
group II 15 kg to 25 kg	Honda KID* or Honda KID FIX*		L (Honda KID FIX) or U	U
group III 22 kg to 36 kg	Honda KID* or Honda KID FIX*		L (Honda KID FIX) or U	U

IL: Suitable for particular ISO FIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this table.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISO FIX child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

For group I, the front facing genuine Honda ISO FIX child restraint system is available from your dealer.

U: Suitable for “universal” category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraint systems given in this table. These restraints may be of the “specific vehicle,” “restricted,” or “semi-universal” category.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*: Move the front seat to its rearmost position.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the above table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

**For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.**

*CONTINUED*





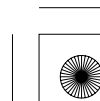
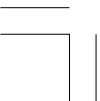
## Installing a Child Restraint System

---

### **WARNING**

**The use of any child restraint system which is not suitable for your vehicles would not properly secure the infant or child who could therefore be killed or seriously injured.**

Your vehicle is equipped with lower anchorages at the outer seating positions on the rear seat. These anchorages are only to be used with a child restraint system designed to be attached to the lower anchorages. Refer to page 59 for how to install a child restraint system to the lower anchorages.





## Installing a Child Restraint System

### Installing a Child Restraint System with the Lower Anchorages

Your vehicle is equipped with lower anchorages at the outer rear seats.

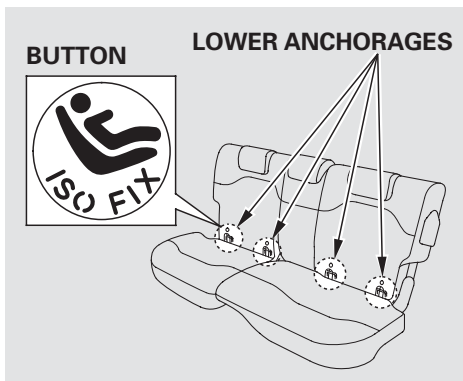
These anchorages are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child restraint system designed for use with the lower anchorages.

The location of each lower anchorage is indicated by a small button above the anchorage point.

You can find a lower anchorage in the slit on the seat-back.

#### *EU models*

Refer to page 57 for the recommended child restraint system.



To install a child restraint system designed to be attached to the lower anchorages in either of the rear outer seats:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchorages.

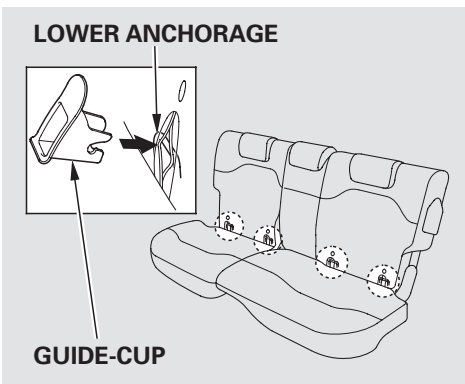
2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the child restraint system and the anchorages.
3. *On some child restraint systems*  
You may use optional guide-cups that came with your child restraint system to install it to the lower anchorages without damaging the seat surface.

CONTINUED



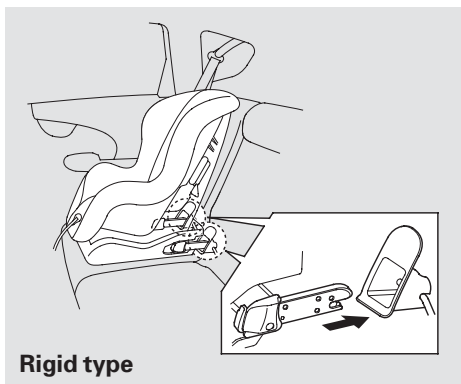


## Installing a Child Restraint System



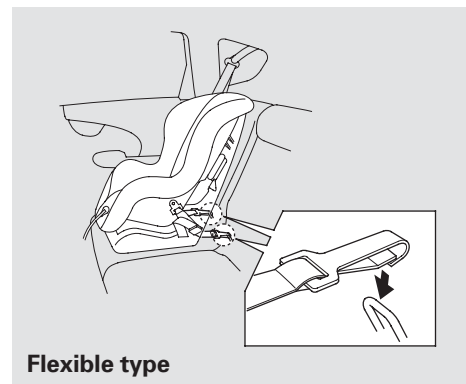
Attach the guide-cups to the lower anchorages as shown in the illustration.

When using the guide-cups, always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

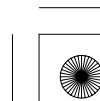


4. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

Some child restraint systems designed for use with lower anchorages have a rigid-type connector as shown above.



Other child restraints have a flexible-type connector as shown above.



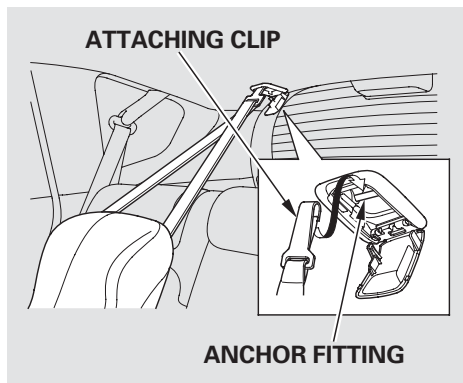


## Installing a Child Restraint System

5. Whatever type you have, follow the child restraint system maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.

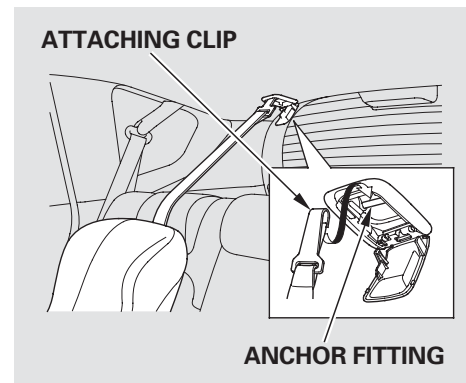
Flexible type child restraint system is available in some countries. In EU countries, this type is not available.

6. Set the head restraint to its lowest position.



7. Route the tether strap over the head restraint, then attach the attaching clip to the tether anchor fitting in the ceiling as shown in the illustration. Make sure the strap is not twisted, then tighten the strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

The above illustration shows how the attaching clip should be routed in EU countries.



On some child restraint types, route the tether strap as shown.

*CONTINUED*





## Installing a Child Restraint System

---

8. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

The design and suitability of the child restraint systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those systems. If you are not sure, consult your dealer before purchasing this type of child restraint system.

### Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the lower anchorages system, all child restraint systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

To properly route a lap/shoulder belt through a child restraint system, follow the restraint system maker's instructions.

If you intend to install a child restraint system in the centre seating position of the rear seat, make sure the detachable seat belt anchor is securely latched (see page 158 ).

### *EU models*

Refer to page 57 for installing a child restraint system.

The procedures in the following pages are described based on a front facing child restraint system available in EU countries.

1. Place the child restraint system in the desired back seating position. Make sure the child restraint is positioned well back in the seat-back.

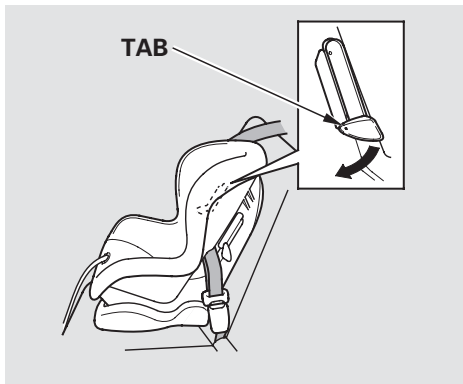




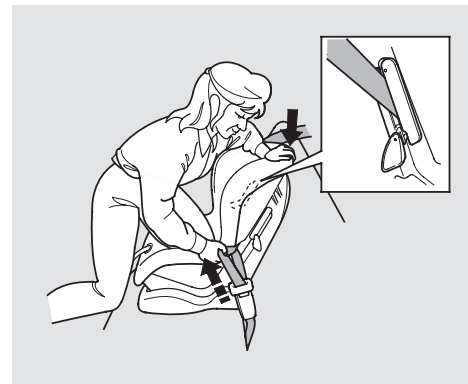
## Installing a Child Restraint System



2. Route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle and remove any slack from the lap portion of the belt.



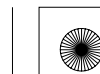
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.



4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child restraint system will not be secure.

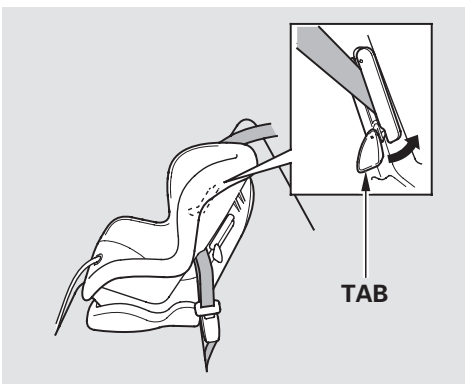
To remove slack, put weight on the child restraint system, or push on the back of the restraint system while pulling up on the belt.

*CONTINUED*





## Installing a Child Restraint System



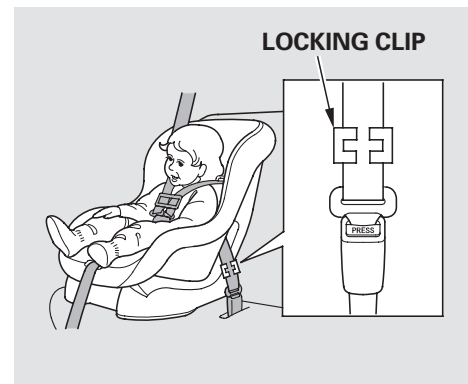
5. Secure the belt in the slit by pushing up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted and it is positioned properly in the slit.

When pushing up the tab, make sure to pull up the upper shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt to remove any slack from the belt.



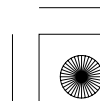
6. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres.

To remove a child restraint system, unlatch the buckle, unrout the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.



*On vehicles without lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned*

When you secure a child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt, be sure you install a locking clip on the seat belt (see page 66).



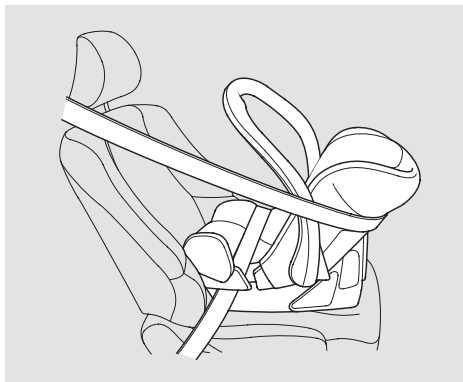


## Installing a Child Restraint System

### ***Installing a Rearward Facing Child Restraint System with the Passenger Front Airbag Off***

We strongly recommend to put a rearward facing child restraint system in a rear seating position. If it is not avoidable to put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you should turn the passenger front airbag system off. See page 34 for how to turn off the passenger front airbag system.

To install a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat with the lap/shoulder belt, route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system marker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



Then pull hard on the loose end of the belt to remove any slack (it may help to put weight on the child restraint system while pulling on the belt).

Finally, push and pull the restraint forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres. If the restraint is not secure, unlatch the belt and repeat these steps.

To remove a child restraint system, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

### *EU models*

Refer to page 57 for the recommended rearward facing child restraint system.





## Installing a Child Restraint System

### ***Using a Seat Belt Locking Clip***

*On vehicles without lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned*

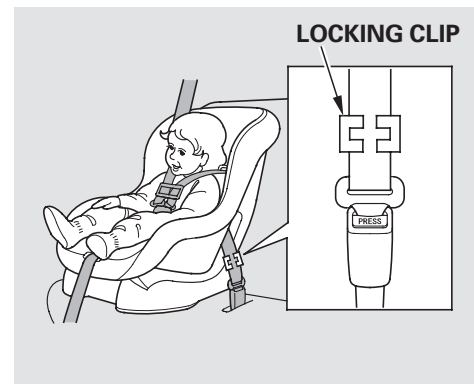
Always use a seat belt locking clip when you secure a child restraint system to your vehicle with a lap/shoulder belt. This helps prevent the restraint system from shifting position or overturning.

A locking clip is usually included with the child restraint system. If you need a clip, contact the seat's manufacturer or a store that sells child restraints.

If it is necessary to put a front facing child restraint system in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, be sure the child restraint system is firmly secured to the vehicle, and the child is properly strapped in the restraint system (see page 53).

To install a locking clip, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint in the seat with a lap/shoulder belt. Route the lap/shoulder belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.
2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Pull on the shoulder part of the belt to make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.
3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they won't slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.



4. Install the locking clip as shown. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Push and pull on the child restraint system to verify that it is held firmly in place. If it is not, repeat these steps until the restraint is secure.

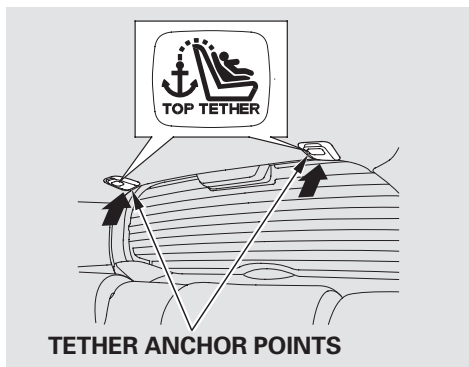




## Installing a Child Restraint System

### Installing a Child Restraint System with a Tether

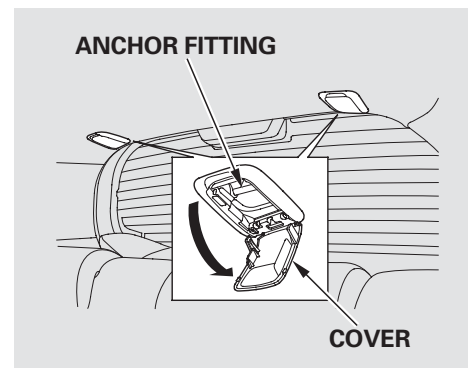
Children riding in vehicles should be restrained to minimize the risk of injury in the event of an accident.



A child restraint system with a tether can be installed in either outer seating position in the back seat, using either of the anchor points shown in the illustration.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available. (The owners may check with the child restraint system maker to determine whether a tether is available for a particular child restraint system.)

### Using an Anchor Fitting



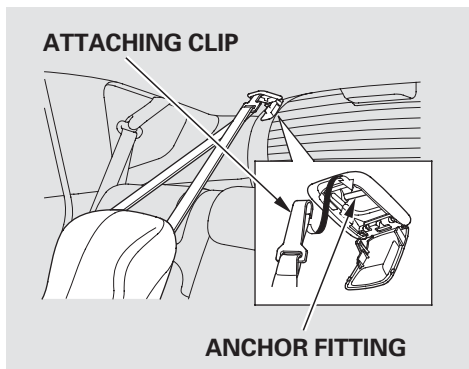
1. Set the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. After properly securing the child restraint system (see page 62 ), open the anchor cover.

CONTINUED

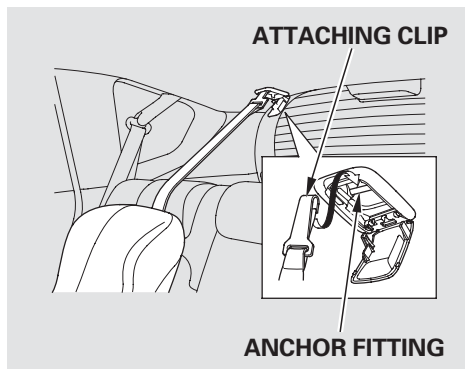




## Installing a Child Restraint System



3. Attach the attaching clip to the anchor fitting, making sure the strap is not twisted.



On some child restraint types, route the tether strap as shown.

4. Tighten the strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

To attach the tether to the child restraint system, follow the child restraint system maker's instructions.

When the child restraint system is used, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

**WARNING:** *Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*





## Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a front facing child restraint system, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear the lap/shoulder belt.

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.**

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.**

**If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.**

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Leaning over the front door can result in serious injury or death if the side airbag inflates.**

**Always sit upright with their back against the seat-back.**

### Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

*CONTINUED*



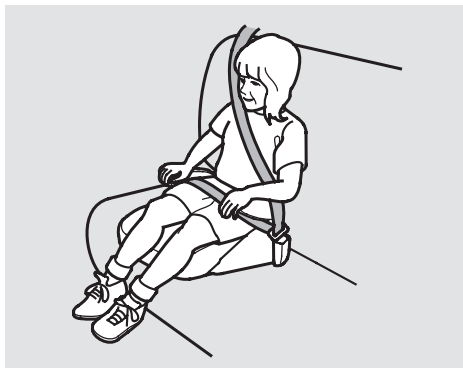


## Protecting Larger Children

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

### Using a Booster Seat



A child who has outgrown a front facing child restraint system should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets approved safety standards (see page 54 ) and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

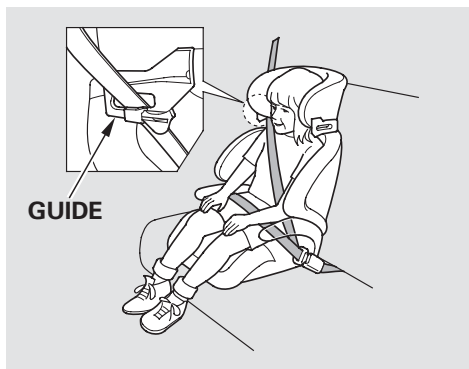
#### *EU models*

Refer to page 57 for the booster seat placement.





## Protecting Larger Children



A back-rest may be available for a specific booster seat. Install the back-rest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat maker's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the back-rest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck (see page 18 ).

### When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front

It is recommended that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in the back seat.

The back seat is the safest place for a child of any age or size.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

### *Physical Size*

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 18 and 69 ). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

### *Maturity*

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

CONTINUED





## Protecting Larger Children

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Remind the child not to lean toward the door.
- Supervise the child. Even a mature child sometimes needs to be reminded to fasten the seat belt or sit properly.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.
- ***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.
- ***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.





## Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in a crash that may have damaged the underside.

### **WARNING**

**Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.**

**Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.**

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows, and set the heating and cooling system/climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the heating and cooling system/climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Turn the fan on high speed.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

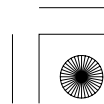
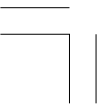
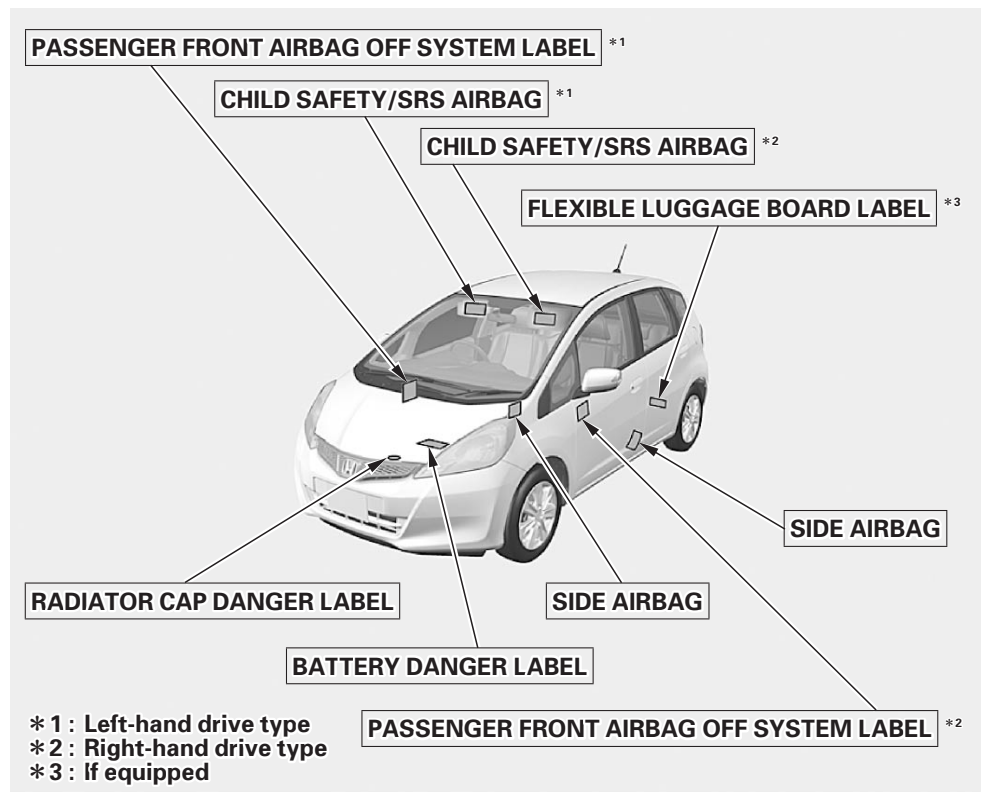




## Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact your dealer for a replacement.





## Safety Labels

The label shown below is attached to each front doorjamb.



- Side Airbag



- Safety alert symbol



- Follow owner's manual instructions carefully

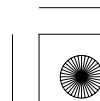
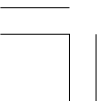
The label shown below is attached to the side panel of the front passenger-side instrument panel.



See the table below for what each icon refers to.

Front Passenger Seat	Passenger Front Airbag	
	OFF	ON
Infant in a rearward facing child restraint system	Can ride in the front	Cannot ride in the front
Passenger front airbag is	Inactive	Active

CONTINUED

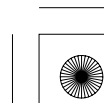
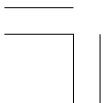
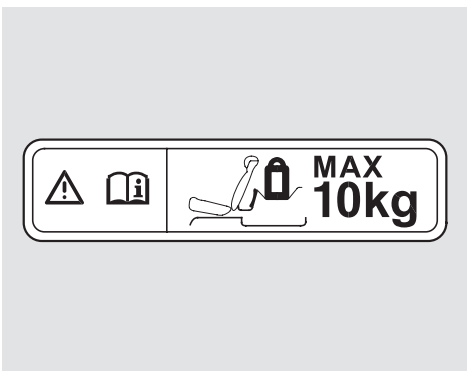




## Safety Labels

---

*On vehicles with flexible luggage board*  
The label shown below is attached to the left side of the flexible luggage board.





## Instruments and Controls

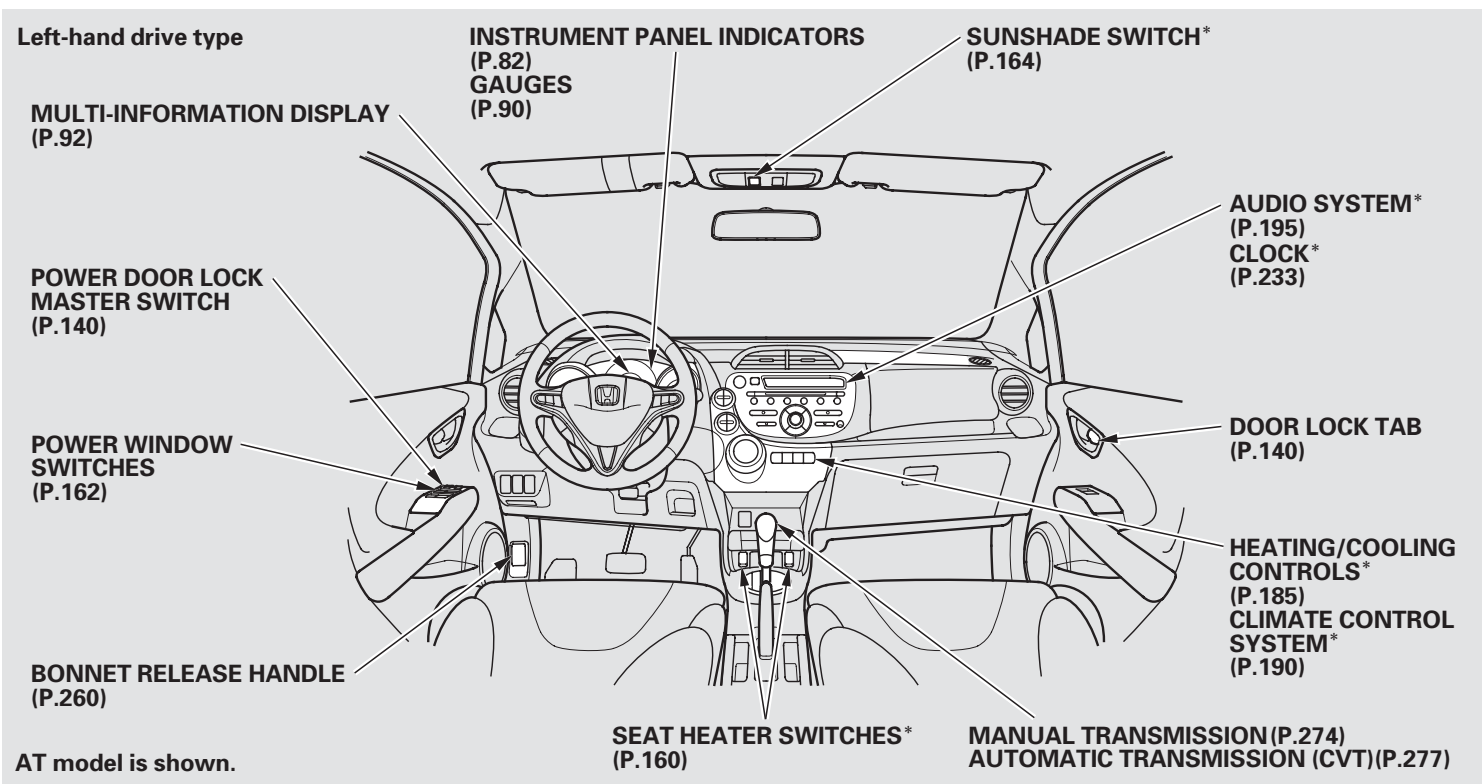
This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations .....	78	Tachometer .....	91	Driver's Seat Height .....	
Instrument Panel .....	80	Fuel Gauge .....	91	Adjustment .....	150
Instrument Panel Indicators .....	82	Multi-Information Display .....	92	Armrests .....	150
Gauges .....	90	Controls Near the Steering .....		Head Restraints .....	151
Speedometer .....	91	Wheel .....	122	Folding the Rear Seat Up .....	155
		Windscreen Wipers and Washers .....	124	Folding the Rear Seats Down ..	156
		Turn Signals and Headlights .....	128	Detachable Anchor .....	158
		Front and Rear Fog Lights .....	130	Seat Heaters .....	160
		Instrument Panel Brightness .....	132	Luggage Area Cover .....	161
		Hazard Warning Button .....	133	Power Windows .....	162
		Rear Window Demister .....	133	Sunshade .....	164
		Headlight Adjuster .....	134	Mirrors .....	166
		Steering Wheel Adjustments .....	135	Parking Brake .....	168
		Keys and Locks .....	136	Interior Convenience Items .....	169
		Immobilizer System .....	138	Lower Glove Box .....	170
		Ignition Switch .....	139	Upper Glove Box .....	170
		Door Locks .....	140	Beverage Holders .....	171
		Power Door Locks .....	140	Front Console Box .....	173
		Super Locking .....	141	Seat Under Box .....	173
		Childproof Door Locks .....	142	Sun Visor .....	173
		Remote Transmitter .....	143	Vanity Mirror .....	174
		Tailgate .....	147	Coat Hook .....	174
		Seats .....	149	Accessory Power Socket .....	175
		Front Seat Adjustments .....	149	Flexible Luggage Board .....	176
				Cargo Floor Box .....	178
				Interior Lights .....	179





## Control Locations

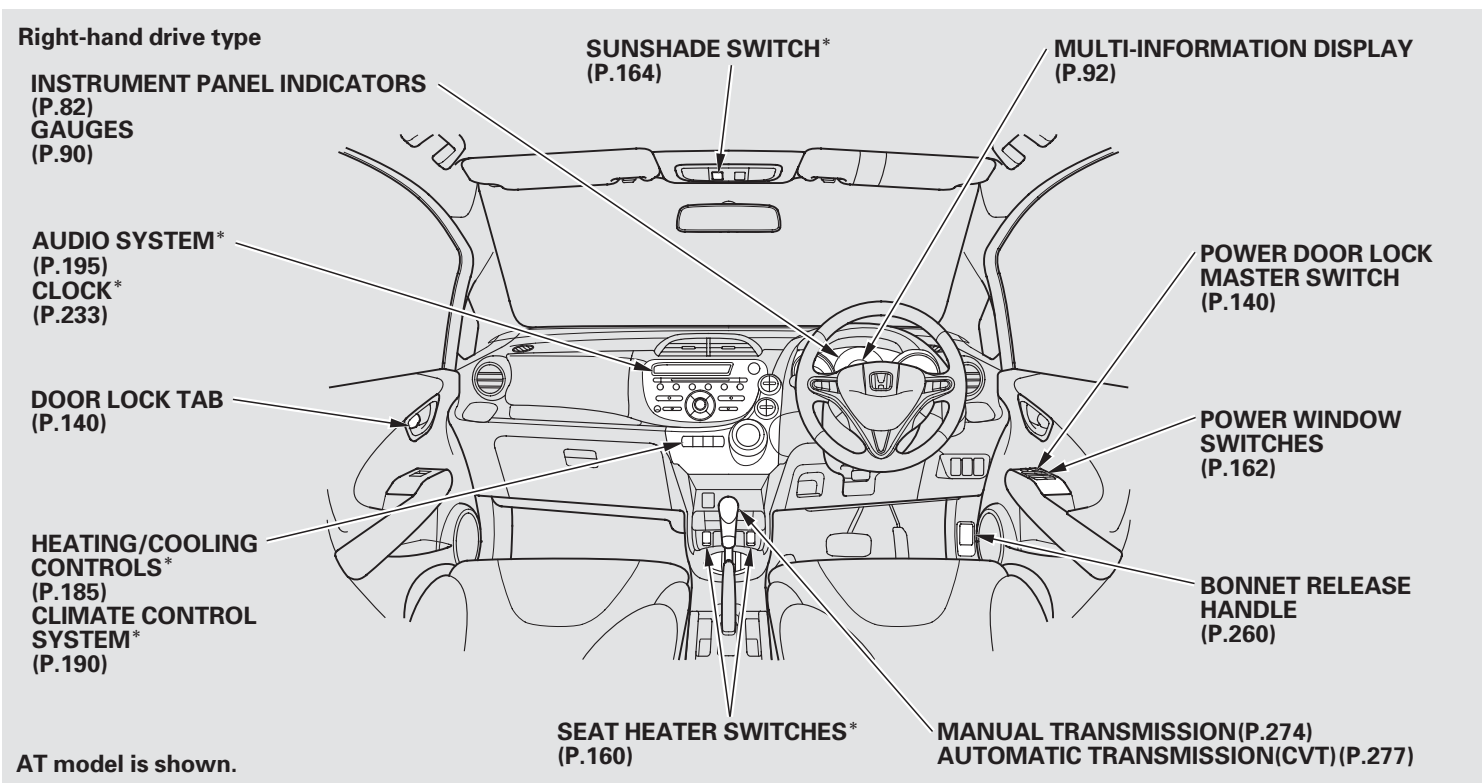


\* : If equipped

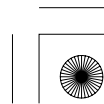
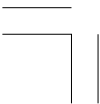




## Control Locations



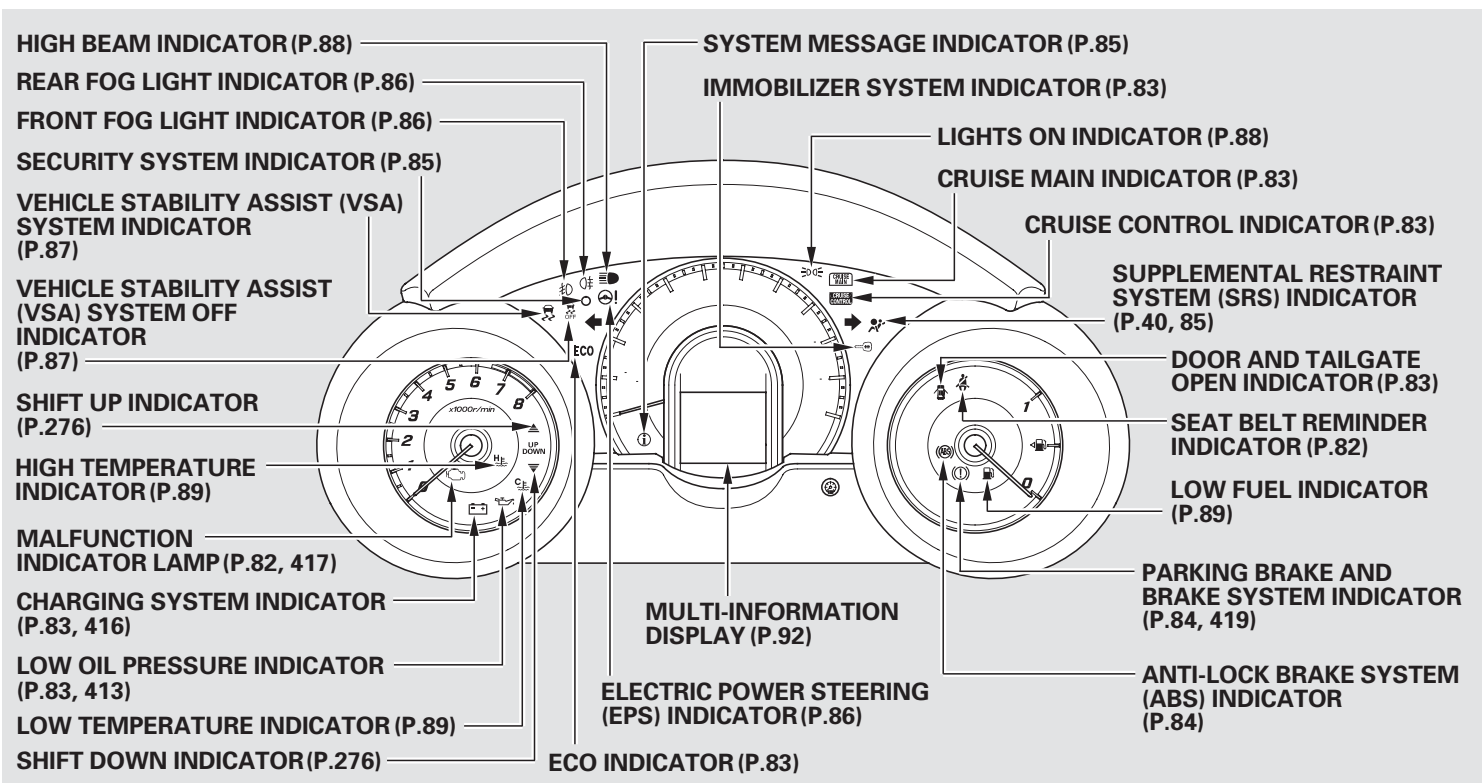
\* : If equipped



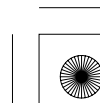
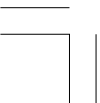


## Instrument Panel

### *Manual transmission model*



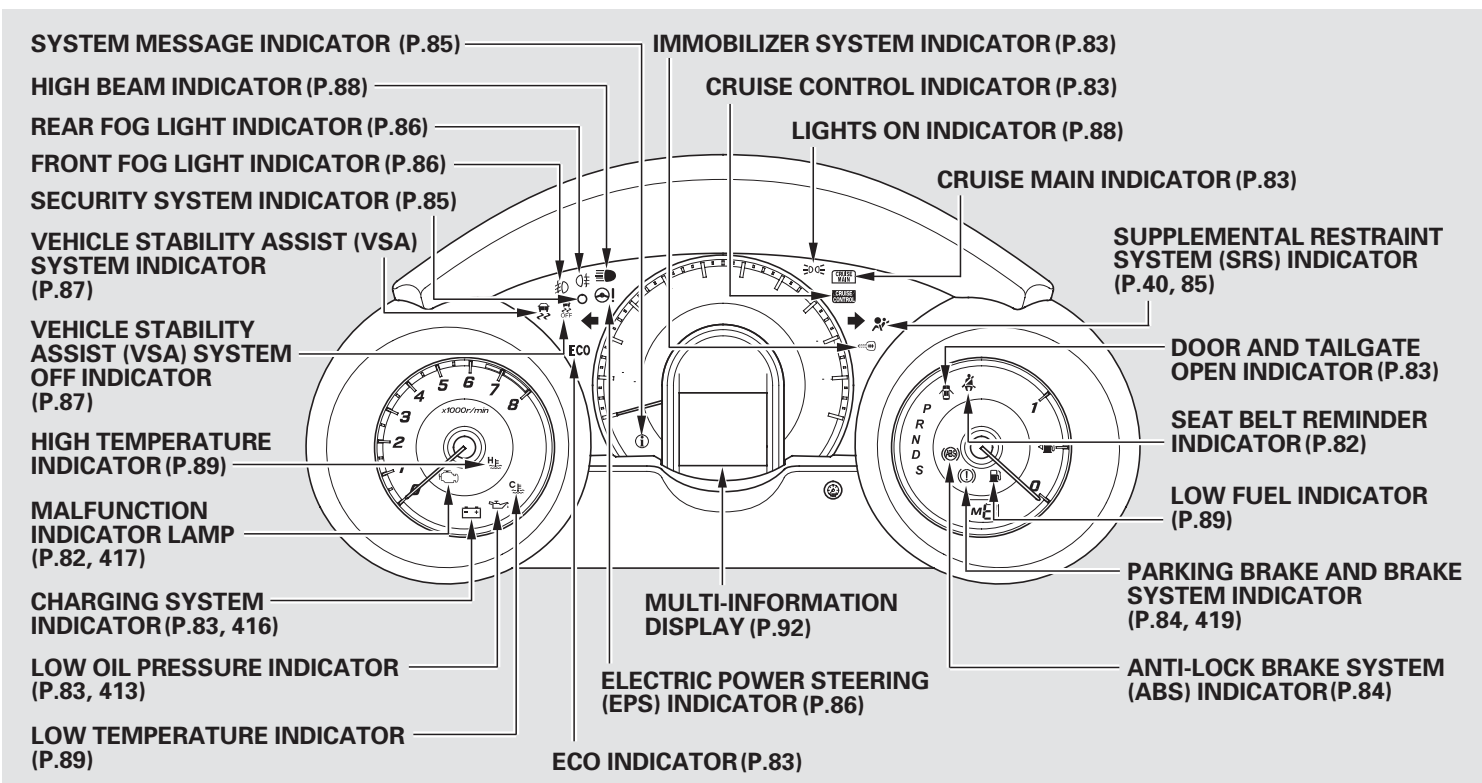
Since the indicators vary between models, some indicators are not on your vehicle.



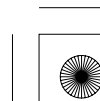
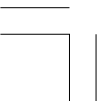


## Instrument Panel

### *Automatic transmission model*



Since the indicators vary between models, some indicators are not on your vehicle.






## Instrument Panel Indicators

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.



### Malfunction Indicator Lamp

See page 417 .

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.





### Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

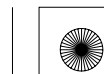
If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals. For more information, see page 23 .

You will also see the symbol “” (for a driver)/“” (for a front passenger), or this symbol with a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

The seat belt system also monitors the seat belt use of all three rear seating positions according to the activation of each seat belt retractor. The multi-information display will show you the seat belt use on the rear seat (see page 24 ).






## Instrument Panel Indicators



### Low Oil Pressure Indicator


The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running. For more information, see page 413 .

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with an “OIL PRESSURE LOW” message on the multi-information display.



### Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. For more information, see page 416 .

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.



### Cruise Main Indicator

*If equipped*

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button (see page 235 ).



### Cruise Control Indicator

*If equipped*

This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page 235 for information on operating the cruise control.



### Door and Tailgate Open Indicator

This indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is not closed tightly.

You will also see the symbol on the multi-information display to indicate which door and/or the tailgate is not closed tightly (see page 15 ).



### Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will go off if you have inserted a properly coded ignition key. If it is not a properly coded key, the indicator will blink and the engine's fuel system will be disabled (see page 138 ).



### ECO Indicator

This indicator comes on when you keep the engine operating in its economical range.






## Instrument Panel Indicators





### Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. A beeper sounds if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tyres.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message in the multi-information display (see page 168 ).


2. If it remains lit after you fully release the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the brake system. For more information, see page 419 .

You will also see the symbol “” (for the brake fluid level)/ “” (for the brake system), or this symbol with a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” or “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 419 ).



### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. If this happens, have your vehicle checked at a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. For more information, see page 289 .

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 289 ).





## Instrument Panel Indicators



### System Message Indicator


This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel to see the message (see page 93 ).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, SRS indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.



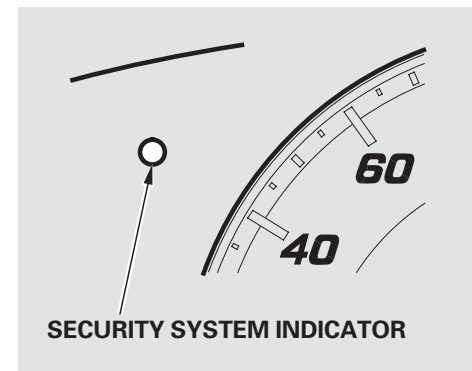
### Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on for several seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, side curtain airbags, passenger front airbag off system, or automatic seat belt tensioners. For more information, see page 40 .

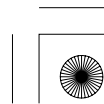
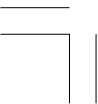
You will also see the symbol “  ,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

### Security System Indicator

*If equipped*



This indicator comes on when the security system is set. See page 234 for more information on the security system.





## Instrument Panel Indicators




### Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the electric power steering system.

If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. The indicator will stay on, but should go off after driving a short distance. If it does not go off, or comes back on again while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, the EPS may be turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.

If you turn the steering wheel to the full left or right position repeatedly while stopping or driving at very low speed, you may feel slightly harder steering in order to prevent damage to the steering system caused by overheating. This may also happen if you hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while.

You will also see the symbol “ ” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.



### Rear Fog Light Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the rear fog light. See pages 130 and 131 for information on operating the rear fog light.



### Front Fog Light Indicator (For some types)

This indicator comes on when you turn on the front fog lights. See page 131 for information on operating the front fog lights.





## Instrument Panel Indicators




### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

This indicator has two functions:

1. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 291 ).
2. If it comes on and stays on at any other time, there is a problem with the VSA system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. See page 291 for more information on the VSA system.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 291 ).



### VSA OFF Indicator

This indicator comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. For more information, see page 292 .





## Instrument Panel Indicators



### Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If an indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see pages 343 , 344 , and 345 ). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signal indicators and all turn signals on the outside of the vehicle will flash.

Your vehicle has the one-push turn signal feature to signal a lane change easily (see page 128 ).






### High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page 129 .




### Lights On Indicator

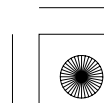
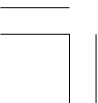
This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the  or  position. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (O) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver's door without the key in the ignition switch.

You will also see the symbol , or this symbol with a "HEADLIGHTS ON" message on the multi-information display (see page 128 ).

*On vehicles with automatic lighting on feature*

This indicator also comes on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically.

You will see the symbol "", or this symbol with a "CHECK SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display if there is a problem with the automatic headlight control system.






## Instrument Panel Indicators



### High Temperature Indicator

This indicator shows the temperature of the engine coolant. It normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and goes off after a few seconds. In normal driving conditions, this indicator should not blink or stay on. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, this indicator may blink. This means the engine coolant temperature is high. If the indicator begins to blink while you are driving, be sure to slow down to prevent overheating. If the indicator stays on, pull safely to the side of the road and turn off the engine. See page 411 for instructions and precautions on checking the engine's cooling system. Do not drive the vehicle while the indicator is on or the engine may be damaged.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with an “ENGINE TEMP. HIGH” message on the multi-information display.




### Low Temperature Indicator

This indicator shows the temperature of the engine coolant. If there is no problem, this indicator comes on when the engine is cold. If it comes on when the engine is warm (normal operating temperature), have the vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible.



### Low Fuel Indicator

This indicator comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon. When the indicator comes on, there are about 7.9 l (1.74 Imp gal) of fuel remaining in the tank.

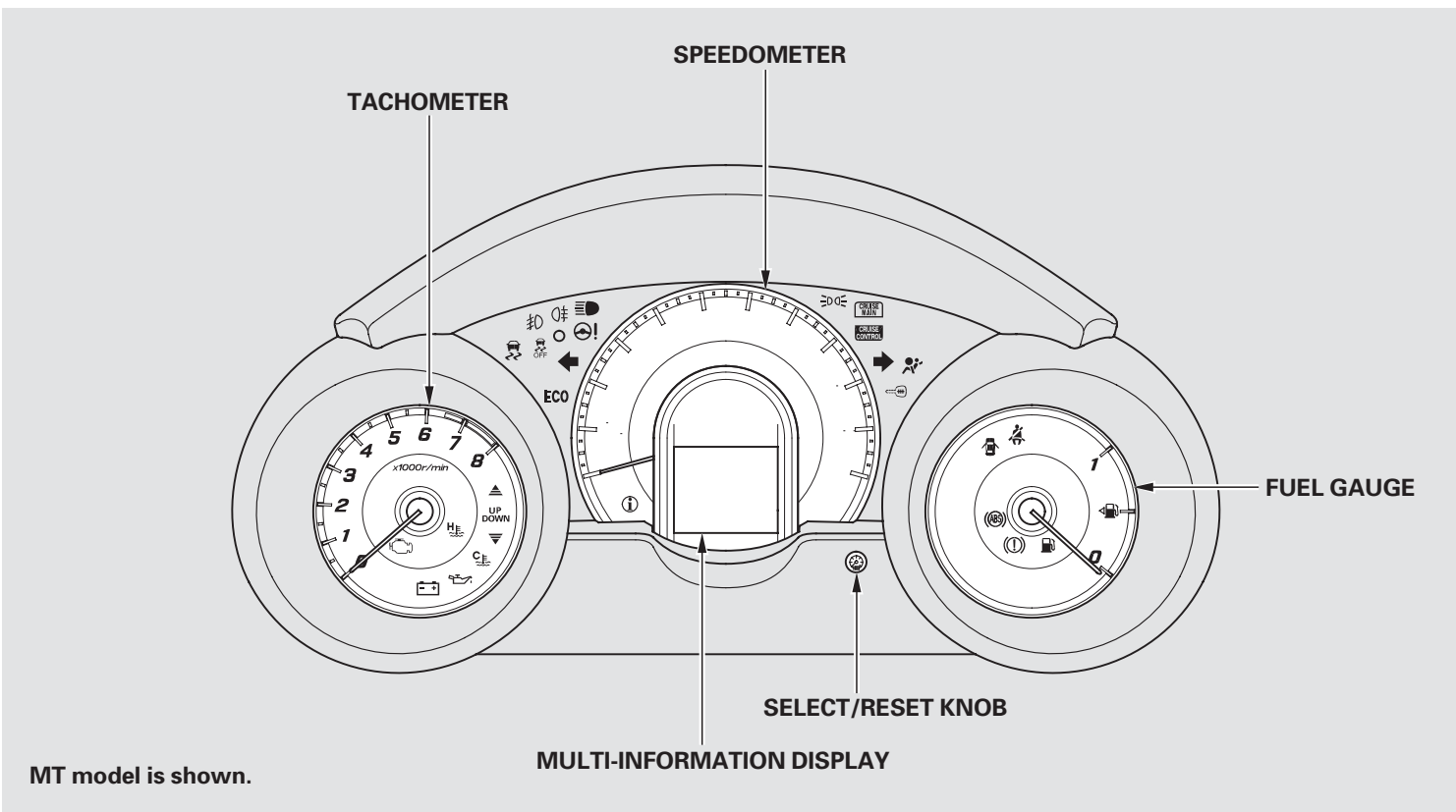
You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with “FUEL LOW” message on the multi-information display.

When the needle reaches 0, there is a very small amount of fuel in the tank.





## Gauges





## Gauges

### Speedometer

*On vehicles with kilometer indication*  
This shows your speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

*On vehicles with mile indication*  
This shows your speed in miles per hour (mph). The inside scales show the speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

You can set the vehicle speed alarm.  
For more information, see page 105 .

### Tachometer

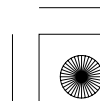
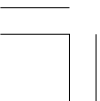
The tachometer shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). To protect the engine from damage, never drive with the tachometer needle in the red zone.

### Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount.

#### NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.





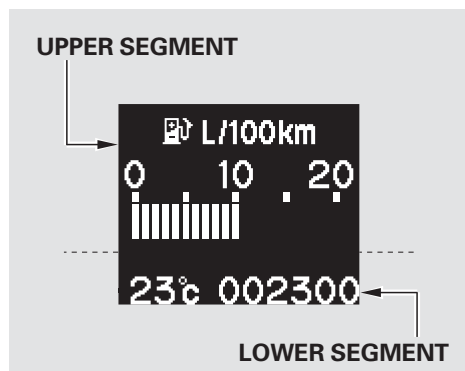
## Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display in the speedometer on the instrument panel displays various information and symbols/messages when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. Some of the indicators/messages help you operate your vehicle more effectively. Others keep you aware of the vehicle's condition for continued trouble-free driving.

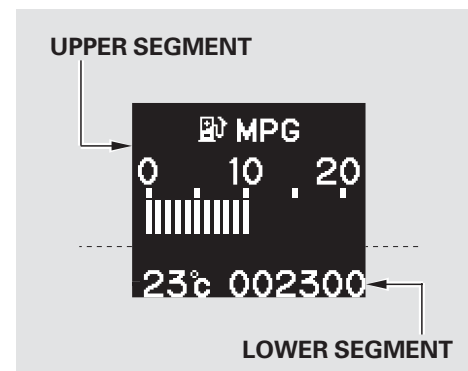
There are two types of symbols/messages: normal display symbols/messages and system warning symbols/messages.

You can select the displayed language and also customize some vehicle control settings to your liking with the multi-information display and the two buttons on the steering wheel (see page 93 ).

### Normal Display Symbols/ Messages



The multi-information display consists of an upper segment and a lower segment.

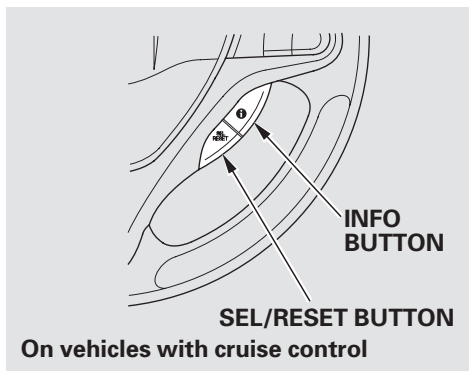


In normal display mode, the display shows the trip computer, the rear seat belt use, the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) use (if equipped), the odometer, the trip meter, the outside temperature, and the service reminder (if equipped).

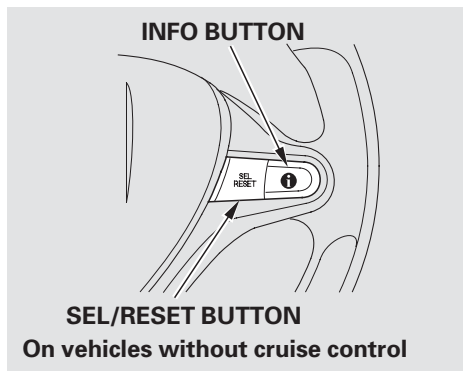




## Multi-Information Display



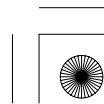
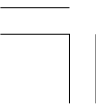
In normal display mode, the upper display shows the trip computer and rear seat belt use when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position (see page 94). Each time you press the INFO button, the trip computer changes from the instant fuel economy to the average fuel economy, to the estimated distance, to the elapsed time, to the average speed, to the rear seat belt use and



then to no display as shown on the next page.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, what you last selected is shown in the multi-information display.

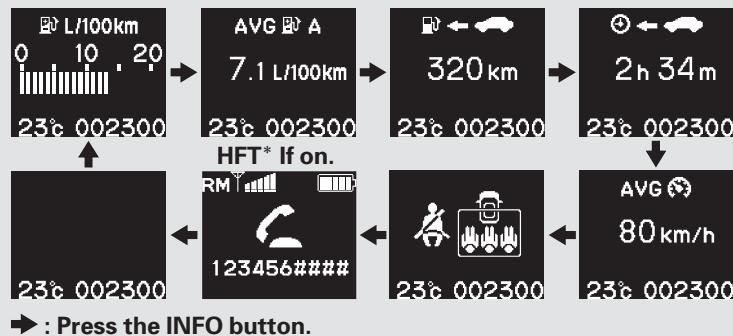
If there is any system warning, system warning symbol(s) will be shown on the multi-information display. The system warning symbol/message that has the highest priority will be displayed first when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.



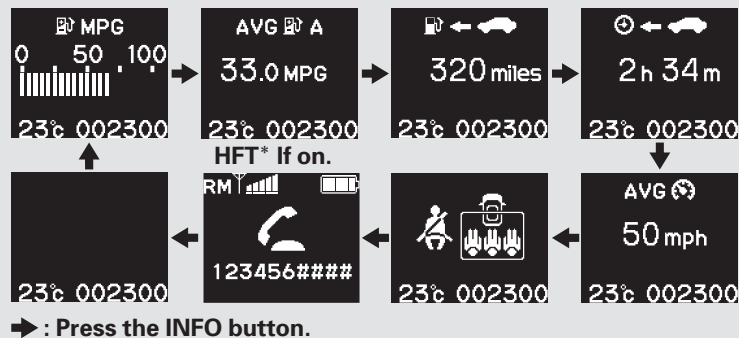


## Multi-Information Display

### Kilometer indication type



### Mile indication type



\* : If equipped





## Multi-Information Display

### Trip Computer

Indicators in the trip computer show:

#### **Instant Fuel Economy**


##### *Kilometer indication*


 **L/100km** : Your vehicle's instant fuel economy is shown in l/100 km.

##### *Mile indication*

 **MPG** : Your vehicle's instant fuel economy is shown in mpg.


#### **Average Fuel Economy**

 **AVG A** : Your vehicle's average fuel economy since you last reset the trip computer A.

 **AVG B** : Your vehicle's average fuel economy since you last reset the trip computer B.


The average fuel economy is updated once every 10 seconds. When you reset a trip meter, the average fuel economy for that trip meter also resets. To reset the values in the trip computer, press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0."

#### **Range**


 : The estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you have achieved over the last few kilometers (miles), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic condition, etc.

#### **Elapsed Time**

 : The time travelled since you last turned the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

#### **Average Vehicle Speed**

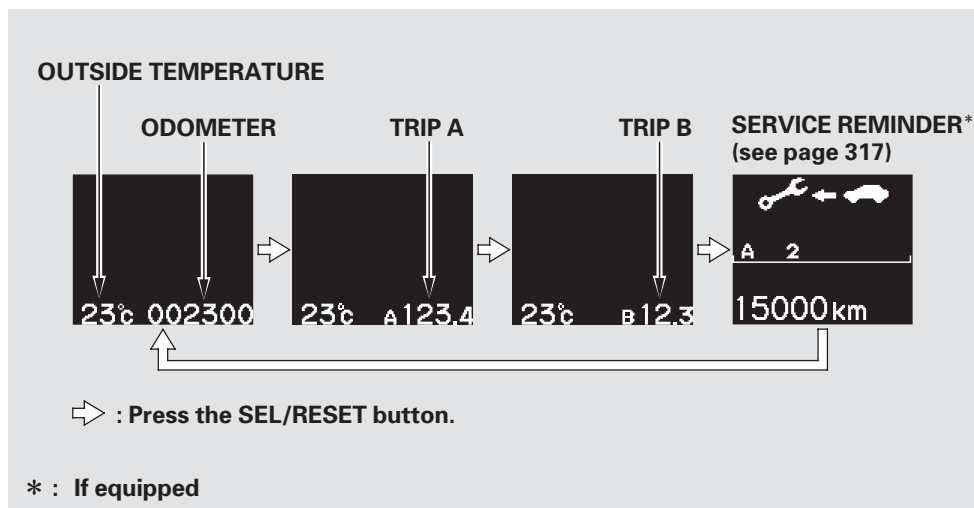
 **AVG V** : The average speed you are travelling is displayed in kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph) depending on the model.

CONTINUED





## Multi-Information Display



The lower segment shows the odometer, trip meter, the outside temperature and the service reminder (if equipped) in the normal display mode.

Pressing the SEL/RESET button changes the display as shown.

### ***Odometer***

The odometer shows the total number of kilometers or miles your vehicle has been driven.

### ***Trip Meter***

This meter shows the number of kilometers or miles driven since you last reset it.

There are two trip meters: trip A and trip B. To switch the display between them, press the SEL/RESET button repeatedly. When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, your last selection is displayed.

Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it, and then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0."





## Multi-Information Display

### **Outside Temperature Indicator**


This indicator displays the outside temperature in degrees Celsius.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Therefore, the temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your speed is under 30 km/h (19 mph).

The sensor delays the display update until it reaches the correct outside temperature. This may take several minutes.

If the outside temperature is incorrectly displayed, you can adjust it by up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  warmer or cooler (see page 113 ).

**NOTE:** The temperature must be stabilized before doing this procedure.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing could mean that ice is forming on the road surface. You will also see a caution symbol “  ” on the multi-information display.

### **Service Reminder Information**

*If equipped*

This shows the remaining distance or time until a service is required. It also displays a service item code to indicate the service item(s) required at the next service maintenance. For more information, see page 307 .





## Multi-Information Display

---

### Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) (For some types)

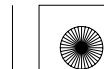


You can receive or make phone calls from your cell phone through your Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system without touching your cell phone.

To use the system, your cell phone and the HFT system must be linked. Not all cell phones are compatible with this system. Refer to page 238 for instructions on how to link your cell phone to HFT and how to receive or make phone calls.

### System Warning Symbols

If there is a problem with your vehicle, for example, the parking brake is not fully released or a door is not fully closed, the multi-information display will show you the problem. It does this by interrupting the current display with one or more symbols/messages.

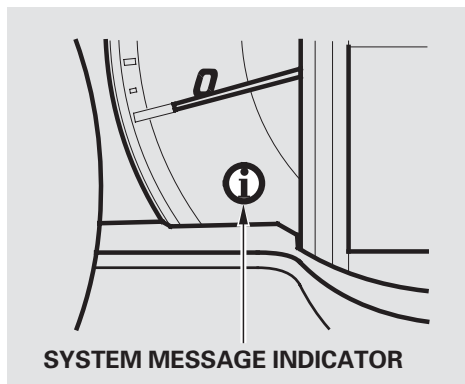




## Multi-Information Display

When your vehicle is new, the multi-information display shows the system warning symbols without the messages. This is the default setting when the vehicle leaves the factory. You can customize this setting to see the system warning symbols with messages (see page 112 ). Some symbols such as the low outside temperature, rear seat belt reminder indicator, etc., do not come with a message.

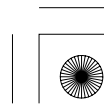
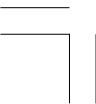
In this section, system symbols without messages are used in almost all examples.



These symbols/messages also trigger the appropriate indicator(s) on the instrument panel and cause the system message indicator to come on. The system message indicator does not go off until the problem(s) are corrected.






The following pages describe each system warning symbol/message that can be displayed. Here is a list of all symbols:






*CONTINUED*








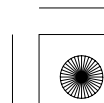
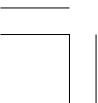


## Multi-Information Display

	See page 417.
	See pages 89 and 411.
	See pages 83 and 413.
	See pages 84 and 419.
	See page 414.






	See page 415.
	See page 86.
	See pages 83 and 416.
	See page 418.
	See pages 40 and 85.






	See pages 84 and 289.
	See pages 84 and 168.
	See pages 335 and 419.
	See page 277.
	See page 240.





## Multi-Information Display

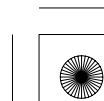
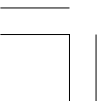
	See page 291.
	See pages 23 and 82.
	See pages 23 and 82.
	See page 24.
	See page 15.

	See pages 88 and 128.
	See page 138.
	See page 97.
	See pages 88 and 129.
	See page 105.

	See page 89.
---	--------------

### *Service Reminder System (If applicable)*

	See page 307.
	See page 307.





## Multi-Information Display

### Customized Settings

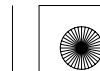
You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to suit your needs. The table shows the settings you can customize.

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option	Page
SPEED ALARM (P.105)	SPEED ALARM 1 (ON/OFF, Setting)	Turns the speed alarm on or off and changes the alarm speed setting.	ON/OFF* <sup>2</sup> over 5 km/h (mph) with 5 km/h (mph) steps	105
	SPEED ALARM 2 (ON/OFF, Setting)			
	SPEED ALARM 1* <sup>1</sup> (ON/OFF)	Turns the speed alarm on or off with the preset alarm speed.	ON/OFF* <sup>2</sup>	108
	SPEED ALARM 2* <sup>1</sup> (ON/OFF)			
CHG SETTING (P.110)	WARNING MESSAGE	Toggles warning message on or off.	ON/OFF* <sup>2</sup>	112
	ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY	Adjusts the outside temperature reading above or below its current reading.	up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ * <sup>2</sup>	113
	TRIP A RESET WITH REFUEL	Causes trip meter A and the average fuel economy A to reset when you refuel.	ON/OFF* <sup>2</sup>	115
	ELAPSED TIME RESET	Resets the elapsed time of your current trip.	IGN OFF* <sup>2</sup> , TRIP A, TRIP B	116
LANGUAGE (P.118)		Changes the language used in the display.	ENGLISH* <sup>2</sup> , ITALIAN, SPANISH, GERMAN, FRENCH, PORTUGUESE	118
DEFAULT ALL (P.120)		Returns all settings to the factory default.	CANCEL* <sup>2</sup> OK	120

\*1: Setting is available while driving

\*2: Factory default setting

## 102 Instruments and Controls

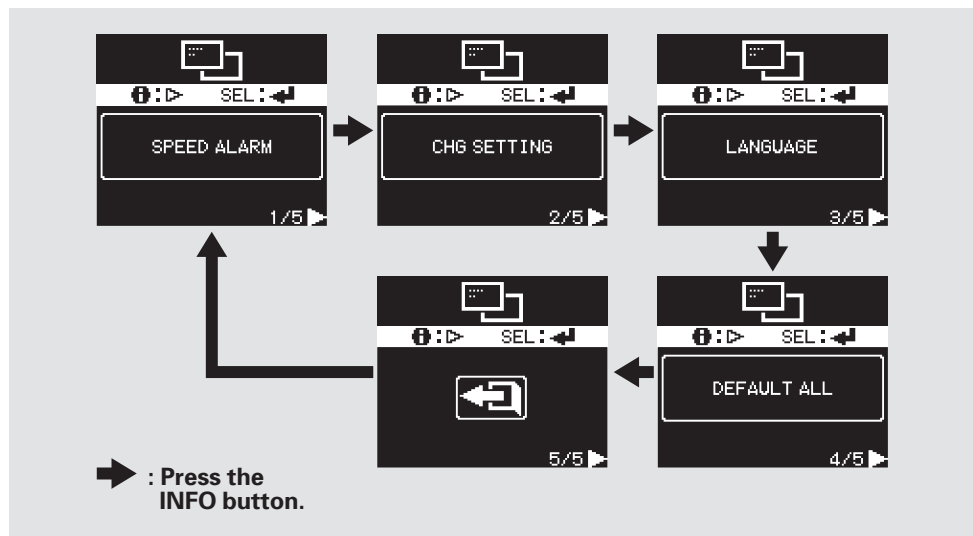




## Multi-Information Display

To enter the customizing mode, the vehicle must be stopped with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position and the parking brake set on vehicles with manual transmission. If your vehicle has the automatic transmission, the shift lever should be in Park. (Exceptionally, this condition is not applied on some speed alarm settings.) Press and hold the INFO button (i) on the steering wheel for about 3 seconds while the multi-information display is in its normal display. Here are the settings you can customize.

- **SPEED ALARM:** To set the speed alarm (see page 105 ).
- **CHG SETTING:** To change vehicle control settings (see page 110 ).
- **LANGUAGE:** To select language (see page 118 ).



- **DEFAULT ALL:** To return to the default settings (see page 120 ).

Each time you press the INFO button, the display changes as shown above.

CONTINUED





## Multi-Information Display

You can also select the specified speed alarm while driving. If you set the alarm to the specified vehicle speed while driving, select “SPEED ALARM,” and refer to page 105 .

If you want to change any vehicle control settings, select “CHG SETTING,” and follow the instructions on page 110 .

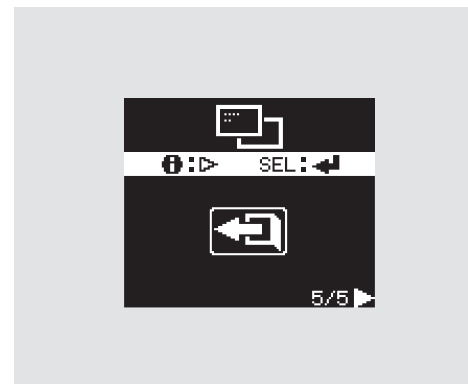
If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, select “DEFAULT ALL,” as described on page 120 .

Use the INFO button ( ⓘ ) on the steering wheel to see and scroll through the settings, and the SEL/RESET button to enter your selections.

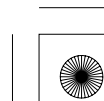


If you try to start driving while customizing the settings, you will see the above display for a few seconds and customizing will be cancelled.

Customizing is also cancelled, if you turn the ignition switch out of the ON (II) position or release the parking brake (M/T) or move the shift lever out of Park (A/T).



To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode shown above by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.

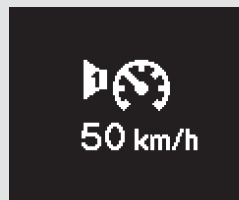




## Multi-Information Display

### Speed Alarm

You can access different alarm functions when the vehicle is stopped or while driving. While driving, you can select either of the two speed alarm settings. When your vehicle is stopped, you can customize the setting speed to your preference.



**Alarm at vehicle speed 50 km/h is set.**

If you set the speed alarm function in the custom settings, you will see this indicator and hear a beep when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.

*To set the speed alarm while the vehicle is stopped:*



Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode, then press and release the INFO button repeatedly to select “SPEED ALARM.” While the multi-information display is showing “SPEED ALARM,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting mode.

*CONTINUED*





## Multi-Information Display

Speed setting 1 off is selected.



km/h type is shown.

You can set the speed alarm in km/h or mph, depending on models. The two speed selections and the on/off setting icons are displayed.

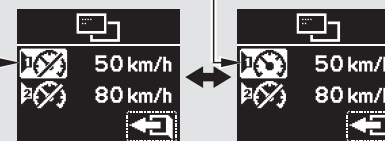
Speed setting 1: You can set the alarm on or off, and adjust the setting speeds above or below 50 km/h (30 mph).

Speed setting 2: You can set the alarm on or off, and adjust the setting speeds above or below 80 km/h (50 mph).

Each time you press and release the INFO button (i), the selected icon is changed between set 1, 50 km/h (30 mph), and set 2, 80 km/h (50 mph). Then press the INFO button again to exit (↩).

Alarm off

Alarm on

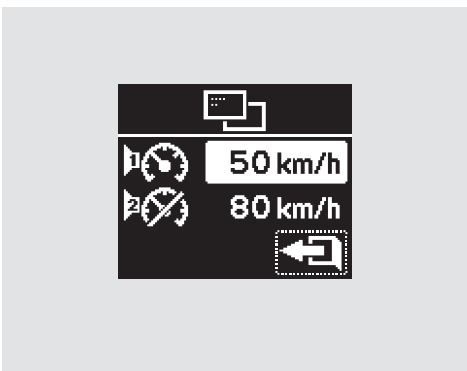


Select either of the setting modes (1 or 2), then select on or off by pressing the SEL/RESET button repeatedly.

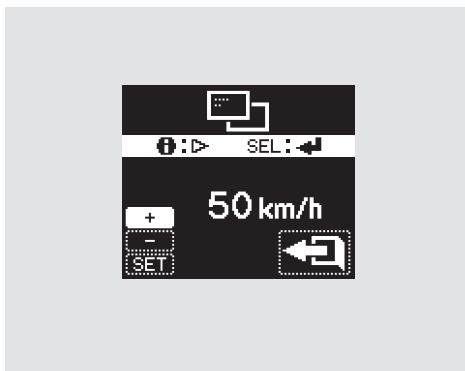




## Multi-Information Display



To adjust the setting speed, select either of the setting speeds, then press and release the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the speed setting screen.

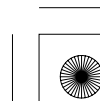
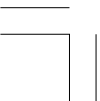


The displayed number is the current speed setting. Select either the + or – icon by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button to change the setting value.

Each time you press the SEL/RESET button, the setting speed increases or decreases by 5 km/h (mph). You can set the speed values over 5 km/h (5 mph) with 5 km/h (mph) steps. Always follow the posted speed limit and never drive faster than is safe for the traffic conditions.

To enter your selection, select the SET icon by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

*CONTINUED*

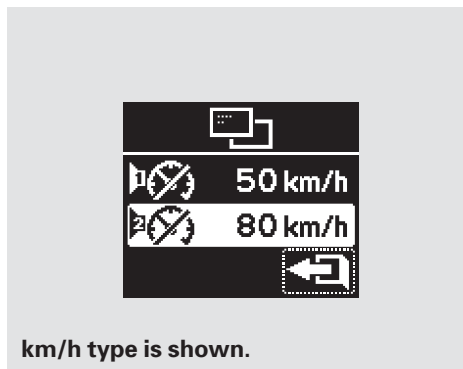




## Multi-Information Display

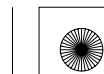
Once you have made your selection, press and release the INFO button to move to the exit mode. Press the SEL/RESET button to enter your setting. If you press the INFO button, the display goes back to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

*To select the alarm speed while driving:*



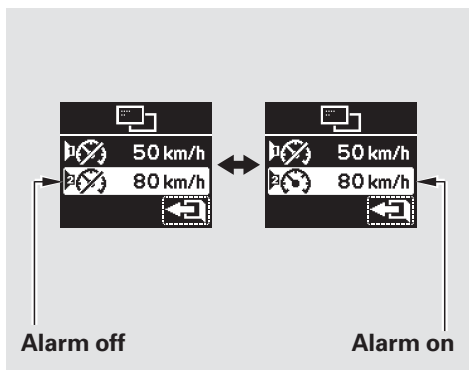
Press the INFO button for about 1 second to switch the display. You will see the speed alarm settings on the multi-information display.

You can select the alarm speed between the two setting speeds: 50 km/h and 80 km/h, or 30 mph and 50 mph, depending on models. Each time you press and release the INFO button, the selected icon is changed between the setting speeds and the exit icon.



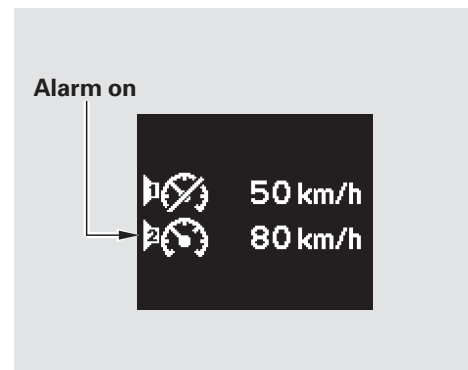


## Multi-Information Display



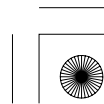
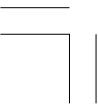
Select the desired setting speed, then press the SEL/RESET button. Each time you press the SEL/RESET button, the selected speed icon switches between on and off.

After your selection, press and release the INFO button to move to the exit mode. Press the SEL/RESET button to enter your setting. If you press the INFO button, the display goes back to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.



After pressing the SEL/RESET button, the display shows your setting for a few seconds, then goes back to the normal display.

If you do not press any button, the display returns to the normal display after about 10 seconds.



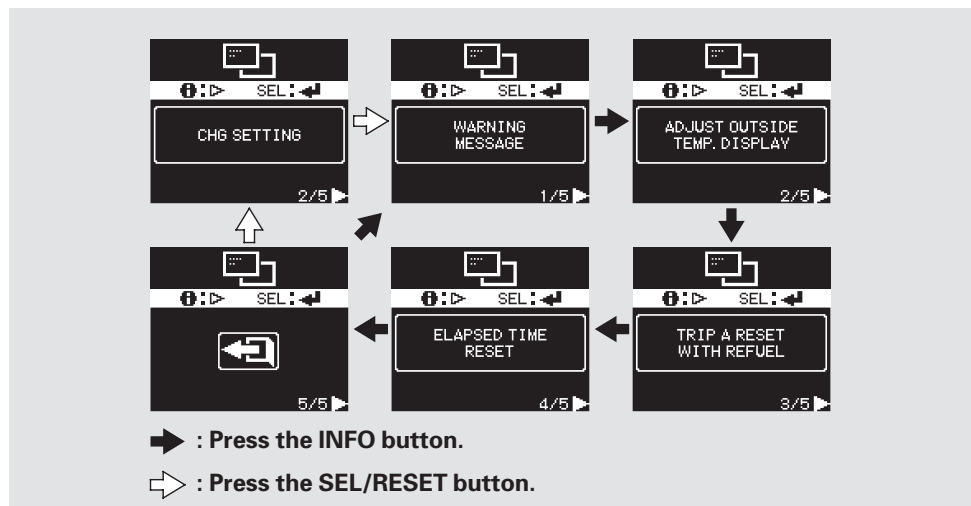


## Multi-Information Display

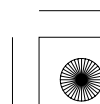
### Change Setting

You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to suit your needs. The following items are the settings you can customize.

- **WARNING MESSAGE:** The warning message is displayed with the symbol or not (see page 112 ).
- **ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY:** The outside temperature indicator value is adjustable up to + or  $-3^{\circ}\text{C}$  (see page 113 ).
- **TRIP A RESET WITH REFUEL:** Average fuel economy for trip meter A can be reset after refueling (see page 115 ).



- **ELAPSED TIME RESET:** The elapsed time can be reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position or when you reset trip meter A or B (see page 116 ).

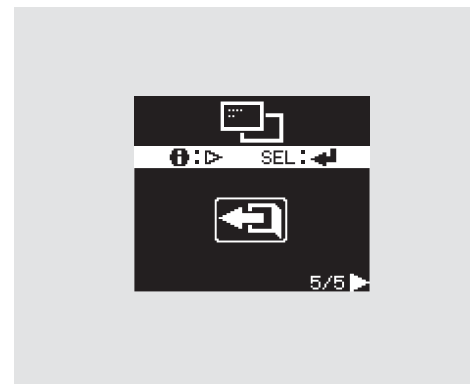




## Multi-Information Display

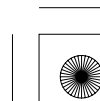
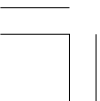
Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode, then press and release the INFO button repeatedly to select “CHG SETTING.” While the multi-information display is showing “CHG SETTING,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting mode.

Press and release the INFO button repeatedly until you see the setup you want to customize, and press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection. Each time you press the INFO button, the display changes as shown. To customize each setting, follow the procedures described on the following pages.



To exit the customizing mode after your selection, select the exit mode shown above by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display will return to the normal display.

*CONTINUED*






## Multi-Information Display

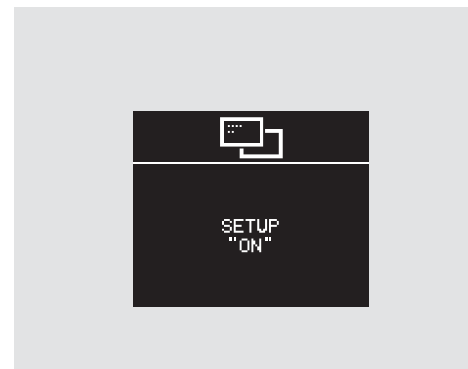
### *Warning Message*



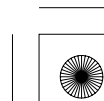
You can see message(s) with the system warning symbol on the multi-information display. While the multi-information display is showing “WARNING MESSAGE,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



You can select “ON” or “OFF”. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between on, off, and exit (  ). Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP ON” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.





## Multi-Information Display



If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

To return to the normal display, select the  display, then press the SEL/RESET button.

### *Outside Temperature Display Adjustment*

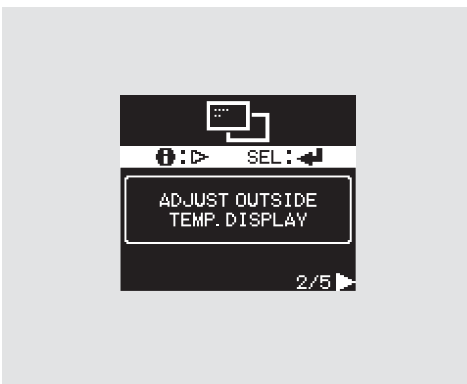
If you find that the temperature reading is always a few degrees below or above the actual temperature, adjust it as described in the following section.

*CONTINUED*

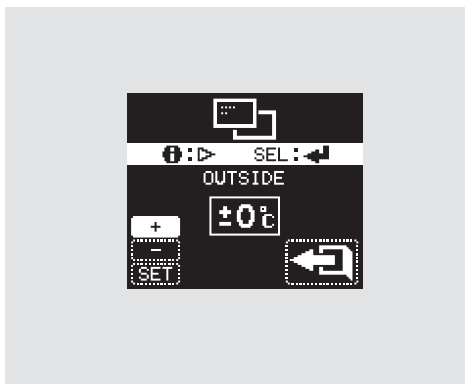




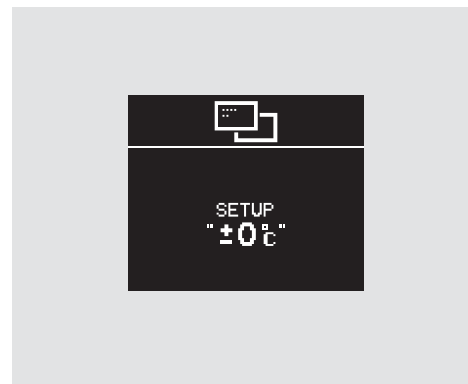
## Multi-Information Display



While the multi-information display is showing “ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



The highlighted number is the current adjustment above or below the outside temperature. Select either + or – icon by pressing the INFO button repeatedly then press the SEL/RESET button to change the setting value. You can select the value between 0, +1, +2, +3, and 0, –1, –2, –3. To enter your selection, select the SET icon by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP  $\pm 0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.



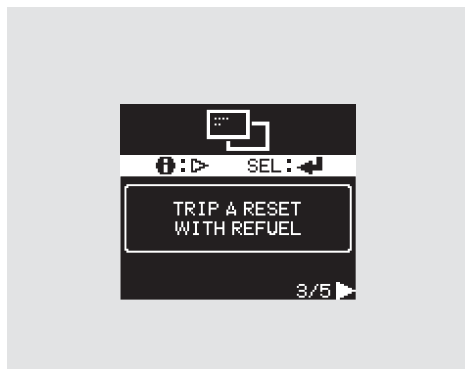


## Multi-Information Display

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

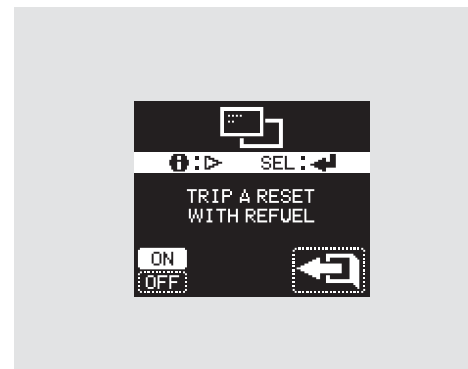
To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.


### *Trip A Reset With Refuel*



To cause the trip meter A and the average fuel economy for trip A to reset every time you refuel your vehicle, adjust it as follows.

While the multi-information display is showing “TRIP A RESET WITH REFUEL,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



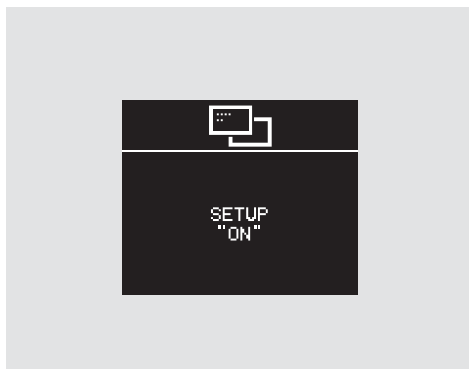
You can select “ON” or “OFF”. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between on, off, and exit (  ). Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

*CONTINUED*





## Multi-Information Display



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP ON” or “SETUP OFF” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

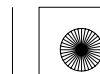
To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display will return to the normal display.

### *Elapsed Time Reset*



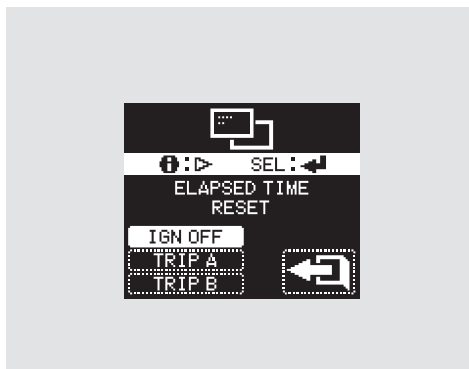
To cause the elapsed time to reset every time you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position or reset trip meter A or B, adjust it as described as follows.

While the multi-information display is showing “ELAPSED TIME RESET,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.





## Multi-Information Display

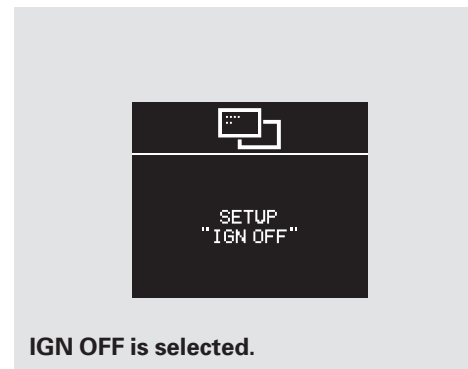


You can select “IGN OFF,” “TRIP A,” or “TRIP B”. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between them. Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

**IGN OFF:** The elapsed time is reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

**TRIP A:** The elapsed time is reset when you reset trip meter A.

**TRIP B:** The elapsed time is reset when you reset trip meter B.



**IGN OFF is selected.**

When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows the appropriate setting; “SETUP IGN OFF,” “SETUP TRIP A,” or “SETUP TRIP B” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

*CONTINUED*



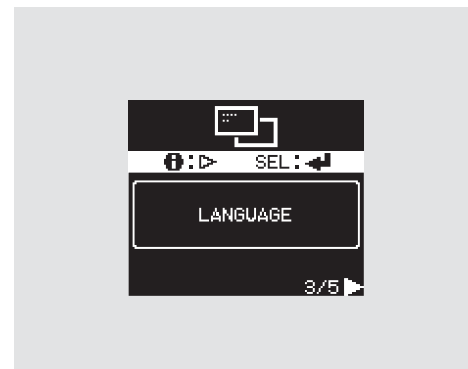


## Multi-Information Display

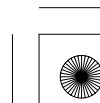
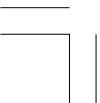
If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.

### Selecting Language

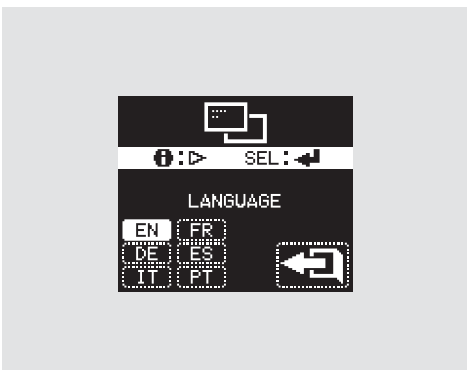


Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode, then press and release the INFO button to select “LANGUAGE.” While the multi-information display is showing “LANGUAGE,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.

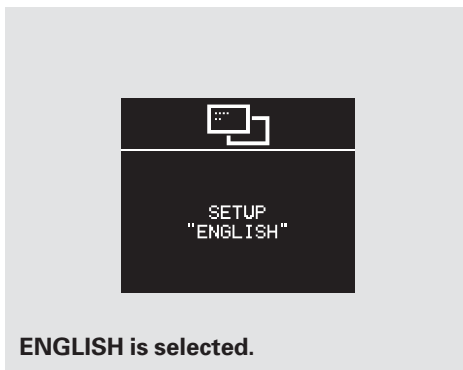




## Multi-Information Display

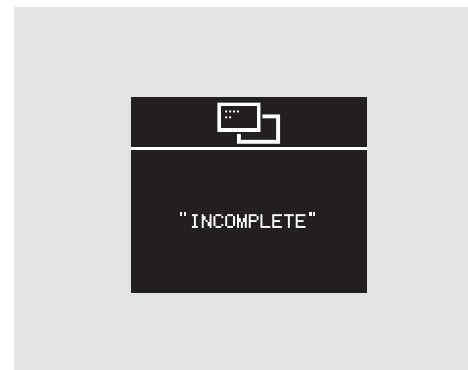


You can select any of the following languages: English, French, German, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese. Press and release the INFO button to select the language, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selection.

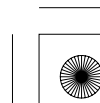
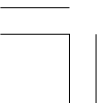


**ENGLISH is selected.**

When the language selection is successfully completed, the display changes to the screen shown above for a few seconds, then goes back to the "LANGUAGE" display. Press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.



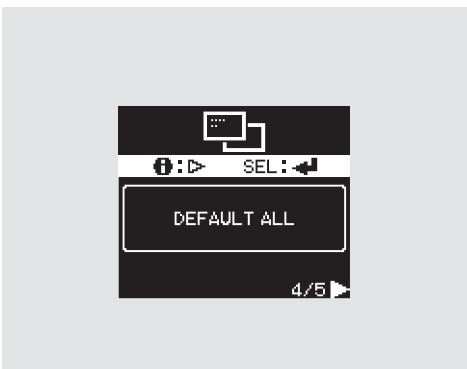
If you fail to set the language setting, you will see "INCOMPLETE" on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.



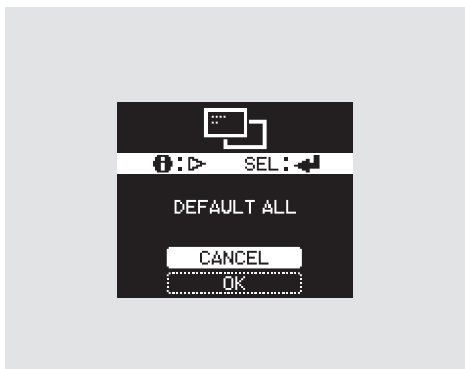


## Multi-Information Display

### Default Settings



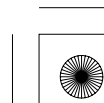
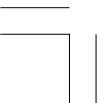
If you want to set the customizable vehicle control settings to the default setting, press the INFO button on the steering wheel repeatedly until “DEFAULT ALL” is displayed, then press the SEL/RESET button.



If you want to cancel “DEFAULT ALL,” select “CANCEL,” then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to the previous display.

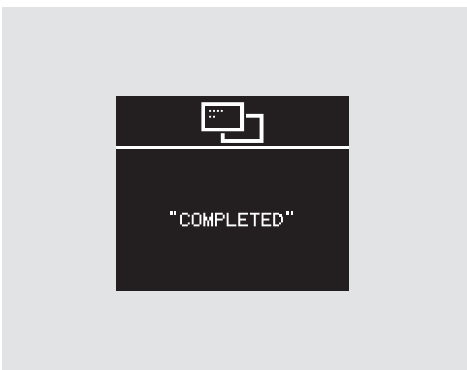


To set the default settings, select “OK” by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

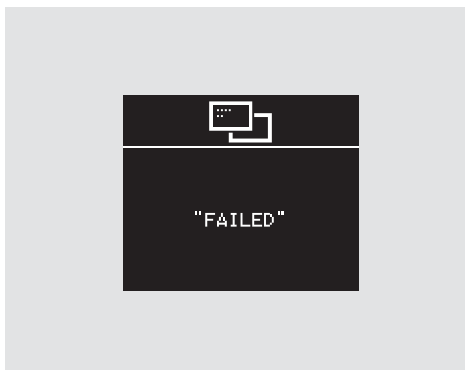




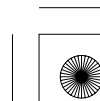
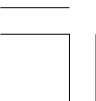
## Multi-Information Display



After the DEFAULT ALL operation is completed, you will see the above display for a few seconds, then the display switches to the language setting mode.

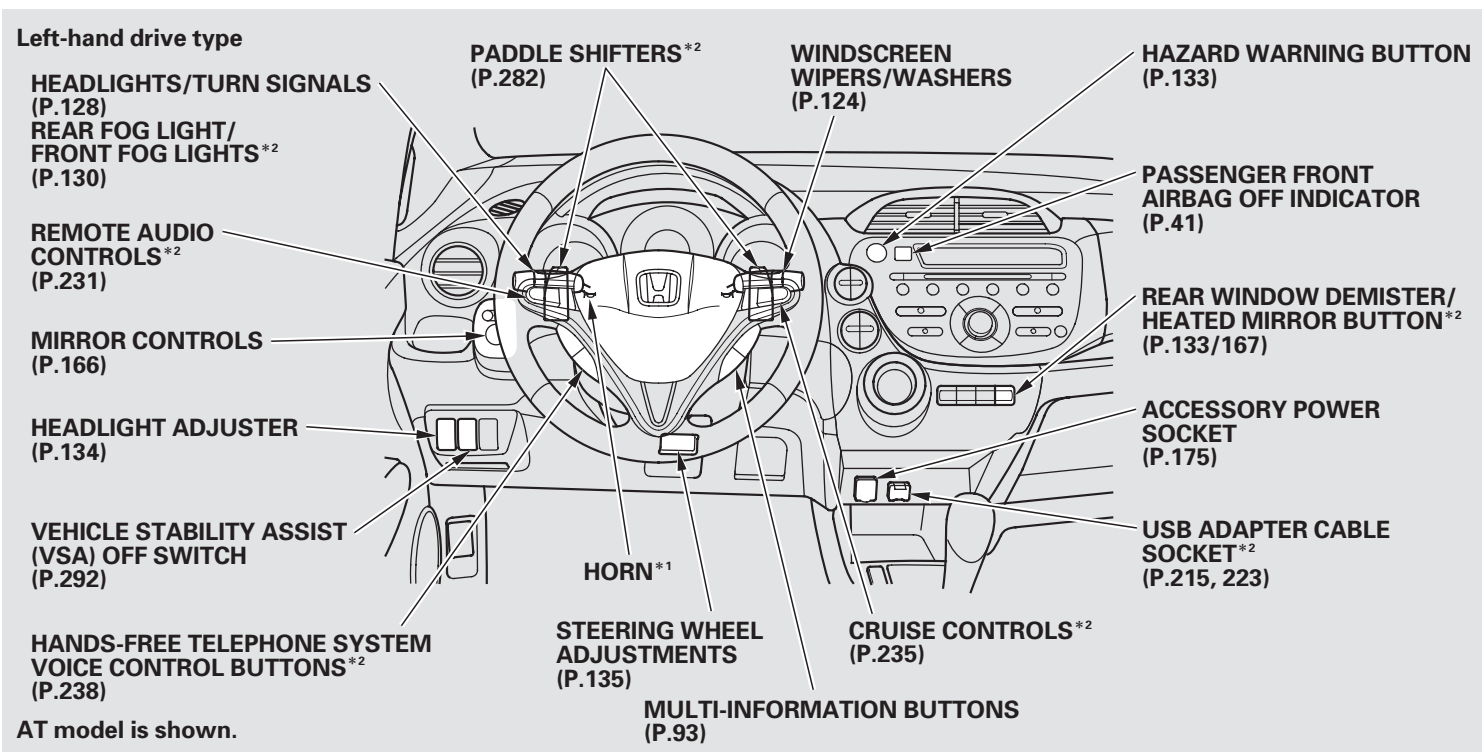


If the DEFAULT ALL operation is not successful, you will see the above display for a few seconds, then the display goes back to the setting display.





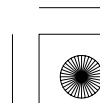
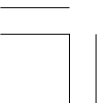
## Controls Near the Steering Wheel



\*1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

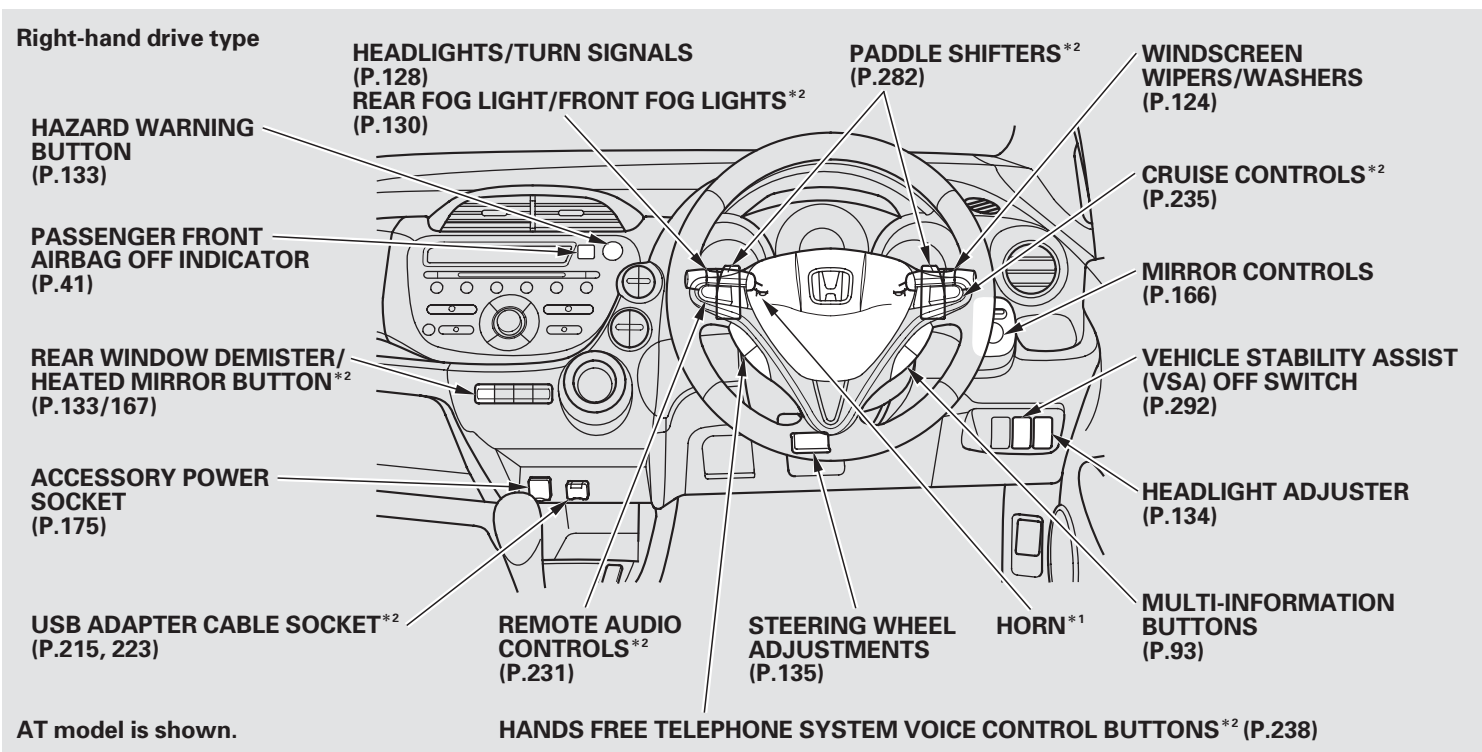
\*2 : If equipped

### 122 Instruments and Controls



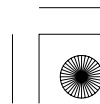
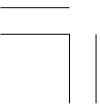


## Controls Near the Steering Wheel



\*1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

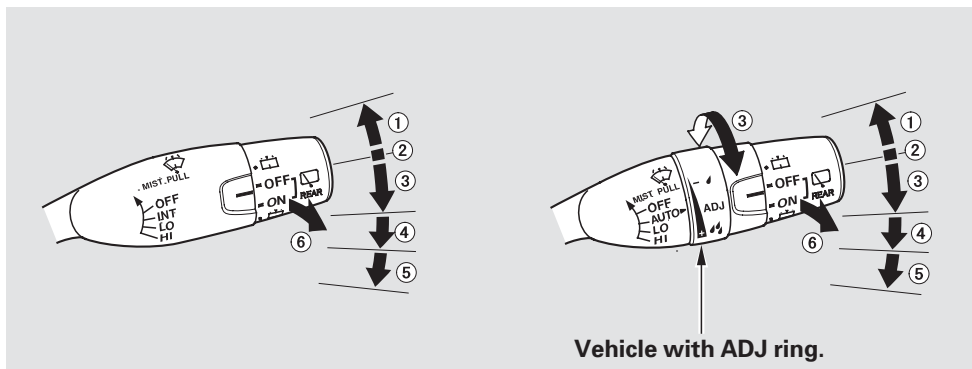
\*2 : If equipped





## Windscreen Wipers and Washers

### Windscreen Wipers



1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT — Intermittent (AUTO\*)
4. LO — Low speed
5. HI — High speed
6. Windscreen washers

\* : On vehicles with automatic intermittent wipers, see page 125 .

Push the lever up or down to select a position.

**MIST** — The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.


**OFF** — The wipers are not activated.

**INT** — The wipers operate every few seconds.

*On some models*

The length of the wiper interval is varied automatically according to the vehicle's speed.

Vary the delay by turning the adjustment ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay

(  position), the wipers change to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

While the vehicle is stopped and in gear, the wipers sweep the windscreen whenever you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

**LO** — The wipers run at low speed.

**HI** — The wipers run at high speed.

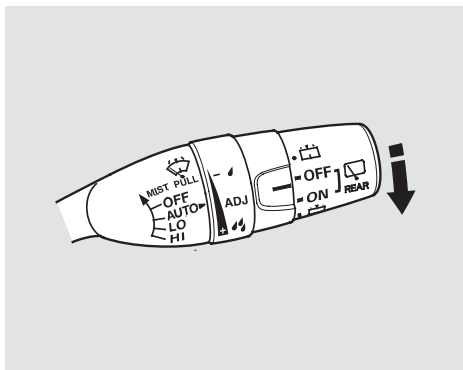




## Windscreen Wipers and Washers

**Windscreen Washers** — Pull the wiper control lever toward you, and hold it. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete one more sweep after you release the lever.

### *Automatic Intermittent Wipers* *On some models*



The automatic intermittent wiper system senses rainfall and automatically turns on the windscreen wipers. To enable sensing, push the lever down to select AUTO.

When the system senses rainfall, it turns on the windscreen wipers and varies their speed (intermittent, low speed, or high speed) depending on how hard it is raining.

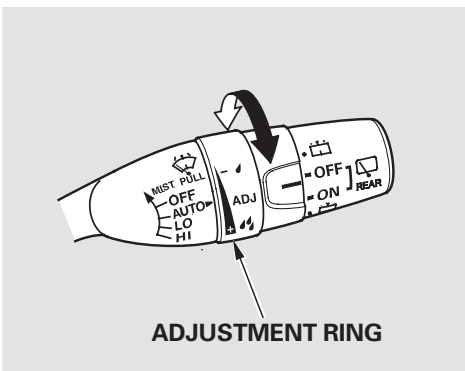
When the wiper lever is in the “LO” (low speed) or “HI” (high speed) position, the windscreen wipers run at that speed. Automatic sensing is disabled.

*CONTINUED*

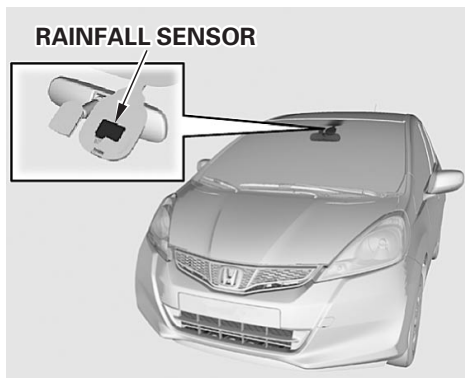




## Windscreen Wipers and Washers



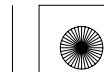
You can adjust the sensitivity of the system by turning the adjustment ring on the wiper lever.



The rainfall sensor is located in the windscreen near the rearview mirror. If the sensor is covered with mud, oil, dust, etc., the wipers may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly.

### NOTICE

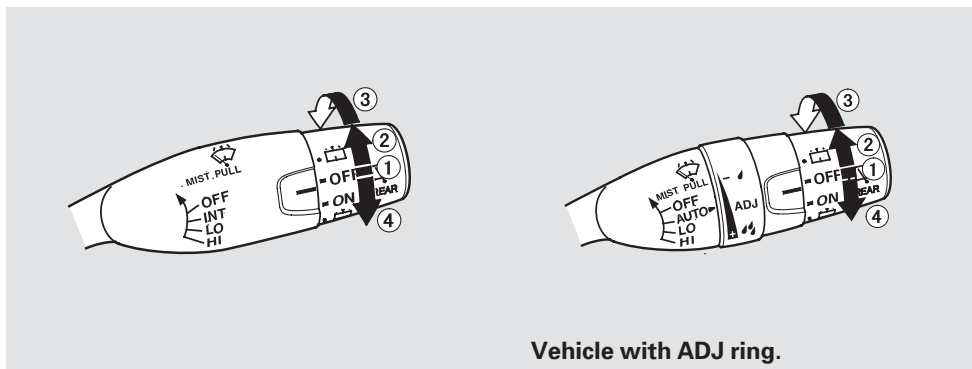
Do not position the wiper lever in AUTO when driving through a car wash. Turn off this system when not in use.





## Windscreen Wipers and Washers

### Rear Window Wiper and Washer



Vehicle with ADJ ring.

1. OFF  
When you turn the wiper switch to the "OFF" position, the wiper will return to its parked position.
2. Rotate the switch to ON to turn the rear window wiper on.

*On some models*

The wiper operates every 7 seconds after completing two sweeps.

3. Hold past ON to activate the rear window wiper a few times and to spray the rear window washer.
4. Rotate the switch down from the OFF position also to spray the window washer and turn the wiper on.

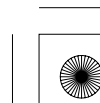
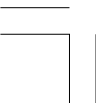
*On some models*

When you shift the transmission to the reverse position with the front windscreen wipers activated, the rear window wiper operates automatically.

When the front wiper control lever is set to the INT position, the rear wiper operates intermittently. When the front wiper is set to the LO or HI position, the rear wiper operates continuously.

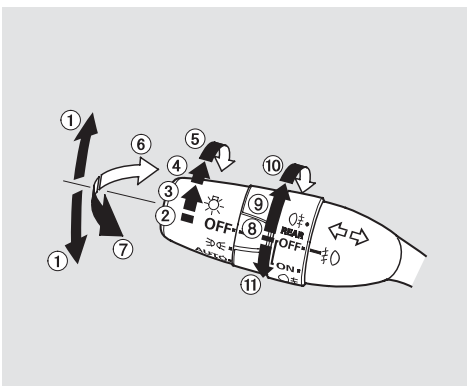
When the front wiper control lever is AUTO, the rear wiper operates according to the front wiper operation.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washer.





## Turn Signals and Headlights




1. Turn signal
  2. Off
  3. Position and instrument panel lights
  4. AUTO\*
  5. Headlights on
  6. High beams
  7. Flash high beams
  8. Fog lights off
  9. Front fog lights on\*
  10. Front and rear fog lights on\*
  11. Rear fog light on
- \* : If equipped

**Turn Signal** — Push down or up on the lever to signal a turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever in the proper direction and hold it. The lever will return to centre when you release it or complete a turn.



### *One-push Turn Signal*

To signal a lane change easily, push the turn signal lever in the proper direction lightly and release it. The left or right turn signal indicator on the instrument panel and the appropriate outside turn signals will blink three times.

If you hold the turn signal lever, the turn signal continues to blink and will stop when you release it.

**Headlights On** — Turning the switch to the “ ” position turns on the position lights, tail-lights, instrument panel lights, and rear licence plate lights.

Turning the switch to the “ ” position turns on the headlights.

When the light switch is in the “ ” or the “ ” position, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder.


This indicator stays on if you leave the lights on and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver's door.






## Headlights

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “HEADLIGHTS ON” message on the multi-information display.

**High Beams** — Push the lever forward until you hear a click to turn on the high beams. The blue high beam indicator will come on (see page 88). Pull the lever back to return to the low beams.

To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will stay on as long as you hold the lever back.


### Daytime Running Lights (For some types)

The daytime running lights come on automatically when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. They go out automatically when the light switch is turned to the  position.

*On some models*


**AUTO** — The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights when it senses low ambient light.

To turn on the automatic lighting, turn the light switch to the AUTO position. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

The lights turn off automatically when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, or turn the light switch to the  position.

Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or the engine off for a long time.

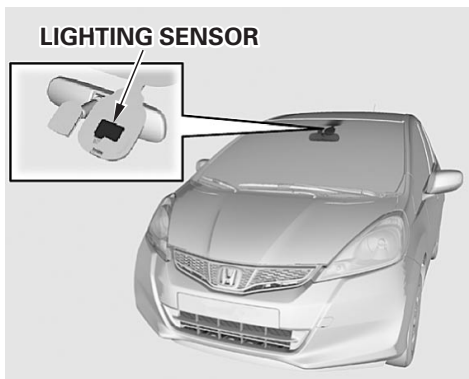
If there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system, you will see the symbol “,” or the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

CONTINUED



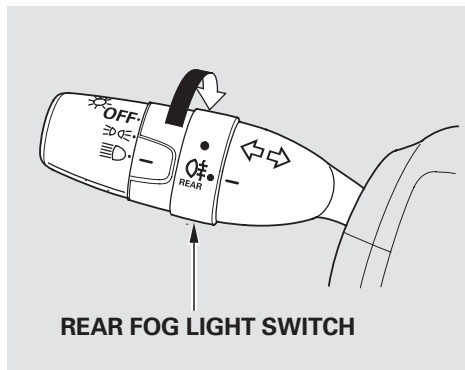



## Headlights, Front and Rear Fog Lights




The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on the windshield near the rearview mirror. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

### Rear Fog Light (For some types)



The rear fog light switch is located next to the light control switch. You can use the rear fog light when the headlights are on (the light control switch is in the  position).

To operate the rear fog light, turn the switch up from the off (•) position. The  indicator in the instrument panel comes on to indicate that the rear fog light is on.

You can turn off the rear fog light with the headlights on by turning the switch up again.

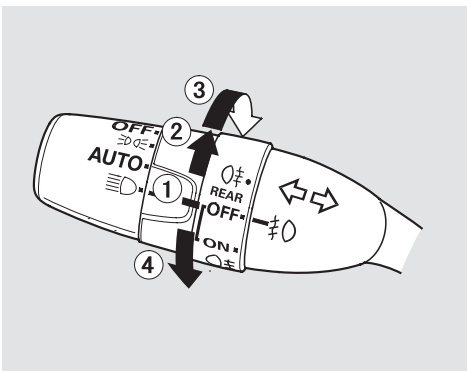
The rear fog light will go off when you turn the headlights off. To turn the rear fog light on again, you have to turn the rear fog light switch again with the headlights on.





## Front and Rear Fog Lights

### Front and Rear Fog Lights (For some types)





1. Off
2. Front fog lights on
3. Front and rear fog lights on
4. Rear fog light on



The fog light switch is located next to the light control switch.

**Front Fog Lights On** — Turn the switch up from the OFF position to the ON position. The  indicator

in the instrument panel comes on as a reminder.

You can turn on the front fog lights when the light control switch is in the  or  position.


To turn off the front fog lights, turn the fog light switch to the OFF position.


**Front and Rear Fog Lights On** — Turn the fog light switch one position up from the front fog lights on position. In addition to the  indicator, the  indicator comes on as a reminder to indicate that the rear fog light is on.

You can turn on the rear fog light when the front fog light is turned on.

To turn off the rear fog light with the front fog lights on, turn the fog light switch up again.

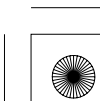
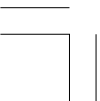
The front and rear fog lights will go off when you turn the light control switch off. When you turn the light control switch on again, the front fog lights only will also turn on.

**Rear Fog Light On** — Turn the fog light switch down from the OFF position. The  indicator in the instrument panel comes on as a reminder.

The rear fog light turns on only when the light control switch is in the  position.

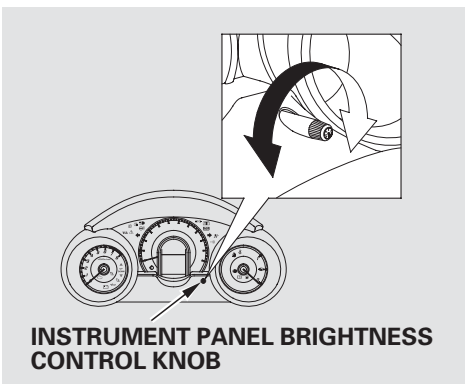
To turn off the rear fog light with the headlights on, turn the fog light switch down again.

When you turn off the headlights, the rear fog light will go off. To turn it on again, you have to operate the fog light switch again.

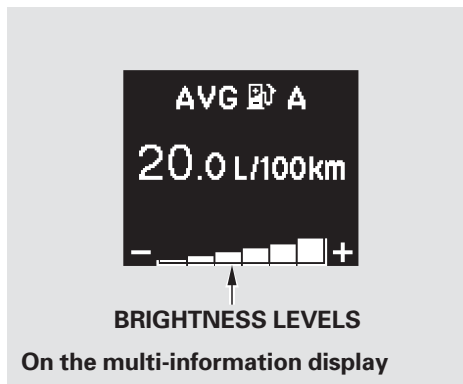




## Instrument Panel Brightness





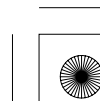
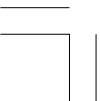
The knob on the instrument panel controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights. Turn the knob to adjust the brightness with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position and the position lights on.



The brightness can be shown within the six brightness levels. When you turn the knob, the lower segment of the display changes to vertical bars that show you the current level.

You will hear a tone when you reach the maximum or minimum brightness. The brightness level goes out about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting.

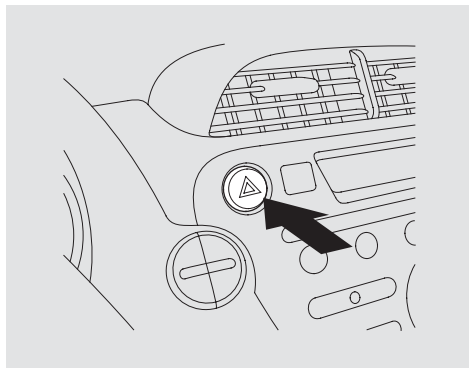
To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to the  or  position. Turning the knob to the right until you hear a tone will cancel the reduced brightness.





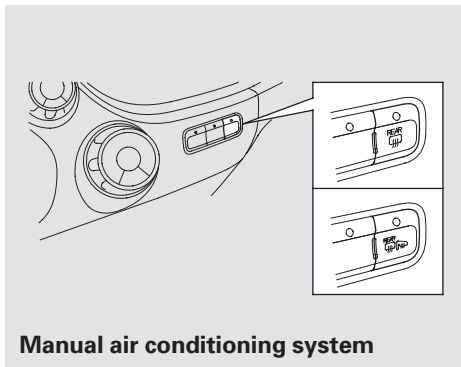
## Hazard Warning Button, Rear Window Demister

### Hazard Warning Button



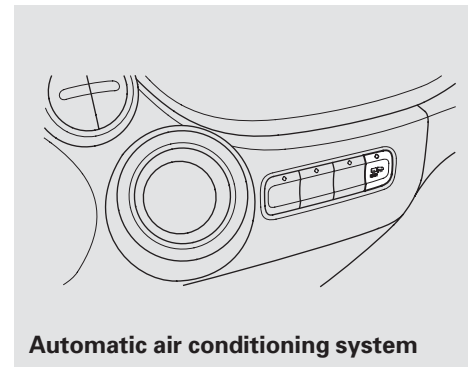
Push the red button to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all outside turn signals and both turn indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use these lights to give a warning to other road users that your vehicle is causing a hazard.

### Rear Window Demister



Manual air conditioning system

The rear window demister will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Push the demister button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the demister is on. It shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch. You have to turn the demister on again when you restart the vehicle.



Automatic air conditioning system

*On models with automatic air conditioning system*  
The demister will shut itself off within about 10 to 30 minutes according to the outside temperature.

In cold weather, the demister will not automatically shut itself off. You must manually shut off the rear window demister when it is no longer needed.

*CONTINUED*





## Rear Window Demister, Headlight Adjuster

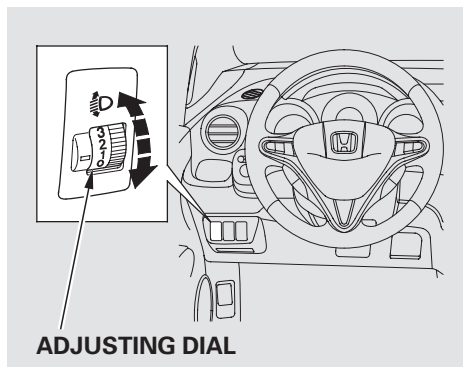
Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The demister wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side-to-side.

*On some models*

Pushing the demister also turns the mirror heaters on and off. For more information, see page 167 .

### Headlight Adjuster



The vertical angle of the headlights can be adjusted according to the number of persons and the loading weight in the luggage area.

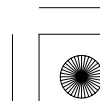
Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn the adjusting dial to select an appropriate angle of the headlights.

0: A driver or a driver and passenger in the front seat.

1: Five persons in the front and rear seats.

2: Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible rear axle weight or maximum permissible vehicle weight.

3: A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible rear axle weight or maximum permissible vehicle weight.





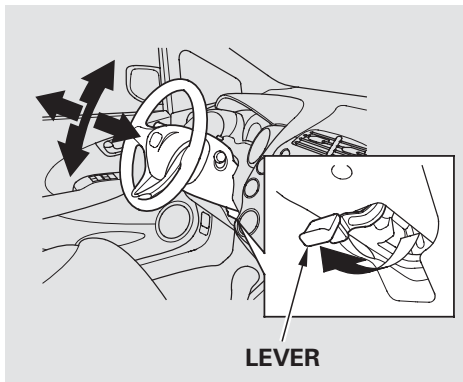
## Steering Wheel Adjustments

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.**

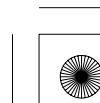
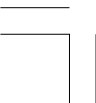
**Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.**



To adjust the steering wheel:

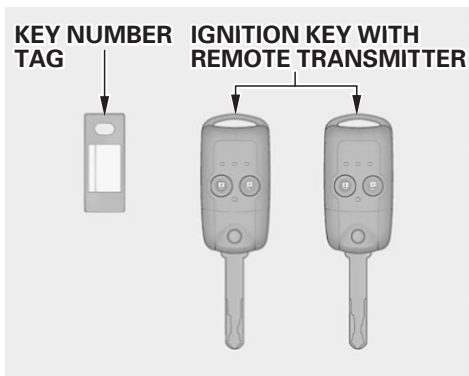
1. Pull the lever under the steering column all the way up.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out, so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

3. Push the lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.





## Keys and Locks



Two ignition keys come with your vehicle. You should keep one of them in a safe place, away from the vehicle, as a spare. They fit all the locks on your vehicle.

You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Honda-approved key blanks.

### ***Remote Transmitter***

Your two ignition keys are also fitted with remote transmitters; see page 142 for an explanation of the operation.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

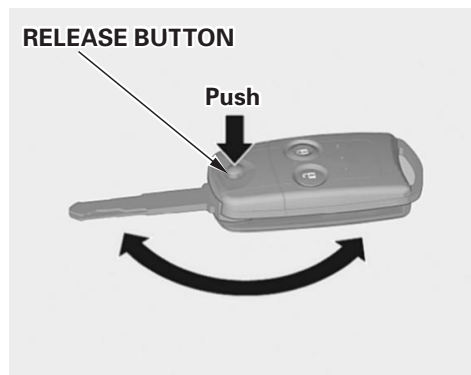
- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.





## Keys and Locks

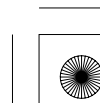
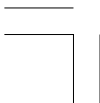
### *Retractable Ignition Key*



The ignition key can be retracted into the remote transmitter. To use the key, push the release button to release the key from the transmitter. The key should be fully extended. To retract the key, push the release button and at the same time push the key into the remote transmitter until it is securely latched.

If the key is not pivoted out fully and securely, you may not turn the key properly and the immobilizer system may not recognize your key properly.

The key may come in contact with your finger while being retracted or extended. Make sure your fingers do not touch the pivot of the key when retracting or extending the key.





## Immobilizer System

---

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key chain) is near the ignition switch when you insert the key.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

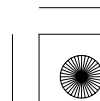
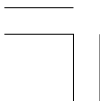
Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact your dealer.

### EC Directives

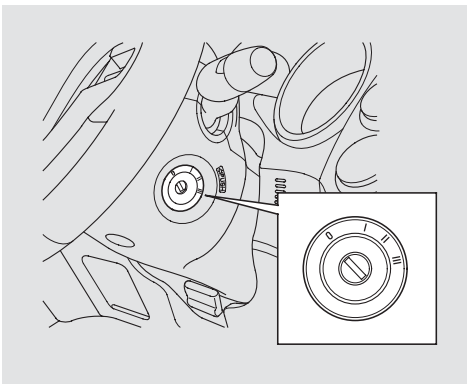
This immobilizer system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

**CE 0891**





## Ignition Switch



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK (0), ACCESSORY (I), ON (II), and START (III).

**LOCK (0)** — You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key, push it in slightly.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

**ACCESSORY (I)** — You can operate the audio system and the accessory power socket in this position.

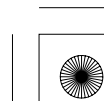
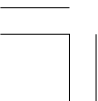
**ON (II)** — This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (I) to the ON (II) position.

On some types, the headlights come on automatically in this position.

**START (III)** — Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door. You will also see the symbol “,” or the symbol with an “IGNITION KEY” message on the multi-information display. Remove the key to turn off the beeper and the warning symbol.

*CONTINUED*





## Ignition Switch, Door Locks

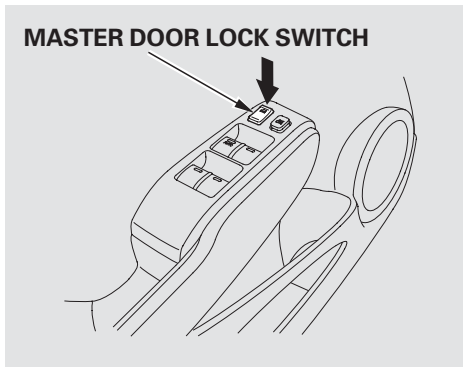
### **⚠ WARNING**

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

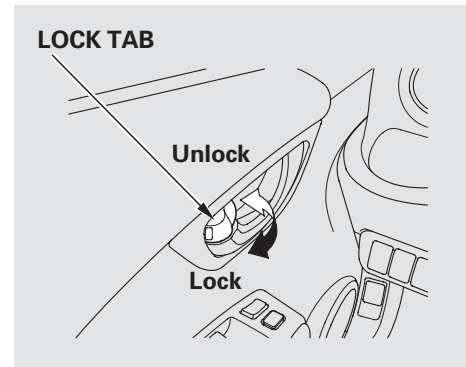
### Power Door Locks

#### MASTER DOOR LOCK SWITCH



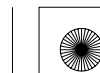
The master door lock switch allows control of all doors and the tailgate locks from the driver's door. Push the top of the switch to lock all doors and tailgate, and push the bottom to unlock them.

#### LOCK TAB



Each door has a lock tab next to the inside door handle. When you pull out or push in the lock tab on the driver's door, all doors and the tailgate lock or unlock. The lock tab on each passenger's door only locks and unlocks that door.

When the door is unlocked, the red mark on the lock tab is shown.





## Door Locks

All doors and tailgate lock or unlock when you use the key to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Locking and unlocking the driver's door will also lock and unlock the fuel fill door (see page 259 ).

To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the vehicle, pull the lock tab rearward and close the door. To lock the driver's door, remove the key from the ignition switch, pull and hold the outside door handle, and pull the lock tab rearward or push the top of the master door lock switch, then close the door.

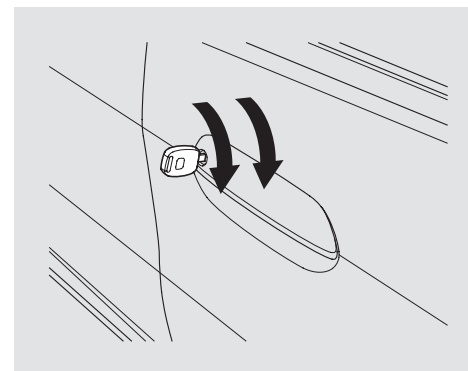
When you lock the doors and the tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system (if equipped) has set. When you unlock them, these lights flash once.

The security system also activates after you lock the doors and the tailgate with the lock tab on the driver's door or the master door lock switch (see page 234 ).

### **Lockout Prevention**

With the driver's door open and the key in the ignition switch, the master door lock switch is disabled. It is not disabled if the driver's door is closed. If you try to lock the open driver's door with the key in the ignition switch by pushing in the lock tab, the tabs on all doors pop up when you close the door.

### **Super Locking (For some types)**



The super locking helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. To set the super locking, turn the key towards the front of the vehicle twice within 5 seconds.

*CONTINUED*





## Door Locks

The super locking will not set if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed. It will be set even if the bonnet, or any window is open.

With the super locking set, the master door lock switch on the driver's door and the lock tabs on all doors are disabled.

You can also set the super locking with the remote transmitter. To set it, push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds (see page 141 ).

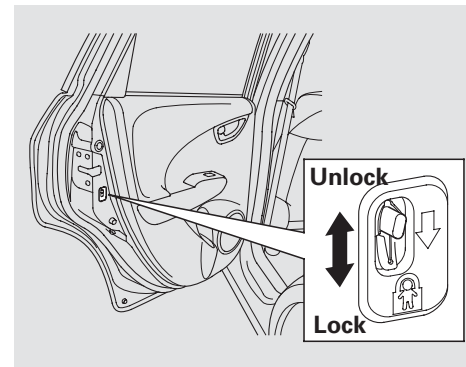
To cancel the super locking, unlock the driver's door with the key or the remote transmitter.

### ⚠ WARNING

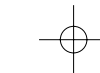
**If there are persons inside the vehicle with the super locking set, they cannot unlock the doors from the inside.**

**Make sure there is no person inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.**

### Childproof Door Locks

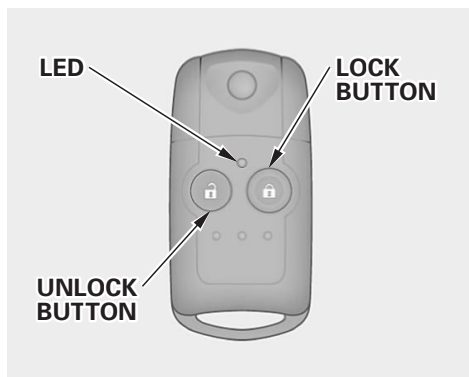


The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position (lever is down), the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, push in the lock tab, and use the outside door handle.





## Remote Transmitter



**LOCK** — Press this button to lock all doors and the tailgate. When you push the LOCK button, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system (if equipped) has set. You cannot lock the doors and the tailgate if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed or the key is in the ignition switch.

**UNLOCK** — Press this button to unlock all doors and the tailgate. When you push the UNLOCK button, all outside turn signals, and both indicators in the instrument panel flash once.

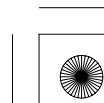
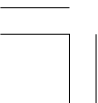
The ceiling light (if the ceiling light switch is in the centre position) will come on when you press the UNLOCK button. If you do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, the light fades out. If you relock the doors with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the light will go off immediately.

If you use the unlock feature on the remote transmitter, but do not open any door or the tailgate within 30 seconds, the doors and the tailgate automatically relock.

You cannot unlock the doors and the tailgate if the key is in the ignition switch.

Locking and unlocking the driver's door will also lock and unlock the fuel fill door (see page 259 ).

*CONTINUED*





## Remote Transmitter

### ***Super Locking (For some types)***

You can set the super locking with the remote transmitter. To set the super locking, push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds.

The super locking will not set if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed. It will be set even if the bonnet or any window is open.

To cancel the super locking, push the UNLOCK button on the remote transmitter, or unlock the driver's door with the key.

See page 141 for information on the super locking.

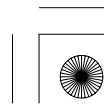
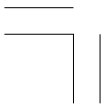
### **⚠ WARNING**

**If there are persons inside the vehicle with the super locking set, they cannot unlock the doors from the inside.**

**Make sure there is no person inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.**

### **Remote Transmitter Care**

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.





## Remote Transmitter

### Replacing the Transmitter Battery

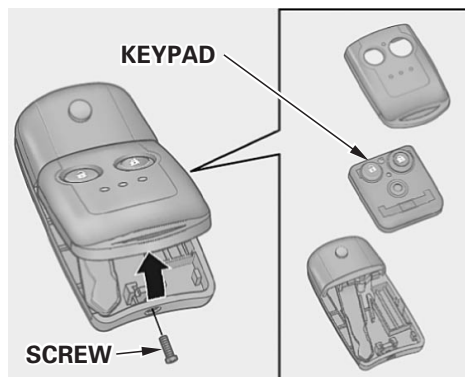
If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors and the hatch, replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616

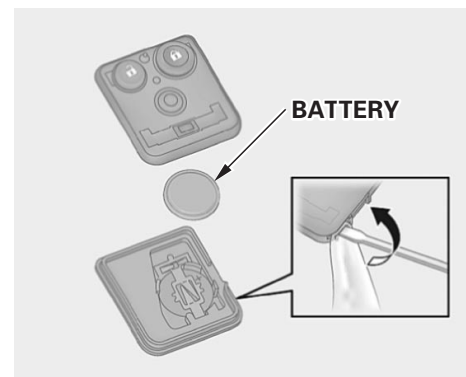
To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.

**NOTE:** Be careful when removing this screw as the head of the screw can strip out.

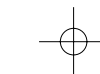


2. Separate the keypad from the transmitter by pushing any button from outside.



3. Place a cloth on the edge of the keypad to prevent scratches, and remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.

*CONTINUED*





## Remote Transmitter

---

4. Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (+ side facing down), then insert it in the keypad.
5. Snap the two halves of the keypad, then install the parts in reverse order.



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

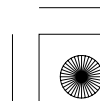
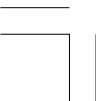
### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.  
Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

(EU models)  
EC Directives

This immobilizer system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

**CE 0891**

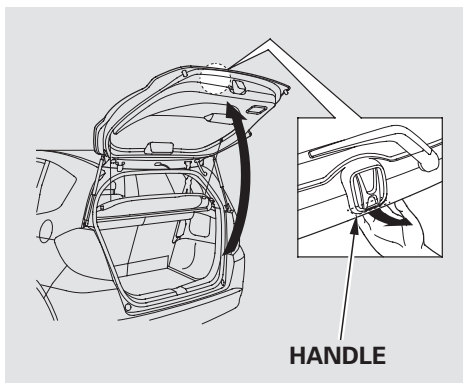




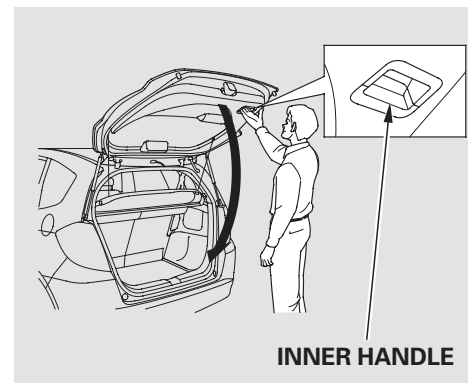
## Tailgate

The tailgate will lock or unlock when you lock or unlock the driver's door with the key, the master door lock switch, or the lock tab on the driver's door.

The tailgate will also lock or unlock when you lock or unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.



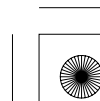
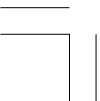
To open the tailgate, pull the handle, then lift up. To close it, use the inner handle to pull down, then press down on the back edge.



Be sure all passengers or any objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Make sure the tailgate is closed before you start driving.

Keep the tailgate closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the tailgate and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 73.

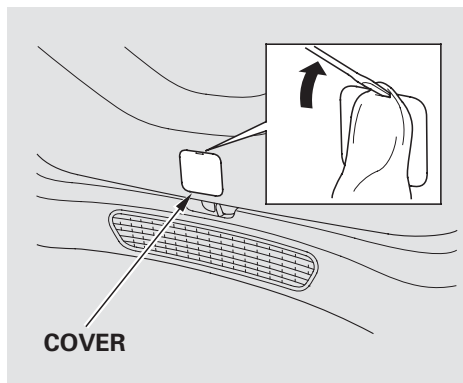




## Tailgate

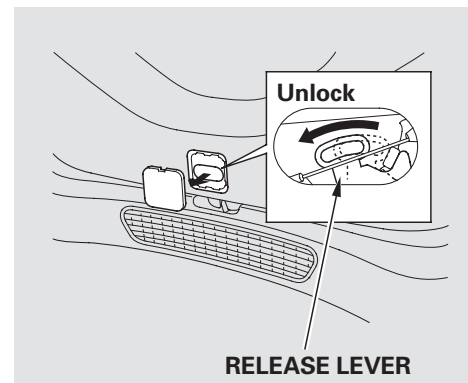
### Opening the Tailgate Manually

If the power door lock system cannot unlock the tailgate, unlock it manually.



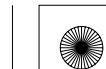
To open the tailgate, access the tailgate release lever from inside the vehicle.

Place a cloth on the upper edge of the cover to prevent scratches, then use a small flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.



Push the release lever to the lower left as shown.

If you need to open the tailgate manually, it means there is a problem with the tailgate. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.



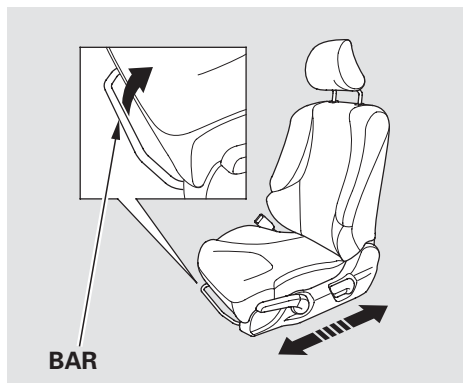


## Seats

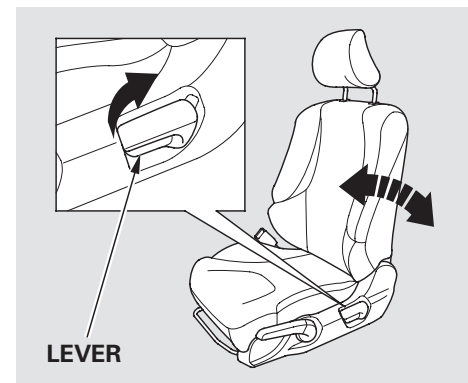
### Front Seat Adjustments

See pages 16 – 17 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

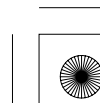
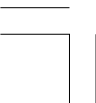


To adjust the seat forward or backward, pull up on the bar under the seat cushion's front edge. Move the seat to the desired position, and release the bar. Try to move the seat to make sure it is locked in position.



To change the seat-back angle, pull up on the lever on the outside of the seat cushion.

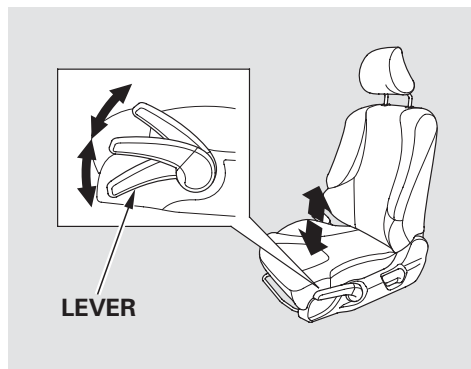
Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.





## Seats

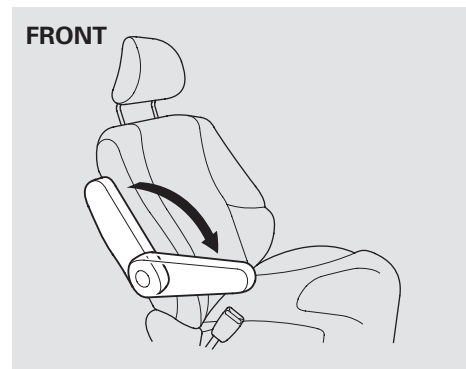
### Driver's Seat Height Adjustment



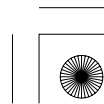
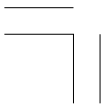
The height of your driver's seat is adjustable. To raise the seat, repeatedly pull up the lever on the outside of the seat cushion. To lower the seat, push the lever down repeatedly.

Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

### Armrests (For some types)



The driver's seat has an armrest on the side of the seat-back. To use it, pivot it down.





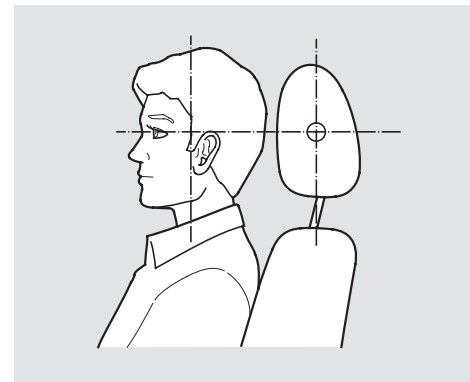
## Seats

### Head Restraints

*See page 17 for important safety information and a warning about improperly positioning head restraints.*

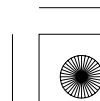
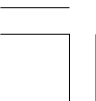
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from the likelihood of whiplash and other injuries.

The head restraints help protect you and your passengers from the likelihood of whiplash and other injuries.



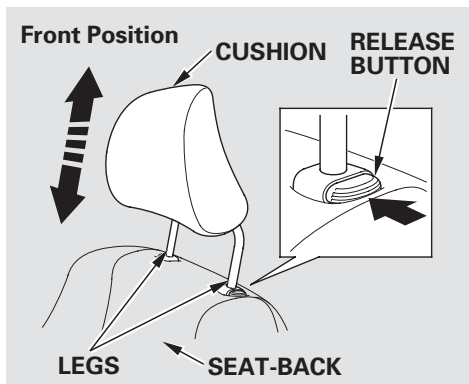
They are most effective when you adjust them so the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint.

CONTINUED



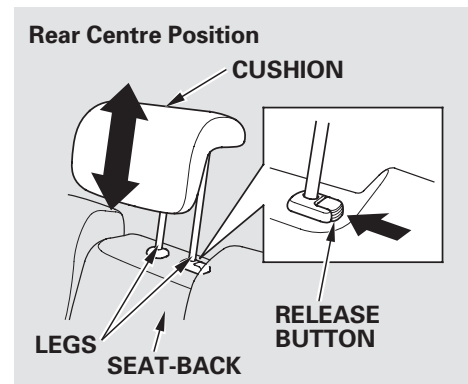
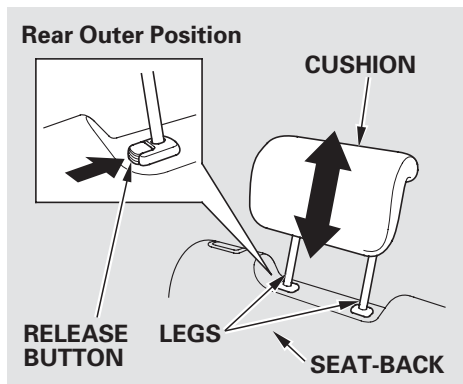


## Seats

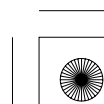


### *Adjusting the Head Restraint*

The front head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust a restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.



When a passenger is seated in the rear seating position, make sure the rear head restraint is adjusted to its highest position.





## Seats

### ***Removing the Head Restraint***

To remove a head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button, then pull the restraint out of the seat-back.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.**

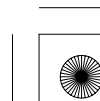
**Always replace the head restraints before driving.**

Make sure the removed head restraints are securely stored.

When reinstalling a head restraint, put the legs back in place. Then adjust it to the appropriate height while pressing the release button.

Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you reinstall it.

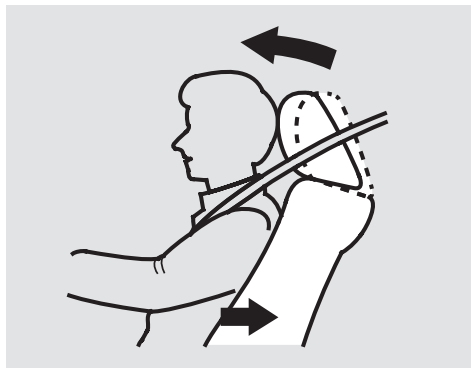
*CONTINUED*





## Seats

### *Active Head Restraints*



The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. If the vehicle is struck severely from the rear, the occupant properly secured with the seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will automatically move forward.

This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head. It also helps protect the occupants against the likelihood of whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.

After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position.

If the restraints do not return to their normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by a Honda dealer.

For a head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.
- Only use genuine Honda replacement head restraints.






## Seats

### Folding the Rear Seat Up

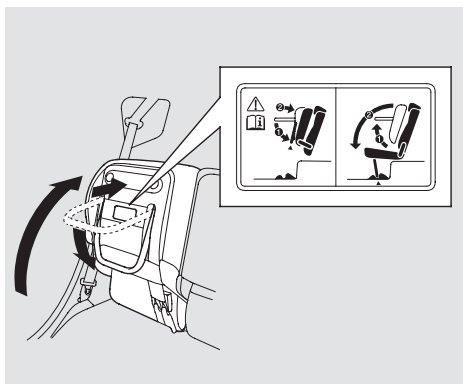
The left and right rear seat cushions can be lifted up separately to make room for luggage.

Remove any items from the seat before you fold up the seat cushion.

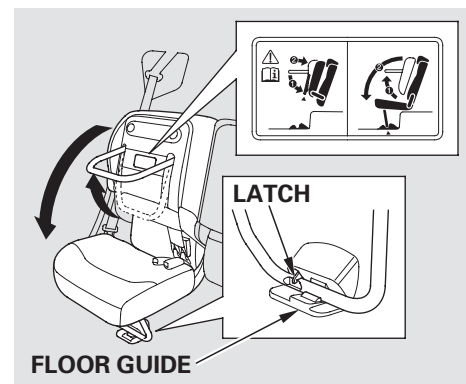


 This label on the back of the rear seats instructs you to refer to the owner's manual for correct operation.

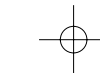
Make sure the detachable anchor is unlatched and stored in the retractor housing (see page 158 ) before lifting the rear seat cushion up.



Pull up the rear seat cushion, and fold the seat leg down. Push the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.



To return the seat cushion to its original position, first make sure there are no items on the floor, then pull up the seat leg fully, and push down the seat cushion slowly while holding it with your hands. Set the seat leg in the floor guide. A latch comes out when the leg is set properly.





## Seats

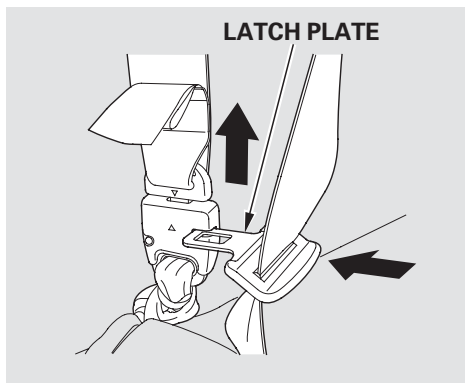
### Folding the Rear Seats Down

The rear seat-backs can be folded down for more luggage room.

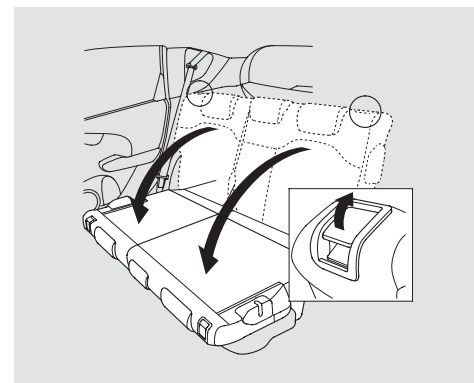
Each side folds down separately, so you can still carry a passenger in the rear outer seating position.

Remove any items from the seat before folding down the seat-back.

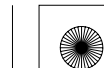
Make sure there are no items on the floor before folding down the seats.



When you are folding the rear centre seat-back, use the latch plate to release the centre seat belt from the detachable anchor (see page 158 ). Allow the seat belt to retract into the holder on the ceiling and store the buckles in it.



1. Lower the rear head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Pull up the release lever on the outside of the seat-back.
3. Fold the seat-back forward.





## Seats

Do not put any heavy items on the seat-back when it is folded down.

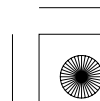
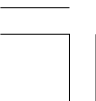
Reverse this procedure to return the seat-back to the upright position. Make sure the seat is secured and the seat belt is in front of the seat-back before driving.

In the rear centre seating position, be sure the detachable anchor is latched securely (see page 158 ).

Make sure all items in the luggage area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See **Carrying Luggage** on page 267 ).

If your vehicle is equipped with a flexible luggage board, do not use the board when any seat-back is folded down. Objects placed on this board can be thrown forward and occupants can be injured during sudden stops or a collision.

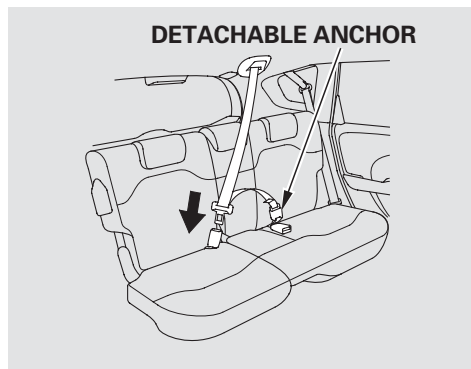
For more information on the flexible luggage board, see page 176 .





## Seats

### Detachable Anchor

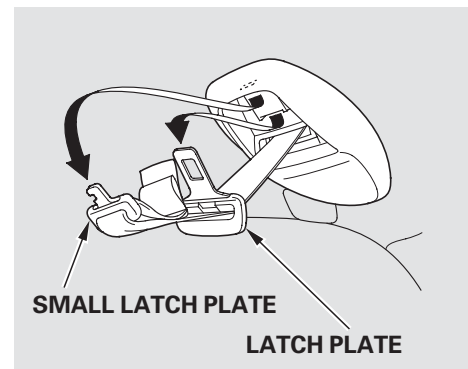


The seat belt in the rear centre seat is equipped with a detachable anchor. This allows the centre seat belt to be unlatched when the rear centre seat is folded.

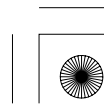
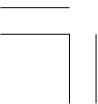
### **⚠ WARNING**

**Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.**

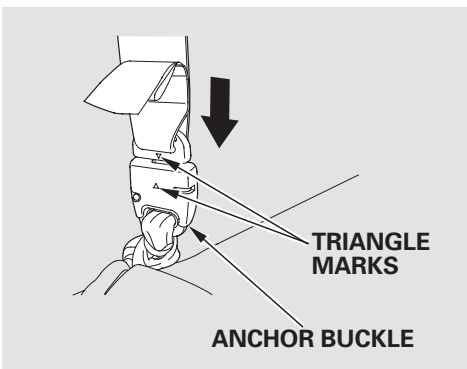


Pull out the small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling, and pull out the seat belt to extend it.



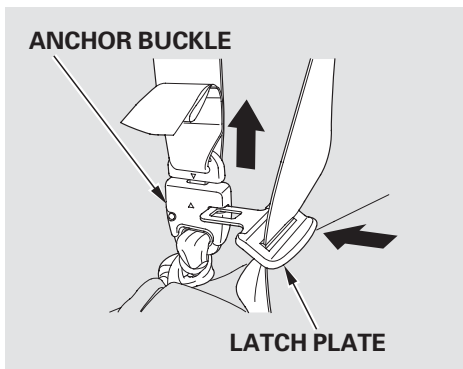


## Seats

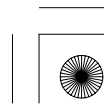
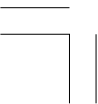


Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle when reattaching the belt and buckle.

Tug on the seat belt to verify that the detachable anchor is securely latched. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

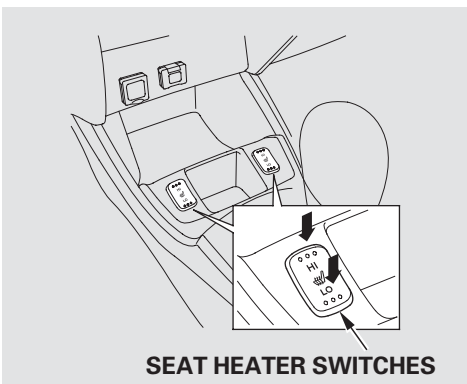


To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle. Store the detachable anchor and seat belt latch plates in the retractor housing.





## Seat Heaters (For some types)



Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use the heaters.

Push the front of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the back of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

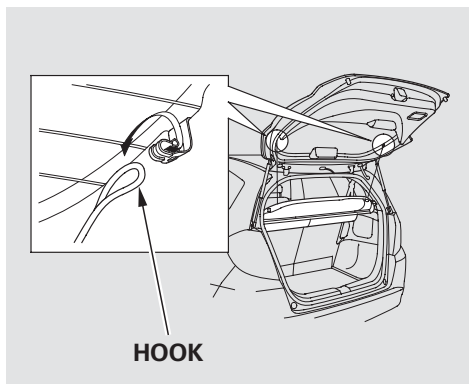
Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters, even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

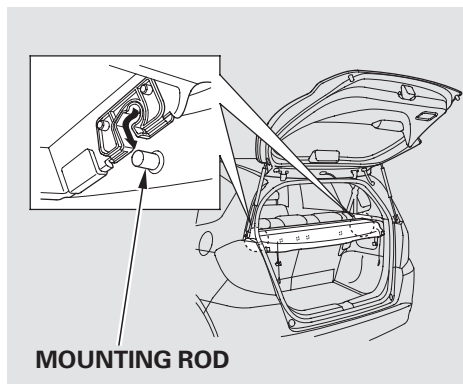




## Luggage Area Cover (For some types)



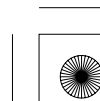
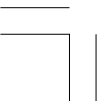
The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage height.



To remove the cover, take off the hooks from the tailgate, slide the cover towards the rear, then lift it straight up.

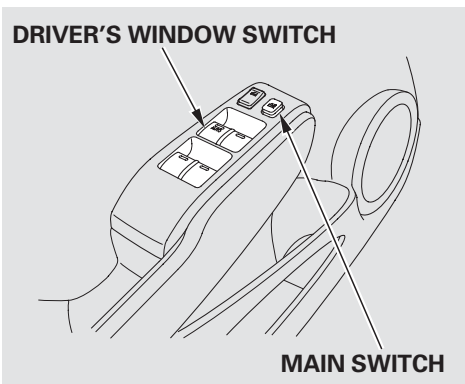
To install the cover, set the mounting rods to the recesses and slide the cover towards the front until it clips into place. Make sure it is securely latched so it will not come loose while you are driving.

Lower the tailgate and put the hooks back in place.





## Power Windows



Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window, on some models, either front window. To open a window, push the switch down lightly and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.**

**Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.**

**WARNING:** *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*

The driver's door armrest has a master power window control panel. To open any of the passengers' windows, push down lightly on the appropriate switch, and hold it until the window reaches the desired position. To close the window, pull back lightly on the window switch. Release the switch when the window gets to the position you want.

**AUTO** – To open the driver's window fully, push the window switch firmly down, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

To close the driver's window fully, pull back the window switch firmly, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.





## Power Windows

To open or close the driver's window partially, push down or pull back on the window switch lightly and hold it. The window will stop when you release the switch.

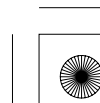
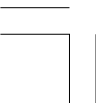
When you push the MAIN switch in, the switch is off, and the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again to get it to pop out. Keep the MAIN switch pushed in when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

**AUTO REVERSE** — If the driver's window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

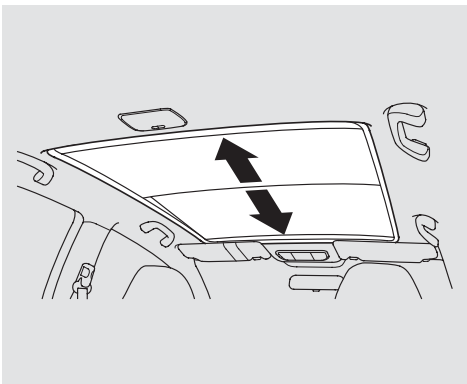
**NOTE:** The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The power windows have a key-off delay. You can still open and close the windows for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position for the power windows to operate.

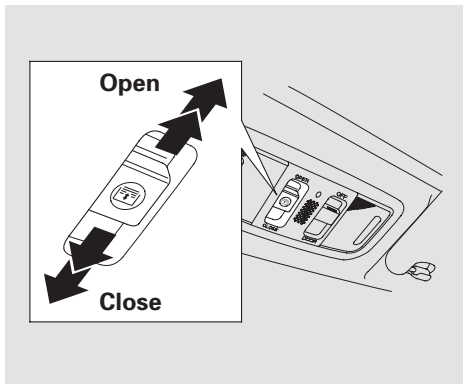




## Sunshade (For some types)



Use the switch on the front ceiling to operate the sunshade. You must turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to operate the sunshade.



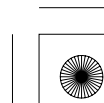
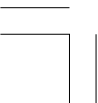
To open the sunshade, pull the switch rearward and hold it. Release the switch when the sunshade reaches the desired position. Push the switch forward and hold it to close the sunshade. Release the switch to stop the operation.

### **WARNING**

Opening or closing the sunshade on someone's hands or fingers may cause injury.

**Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunshade before opening or closing it.**

**WARNING:** *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*





## Sunshade (For some types)

**AUTO** — To open the sunshade fully, pull the switch rearward firmly, then release it. The sunshade automatically opens all the way. To stop the sunshade from opening, push on the switch briefly.

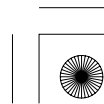
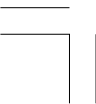
To close the sunshade fully, push the switch forward firmly, then release it. The sunshade automatically closes all the way. To stop the sunshade from closing, push on the switch briefly.

To open or close the sunshade partially, pull or push the sunshade switch lightly and hold it. The sunshade will stop when you release the switch.

**AUTO REVERSE** — If the sunshade runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction and then stop. To close the sunshade, remove the obstacle, then use the sunshade switch again.

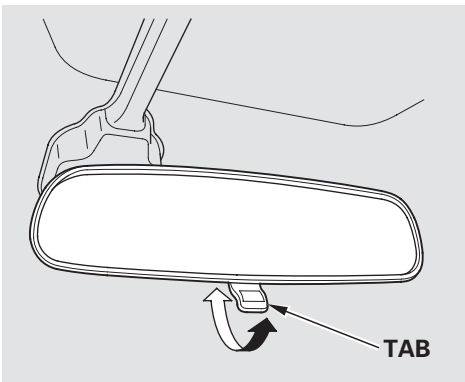
Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunshade is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunshade before closing it.

The sunshade has a key-off delay. You can still open and close the sunshade for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door.





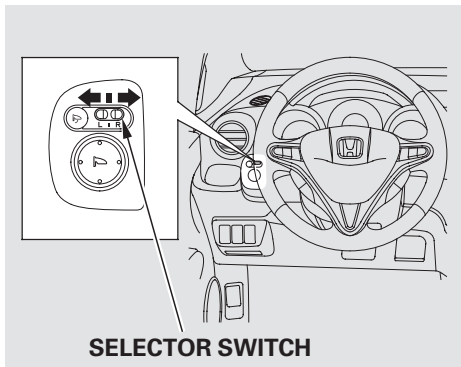
## Mirrors



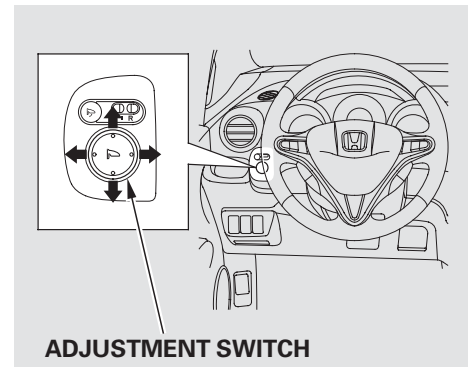
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.

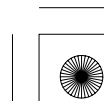
### Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Move the selector switch to L (left side) or R (right side).



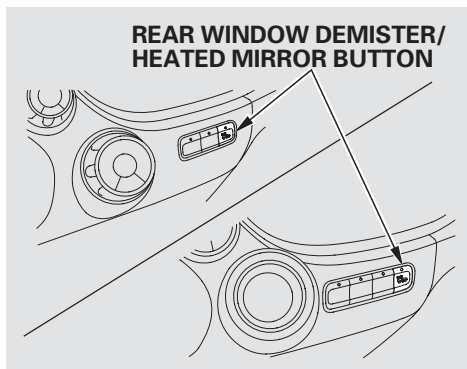
3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the centre (off) position. This turns off the adjustment switch to keep your settings.





## Mirrors

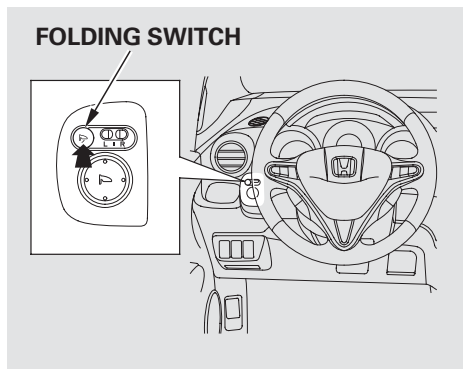
### Power Mirror Heaters (For some types)



The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the rear window demister button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters and the demister off.

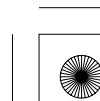
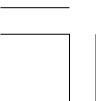
On some types, this heated mirror function has a timer (see page 133 ).

### Folding Door Mirrors (For some types)



Door mirrors can be folded by the folding switch next to the selector switch, which enables you to park your vehicle in a limited parking space easily. Make sure you fold out the mirrors before you start driving. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, press the folding switch to fold up both outside mirrors simultaneously. To fold out, press the switch again.

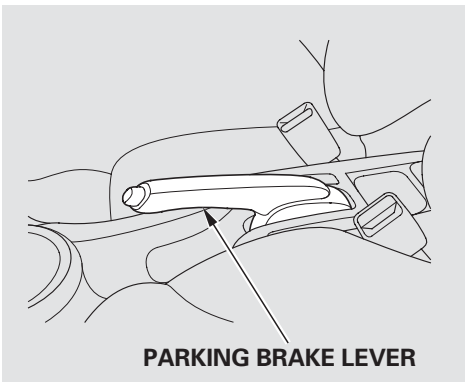
Never drive your vehicle with the outside mirrors folded.





## Parking Brake

---



To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 84 ).

### NOTICE

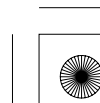
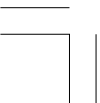
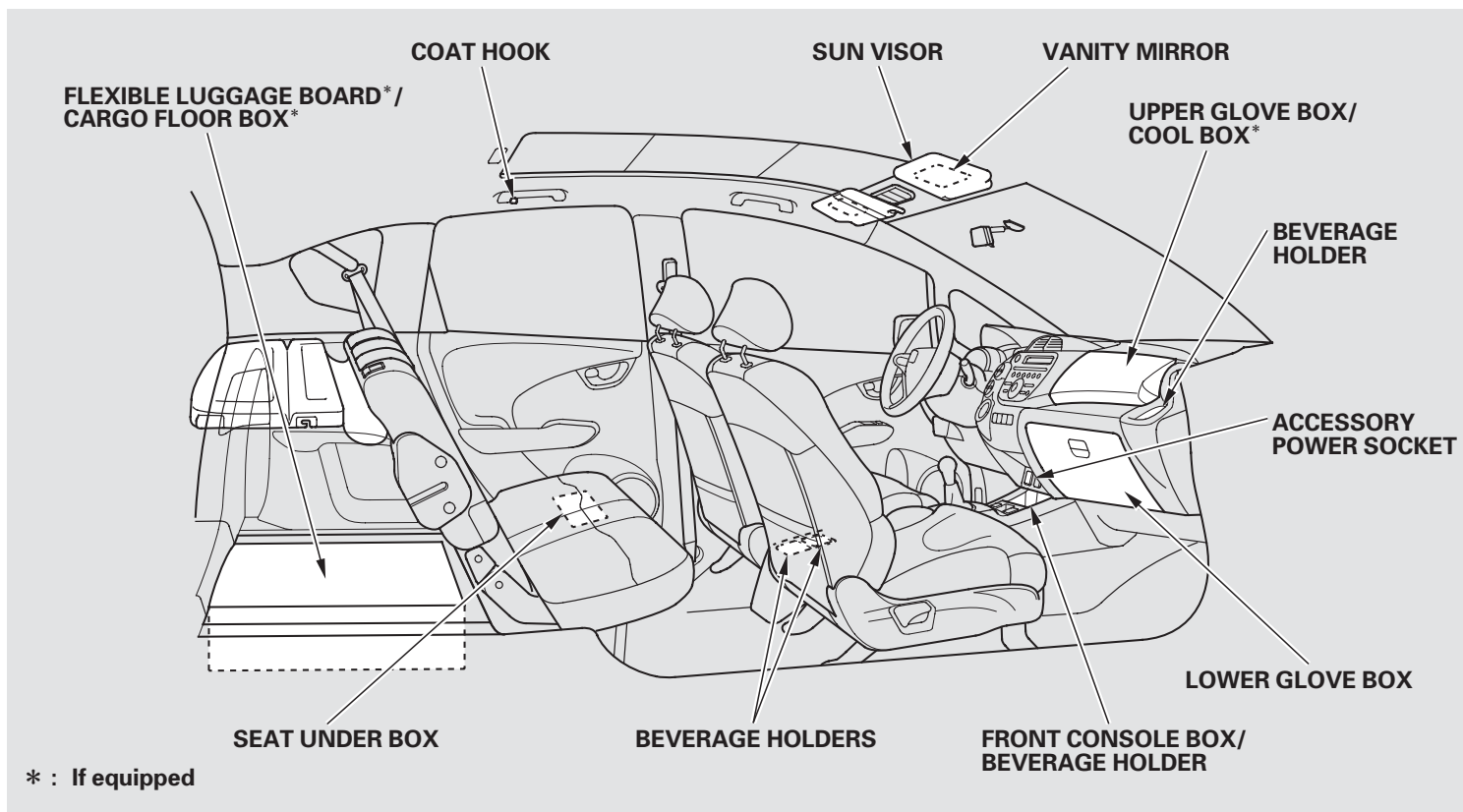
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and hubs. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.

You will also see the symbol “ **(P)** ,” or this symbol with a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display.





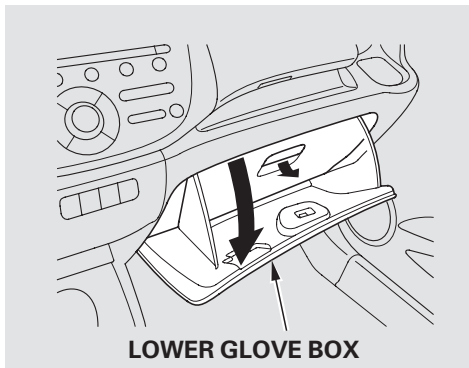
## Interior Convenience Items





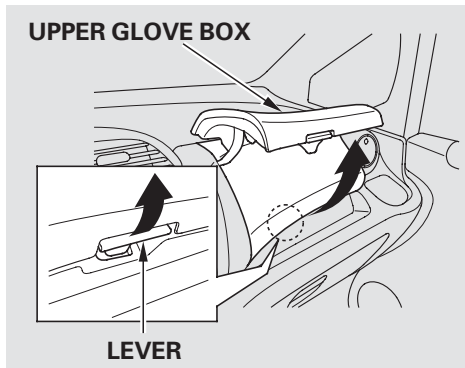
## Interior Convenience Items

### Lower Glove Box



Open the lower glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle. Close it with a firm push.

### Upper Glove Box

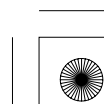


Open the upper glove box by pulling up the lever. Push down to close the lid.

### **⚠ WARNING**

An open glove box and an upper box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

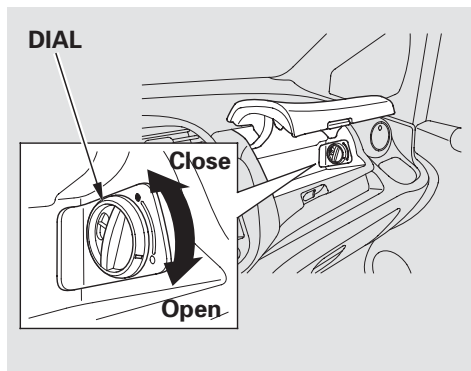
**Always keep the glove box and the upper box closed while driving.**







## Interior Convenience Items

### **Cool Box** (On some models)



You can store beverage bottles and cans in the upper glove box, and keep them cool with the air conditioning system. To keep the inside of the upper glove box cool, open the upper glove box, then open the air vent on the passenger's side by turning the dial downward. Turn on the air conditioning (see page 186 and 193), and set the mode control to “ ” or “ ”

position.

The cool air is diverted from the air conditioning system into the upper glove box through the air vent.

Use only resealable containers or keep unopened cans in the upper glove box. Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery and electrical components in the upper glove box and inside the dashboard. Make sure to close the air vent by turning the dial upward when it is not used.

If you use the heating, the warmed air is diverted into the upper glove box with the air vent opened.

### **Beverage Holders**

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Spilled liquids can also damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

The front beverage holder is in the centre console compartment.

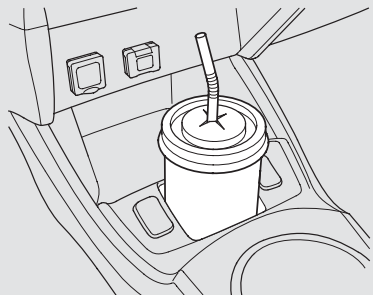
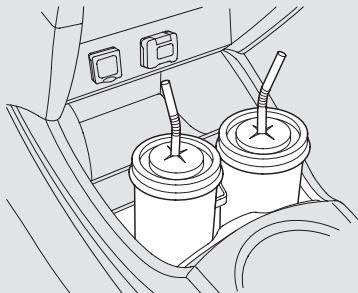
CONTINUED





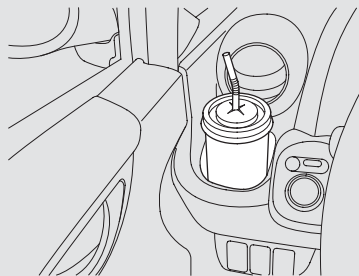
## Interior Convenience Items

**FRONT  
Centre**



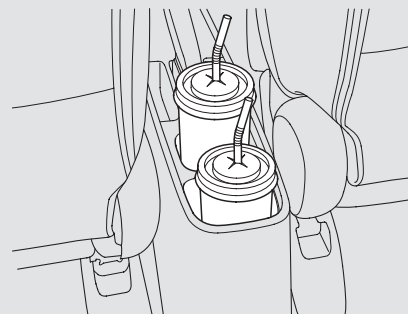
**For some types**

**FRONT  
Driver's side**

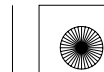


There are also front beverage holders in each side of the instrument panel.

**REAR**



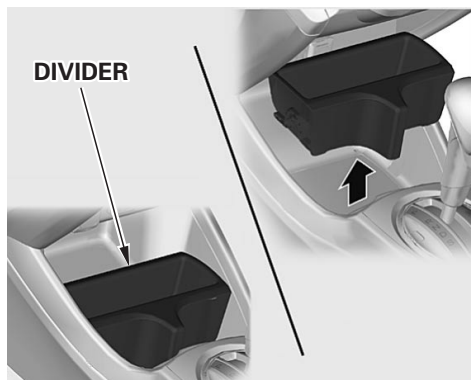
The beverage holders for the rear passengers are located on the upper-rear section of the centre console.





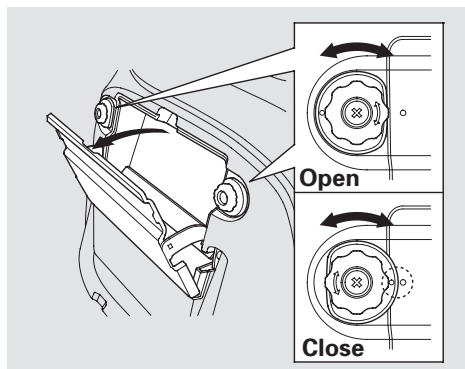
## Interior Convenience Items

### Front Console Box



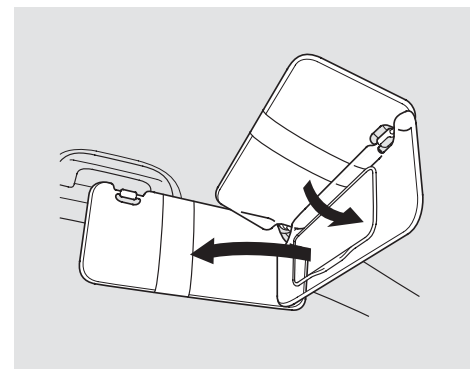
*On models with a divider in the front console box*  
You can remove the divider to store larger items. Pull it out to remove it. When reinstalling it, line up the triangle marks on the divider and front console box.

### Seat Under Box



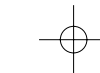
The seat under box is underneath the left rear seat cushion. To open it, fold the left rear seat cushion up (see page 155 ), and turn the handles. To close it, turn the handles and make sure the circle marks are aligned.

### Sun Visor



To use the sun visor, pull it down. You can also use the sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip and swing the sun visor toward the side window.

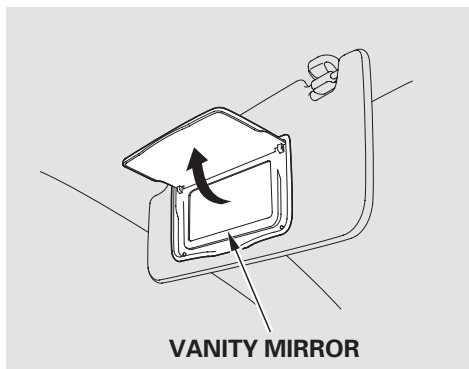
Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.





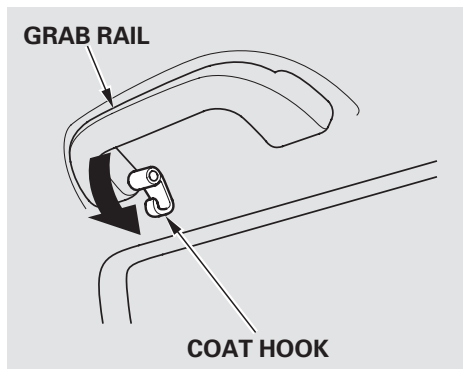
## Interior Convenience Items

### Vanity Mirror



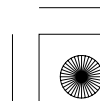
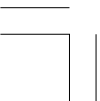
To use the vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

### Coat Hook



To use a coat hook, slide it out slightly, then pull it down.

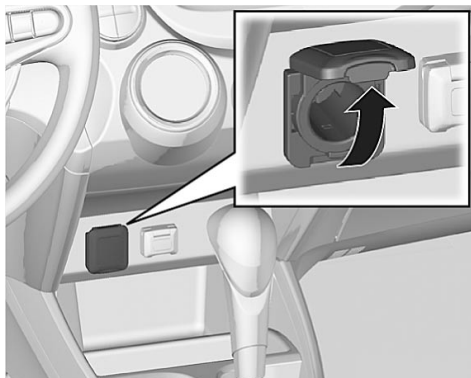
Make sure the coat hook is folded up when you are not using it. This hook is not designed for large or heavy items.





## Interior Convenience Items

### Accessory Power Socket



Your vehicle has an accessory power socket in the front console panel.

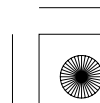
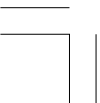
To use the accessory power socket, pull up the cover. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

This socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

It will not power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

It is recommended that this accessory socket is used for genuine Honda accessories.

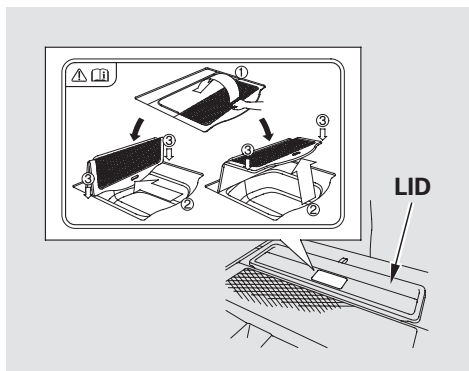
Make sure to put the socket cover back in place to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the socket.



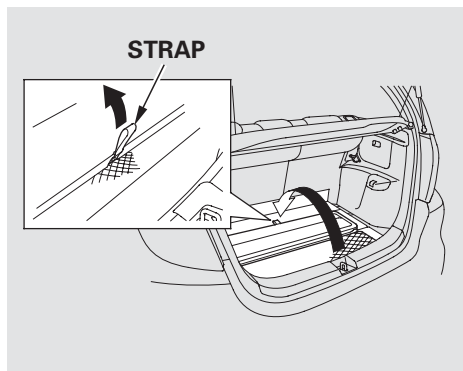


## Interior Convenience Items

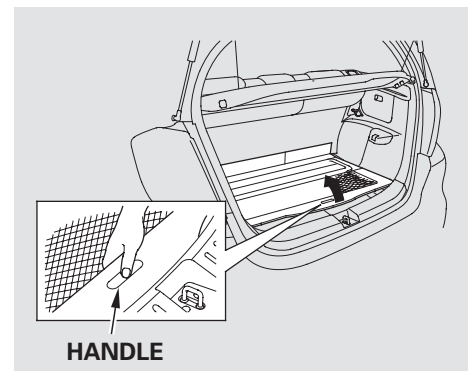
### Flexible Luggage Board (On some models)



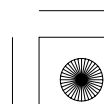
The flexible luggage board enables you to store items in various ways according to their size, weight and height.



Pull the strap to lift up the lid and fold it down.

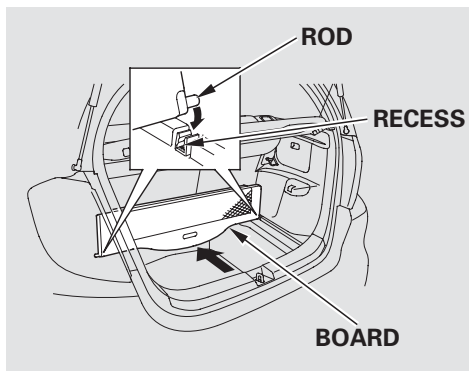


To store items under the board, hold the handle on the board as shown above and lift it up.

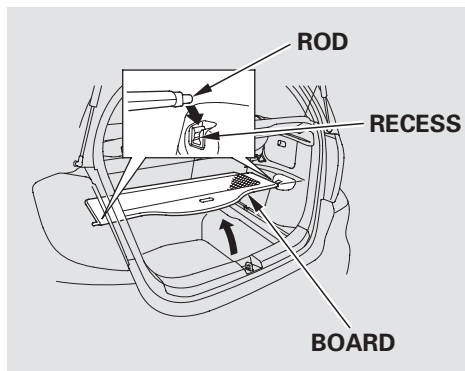




## Interior Convenience Items



When you store tall items, lift up the board, push it forward and fold it to extend the luggage space.



Placing the board in the middle position divides the luggage space into two levels; you can store items on each level depending on their size and weight.

When you set the flexible luggage board in the middle position, do not place any objects on the upper level with the rear seat-backs folded down; items can fly forward and injure someone.

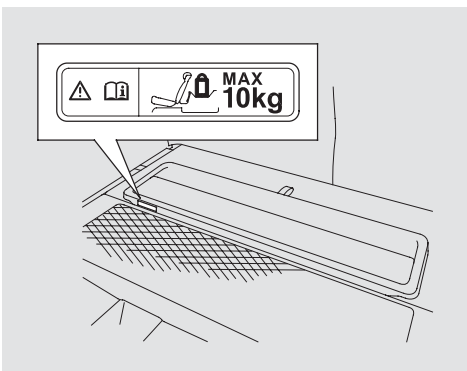
To prevent items from being thrown about the vehicle and possibly hurt someone in an accident or sudden stop, be sure the rods are securely locked into the recesses, so the board is latched.

*CONTINUED*





## Interior Convenience Items



The maximum load on the flexible luggage board is 10 kg. This is shown on a label on the left side of the board. To prevent damage to the board, do not exceed the maximum load.

### NOTICE

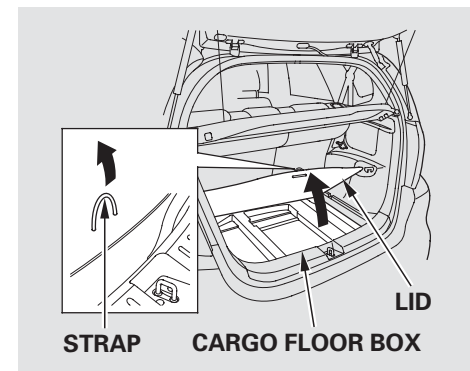
To prevent damage, do not place more than 10 kg on the flexible luggage board.

### NOTE:

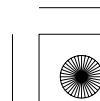
You should not use this board in any other position than previously shown. If you do, the board may be damaged.

Make sure all items in the luggage area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See **Carrying Luggage** on page 267 ).

### Cargo Floor Box (On some models)



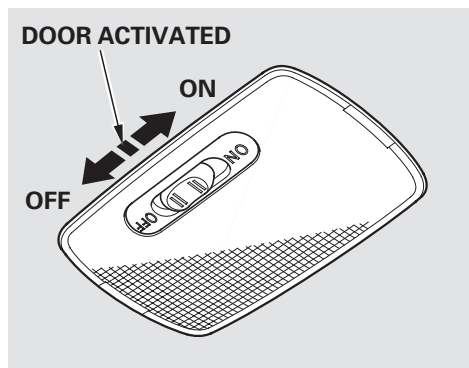
The cargo floor box is under the luggage area floor. To use it, raise the lid by pulling the strap.





## Interior Lights

### Ceiling Light



The ceiling light has a three-position switch: ON, Door Activated, and OFF. In the Door Activated (centre) position, the light comes on when you:

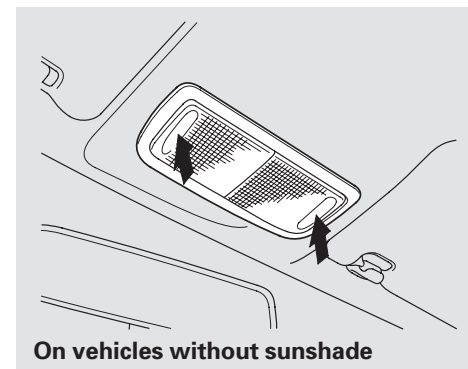
- Open any door.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch. If you do not open a door, the light fades out in about 30 seconds.

- Unlock the driver's door with the master door lock switch, lock tab, key, or the remote transmitter.

After all doors are closed tightly, the light dims slightly, then fades out in about 30 seconds. The light turns off before 30 seconds have elapsed if you insert the key to the ignition switch.

If you leave any door open without the key in the ignition switch, the ceiling light will go off after about 15 minutes.

### Spotlights (For some types)



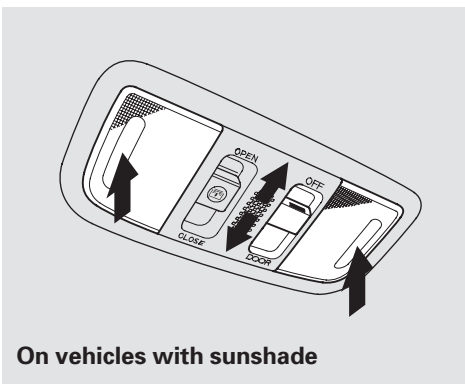
Turn on a spotlight by pushing the lens. Push the lens again to turn it off. You can use the spotlights at all times.

*CONTINUED*





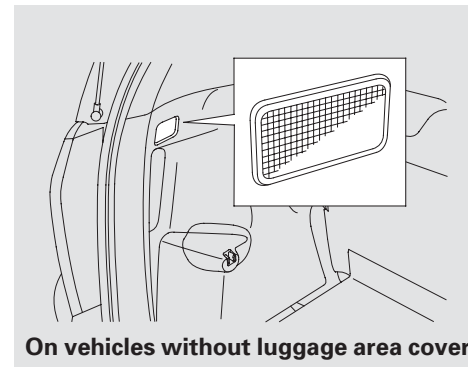
## Interior Lights



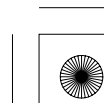
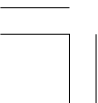
*On vehicles with sunshade*  
The spotlights have a two-position switch. In the DOOR position, the lights come on when you open any door. In the OFF position, the lights do not come on.

The spotlights (with the switch in the DOOR position) also come on when you open any door, unlock the door with the key, lock tab on the driver's door, master door lock switch, or the remote transmitter, and when you remove the key from the ignition switch.

### Luggage Area Light



Your vehicle has a luggage area light on the left side panel in the luggage area. The luggage area light comes on when you open the tailgate.





## Features

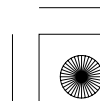
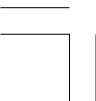
The heating and air conditioning\* systems in your vehicle provide a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

\* Air conditioning is standard on some models.

The standard audio system on some models has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

Vents .....	182
Heating and Cooling System .....	184
Heating and A/C .....	185
Climate Control System .....	190
Audio System .....	195
Protecting Your Discs .....	228
Remote Audio Controls .....	231
Auxiliary Input Jack .....	232
Radio Theft Protection .....	232
Setting the Clock .....	233
Security System .....	234
Cruise Control .....	235
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System .....	238

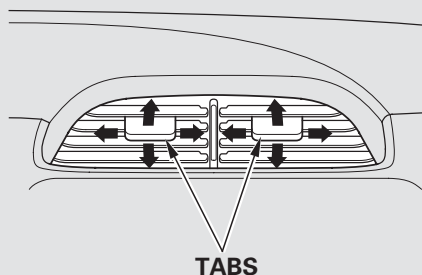




## Vents

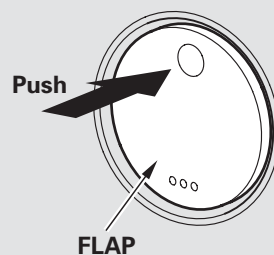
### Vent Controls

#### CENTRE VENTS

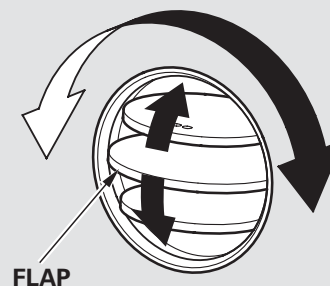


The direction of airflow from the vents in the centre and each side of the dashboard is adjustable.

To adjust the airflow from each centre vent, move the tab up-and-down and side-to-side.



The vents in the corners of the dashboard can be opened and closed with the upper and lower flaps. To open it, push in the flap as shown. To close the vent, push the bottom of either flap. To adjust the airflow from the vent, push in the flap to open it, then move the flap up-and-down and rotate the vent.

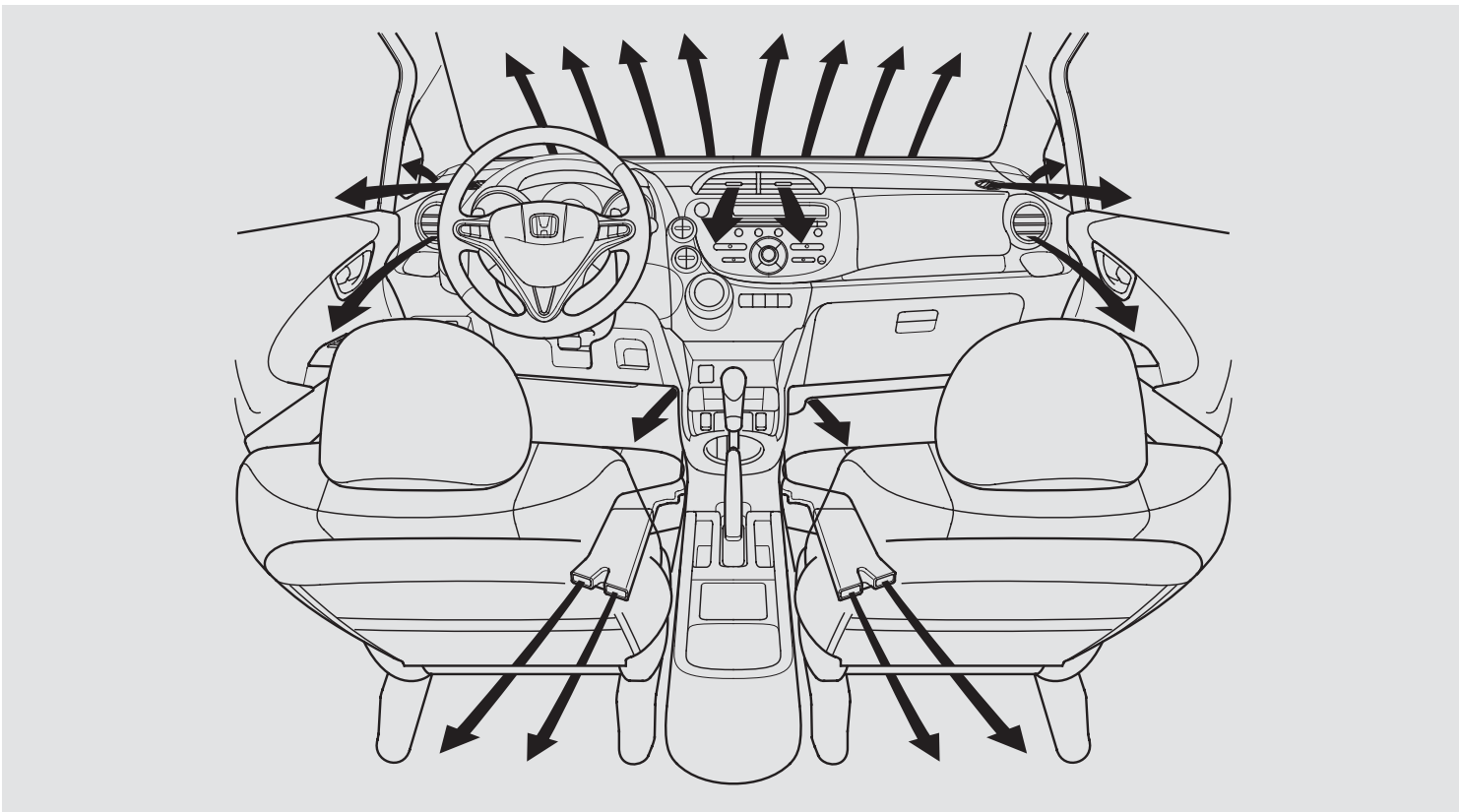




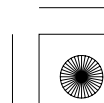
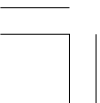
10/10/25 18:54:46 32TF0630\_188



## Vents



Features **183**





## Heating and Cooling System

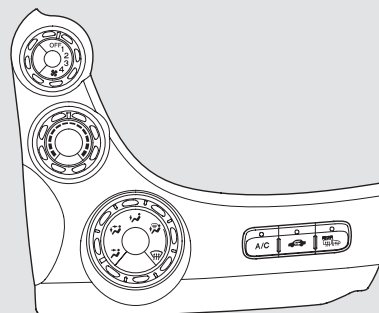
Proper use of the heating and cooling system can make the interior dry and comfortable, and keep the windows clear for the best visibility.

The engine must be running for the heater and air conditioning to generate hot and cold air.

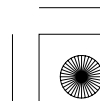
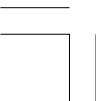
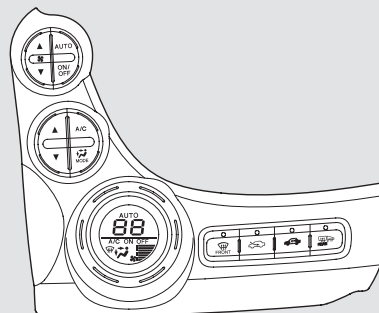
Read the appropriate pages in this section for operation of the heating and cooling system installed in your vehicle.

- See page 185 to 189 for the manual system.
- See page 190 to 194 for the automatic system.

### *Manual System*



### *Automatic System*





## Heating and A/C

### Fan Control Dial

Turn the dial clockwise to increase the fan speed and airflow. Turn the dial anticlockwise to decrease them.

### Temperature Control Dial

Turning this dial clockwise increases the temperature of the airflow.

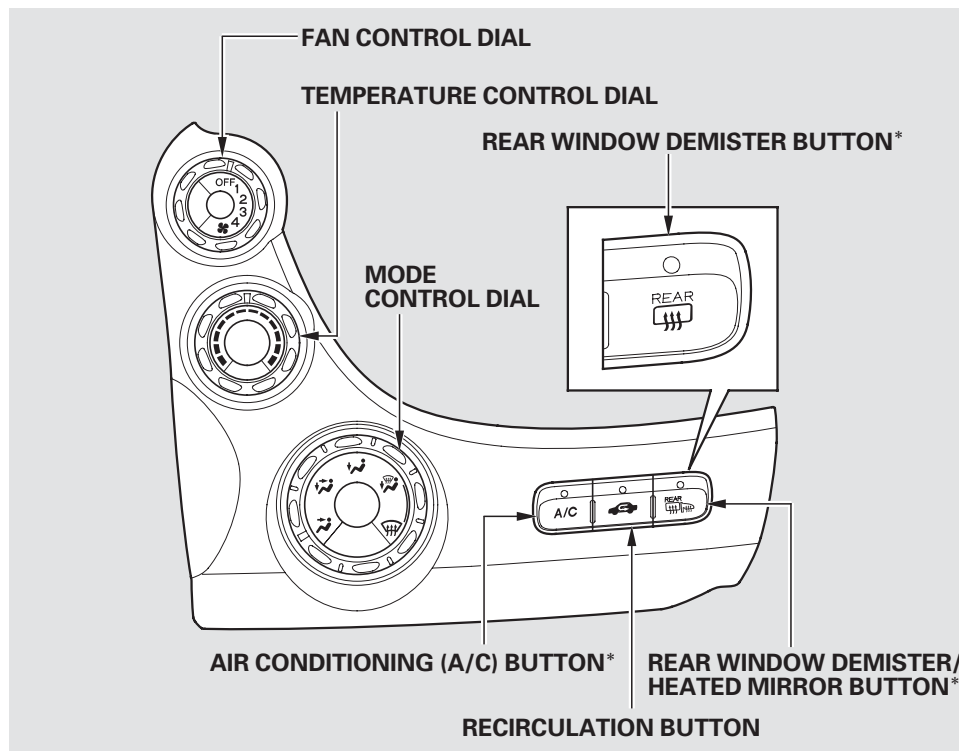
### Air Conditioning (A/C) Button (For some types)

This button turns the air conditioning on and off. The indicator in the button is on when the A/C is on.

### Rear Window Demister Button

This button turns the rear window demister on and off (see page 133 ).

On some models, when you turn on the rear window demister, the heated door mirrors are also turned on automatically.



\*: If equipped





## Heating and A/C

### Recirculation Button

When the recirculation indicator is on, air from the vehicle's interior is sent throughout the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the heating and cooling system are at the base of the windscreen. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.


The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

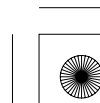
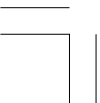
### Mode Control Dial

Use the mode control dial to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.

 Air flows from the centre and corner vents in the dashboard.


 Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.


 Air flows from the floor vents.







## Heating and A/C


 Airflow is divided between the floor vents and demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

 Air flows from the demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

When you select  or  , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C (if equipped).

### Ventilation

The flow-through ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then exhausts it through vents near the tailgate.

1. Set the temperature control dial to the lower limit.  
Make sure the A/C is off.
2. Select  and fresh air mode.
3. Set the fan to the desired speed.


### Using the Heater

The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system.

1. Select  and fresh air mode.
2. Set the fan to the desired speed.
3. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control dial.

### Using the A/C (For some types)

Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Check the high temperature indicator (see page 89 ). If the indicator begins to blink, turn off the A/C until the indicator goes off.

1. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on when a fan speed is selected.
2. Make sure the temperature control dial is set to maximum cool.
3. Select  .
4. If the outside air is humid, select recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select fresh air mode.
5. Set the fan to the desired speed.

CONTINUED





## Heating and A/C

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning on the A/C, and setting the fan to maximum speed in fresh air mode.

### Dehumidify the Interior

*On vehicles with air conditioning*



Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

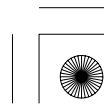
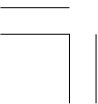
1. Turn the fan on.
2. If the A/C is off, turn it on.
3. Select  and fresh air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature control dial to your preference.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 0°C.

### To Defog and Defrost

To remove fog from the inside of the windows:



1. Set the fan to the desired speed or high for faster defrosting.
2. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C (if equipped).
3. Adjust the temperature so the airflow feels warm.
4. Select  to help clear the rear window.
5. To increase airflow to the windscreen, close the corner vents.





## Heating and A/C

### To Remove Exterior Frost or Ice From the Windows

1. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C (if equipped).
2. Select .
3. Set the fan and temperature controls to maximum level.

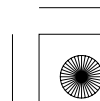
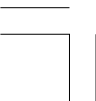
To clear the windows faster, you can close the dashboard corner vents by pushing the bottom of either flap. This sends more warm air to the windscreen demister vents. Once the windscreen is clear, select the fresh air mode to avoid fogging the windows.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

### To Turn Everything Off

Turning the fan control dial all the way to the left shuts the system off.

- Keep the system off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.



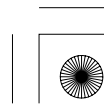
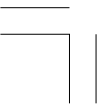
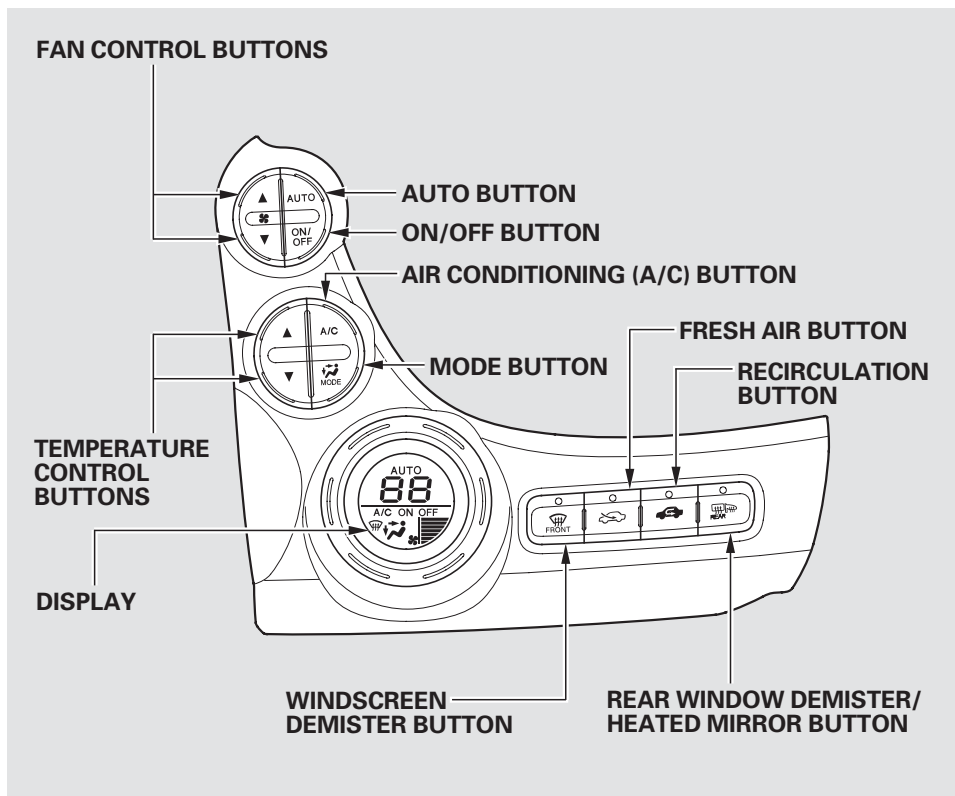


## Climate Control System

### Fully-automatic Operation

To put the automatic climate control in fully-automatic mode:



1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Set the desired temperature with the temperature control buttons. You will see AUTO in the system's display.





## Climate Control System

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.


When you set the temperature to its lower limit (  ) or its upper limit (  ), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

In cold weather, the fan will not come on automatically until the heater starts to develop warm air.



### **Semi-automatic Operation**

You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully-automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

### **Fan Control Buttons**

Select the fan speed by pressing the fan control buttons (   or   ). The fan speed is represented by horizontal bars in the display.

### **Temperature Control Buttons**

To adjust the desired temperature, push the temperature control buttons (  or  ).

### **Air Conditioning (A/C) Button**

This button turns the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the temperature below the outside temperature.



CONTINUED





## Climate Control System


### **Fresh Air and Recirculation Buttons**


These two buttons control the source of air going into the system. In fresh air mode , air comes from outside the vehicle. In recirculation mode , the interior air recycles through the system.


The outside air intakes for the climate control system are at the base of the windscreen. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.


Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

**Windscreen Demister Button **  
This button directs the main airflow to the windscreen for faster defrosting. It also overrides any mode selection you may have made.

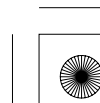
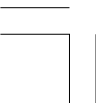
When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. For faster defrosting, manually set the fan speed to high. You can also increase airflow to the windscreen by closing the corner vents on the dashboard.

When you turn off  by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

**Rear Window Demister Button **  
This button turns the rear window demister on and off (see page 133 ).

When you turn on the rear window demister, the heated door mirror is also turned on automatically.






## Climate Control System

### **Mode Button**


Use the MODE button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.

Each time you press the MODE button, the display shows the mode selected.

 Air flows from the centre and corner vents in the dashboard.

 Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

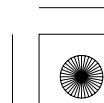
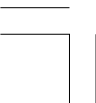
 Air flows from the floor vents.

 Airflow is divided between the floor vents and demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

### **To Turn Everything Off**

To turn the system completely off, press the ON/OFF button.

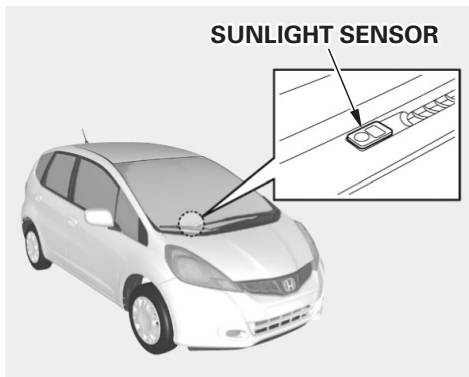
- Keep the system off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.



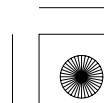
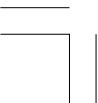
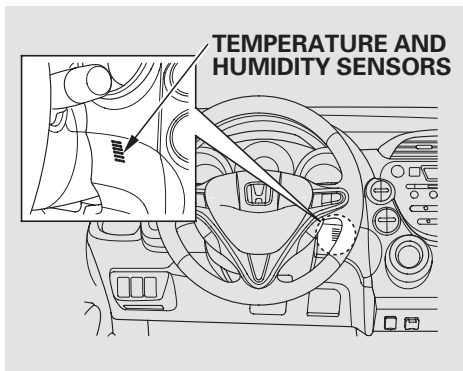


## Climate Control System

### Sunlight, Temperature, and Humidity Sensors



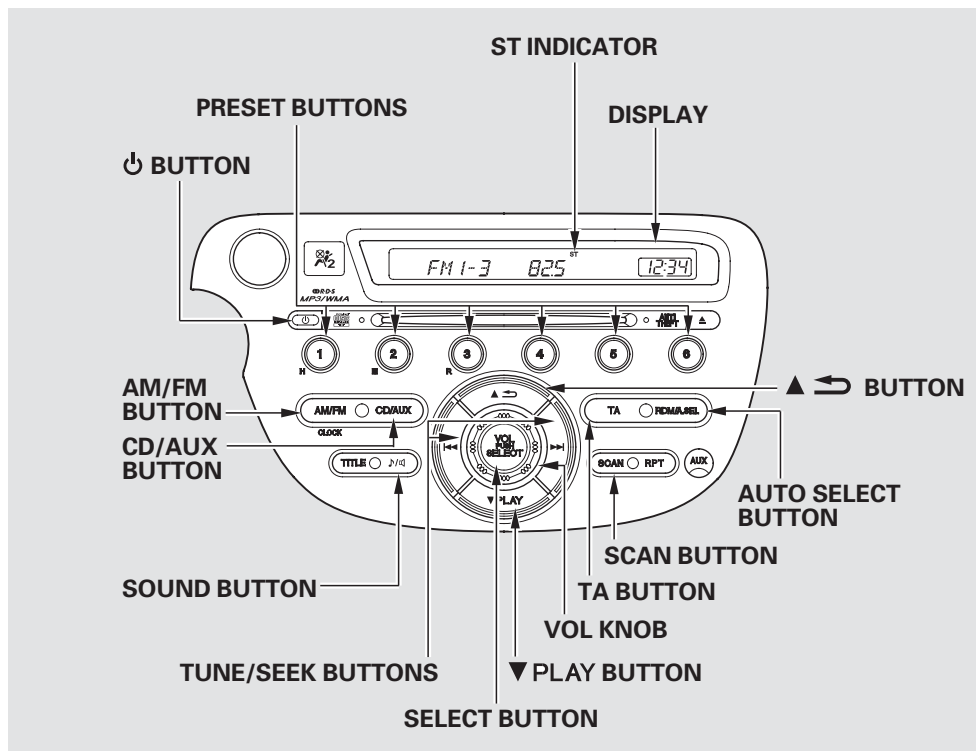
The climate control system has three sensors. A sunlight sensor is in the top of the dashboard, and the temperature and humidity sensors are next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.





## Audio System (For some types)


### Playing the Radio



#### *Italian models only*

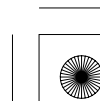
This product conforms to DM 28/8/1995, N. 548, by complying with the requirements specified in DM 25/6/1985 (par. 3, All. A) and DM 27/8/1987 (All. I).

#### **To Play the Radio**

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the  button, or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.





## Audio System (For some types)

### To Select a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, seek, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

**TUNE** — Use the TUNE button to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Press the **▶▶|** button to tune to a higher frequency, and press the **|◀◀** button to tune to a lower frequency.

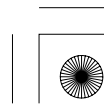
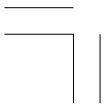
You can also use the select button and VOL knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Push the select button. You will see “**SEL**” in the display. Turn the VOL knob clockwise to tune to a higher frequency, or anticlockwise to tune to a lower frequency.

The mode will be cancelled about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting the knob. If you want to cancel the mode within 10 seconds, push the select button, (**▲ ↶**) button, or (**▼PLAY**) button.

**SEEK** — The SEEK function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press and hold the **|◀◀** or **▶▶|** button until you hear a beep.

**SCAN** — The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. When the system finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.





## Audio System (For some types)

**Preset** — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. You can store one frequency on FM1, and one frequency on FM2 with each preset button.
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the preset number (1 – 6), and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

**AUTO SELECT** — If you are travelling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. You will see A. SEL flashing in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. The system stores the frequencies of 6 FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a “0” displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

*To turn off Auto Select*, press the A. SEL button. This restores the presets you originally set.





## Audio System (For some types)


---

### Radio Data System (RDS)

With your audio system, you can utilize many convenient features provided by the radio data system (RDS).

With the FM band selected, you can keep listening to the same station even if its frequency changes as you enter different regions while you are travelling.

The RDS function turns on automatically when you turn the system on. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will change to the station name. Then, the system will automatically keep selecting the frequency with the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the same programmes. This can save you the trouble of retuning to obtain the same station as long as you are in the same RDS network area.

You can turn on or off the RDS function and select the RDS programmes. To switch the function and select the programme, press the  button for more than 2 seconds with the audio system on. You will hear a beep. Press any of the preset buttons (1 through 6) to select the function. Each preset button has the following function. Pressing the preset button switches the function between on and off (24H and 12H on the clock mode).

**Preset 1 button: AF ON/OFF** – Alternative frequency function on or off

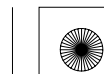
**Preset 2 button: REGIONAL ON/OFF** – Regional programme on or off

**Preset 3 button: PS DISP ON/OFF** – Programme service function on or off

**Preset 4 button: AUTO TP ON/OFF** – Automatic traffic programme on or off

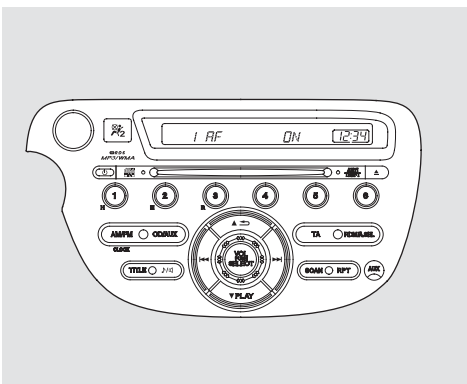
**Preset 5 button: NEWS ON/OFF** – News programme on or off


**Preset 6 button: CLOCK 24H/12H**





## Audio System (For some types)



To turn on the RDS, select 1 AF ON by pressing the preset 1 button. To turn off the RDS, select 1 AF OFF. Press the  button again to store the setting.

**AF (Alternative Frequency)** — This function automatically selects a frequency with the same programme in the RDS network area.

**REGIONAL (Regional Programme)** — This function keeps the regional programme and does not change the frequency even if the signal becomes too weak.

**PS DISP (Programme Service Display)** — This function shows the radio station name which you are listening to.

**AUTO TP (Automatic Traffic Information Programme)** — This function automatically tunes to the radio station which is broadcasting the traffic information.

**NEWS (News Programme)** — This function automatically tunes to the radio station which is broadcasting newscasts.

**CLOCK** — With this function, you can switch the clock display between 24-hours and 12-hours.

When the signals of the RDS station become so weak that the system can no longer follow the station, the system will hold the last tuned frequency and the display will change from the station name to the frequency.

In some countries, you cannot utilize features provided by RDS as the RDS function is not provided for all stations.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)

---

### ***Programme Service Name Display***

If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will disappear and the station name or PTY information will be displayed. For more information on the PTY, see page 201.

### ***TA (Traffic Announcement) Standby Function***

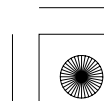
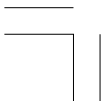
When you press and release the TA button, TA comes on in the display and the system stands by for traffic announcements.

When the automatic traffic information programme (AUTO TP ON) is selected, TP will come on in the display. This indicates that the traffic reports can be received from the traffic information broadcasting station.

AUTO TP cross-references other programme services that broadcast traffic information, and the traffic reports can be received through another programme service in the RDS network area.

You can receive traffic information while you are listening to a disc or playing an appropriate audio device. If the system is tuned to a TP station before playing a disc or an audio device, the system will stand by for traffic announcements with the TA button pressed (TA indicator is on) and the system will switch from disc or AUX mode to the traffic announcement when it begins. You will see TA-INFO in the display. The system will return to the disc or AUX mode when the traffic information is finished.

You can also switch to the normal audio mode while you are listening to the traffic information by pressing the TA button. It does not cancel the TA standby function.





## Audio System (For some types)

To adjust the volume of the traffic announcement, turn the VOL knob while the announcement is broadcasting. The adjusted volume level will be stored, then that level will be used on the next traffic announcement. If you adjust the volume below the minimum level, the default level (level 9) will be used the next time. The volume of the PTY NEWS or the PTY ALARM function can also be adjusted (see page 203).

If your vehicle's battery goes dead, or is disconnected, the traffic announcement volume level will be reset to the default setting (level 9).

To turn off the TA function, press the TA button again. TA will go out from the display.

Pressing the TA button will not turn off the TA function while you are listening to the traffic information. It will just switch to the selected audio playing mode.

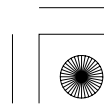
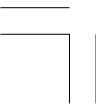
If you use seek or auto select with the TA function on, the system searches only TP stations.

### ***PTY (Programme Type) Display Function***

When either of the ▲▶ or the ▼PLAY button is pressed, the display shows you the programme type of the selected RDS station. For example, if the station is broadcasting drama, DRAMA is shown in the display. If it is a station of scientific programmes, SCIENCE is shown. The principal PTYs are shown as follows.

NEWS: Short accounts of facts, events, publicly expressed views, reportage, etc.  
CURRENT AFFAIRS: Topical programmes expanding upon the news.

CONTINUED





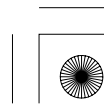
## Audio System (For some types)

---

INFORMATION: General information and advice.  
SPORT: Programmes concerned with any aspect of sports.  
EDUCATION: Educational programmes.  
DRAMA: All radio plays and serials.  
CULTURES: Programmes concerned with any aspect of national or regional culture.  
SCIENCE: Programmes about nature, science, and technology.  
VARIED SPEECH: Light entertainment programmes.  
POP MUSIC: Commercial music of popular appeal.  
ROCK MUSIC: Contemporary modern music.  
EASY LISTENING: Light music.


LIGHT CLASSICS M: Light classics; classical music for non-specialist appreciation.  
SERIOUS CLASSICS: Traditional classics.  
OTHER MUSIC: Other types of music, such as R & B, Reggae.  
WEATHER/METR: Weather information.  
FINANCE: Programmes concerned with economy.  
CHILDREN'S PROGS: Programmes for children.  
RELIGION: Programmes concerned with religion.  
SOCIAL AFFAIRS: Social affairs programmes.

PHONE IN: Programmes consisting of listener's message.  
TRAVEL/TOURING: Programmes concerned with travel.  
LEISURE/HOBBY: Programmes about hobbies and recreational activities.  
JAZZ MUSIC: Jazz music.  
COUNTRY MUSIC: Country music.  
NATIONAL MUSIC: National music.  
OLDIES MUSIC: Oldies music, "Golden age" based programmes.  
FOLK MUSIC: Folk music.  
DOCUMENTARY: Documentary programmes.






## Audio System (For some types)

When you press either of the **▲**  button or **▼**PLAY button, the display will show different PTYs (see the PTYs list on the previous page).

After you select the desired programme type, the system will search for a station with the same PTY code as the selected programme type. When you use this function for the first time, NEWS will appear as it was preset at the factory.


After your desired PTY is displayed, press either TUNE/SEEK button ( **◀◀** or **▶▶** ) within 5 seconds. The system will go into the PTY search mode and search for a station of the selected PTY. If there is no station available in the selected PTY, NO PTY is displayed for about 5 seconds and the PTY search mode is cancelled.

If the selected RDS station does not transmit PTY data, NO PTY is displayed. When the selected station is not an RDS station, NO RDS is displayed for about 5 seconds.

The PTY setting mode is cancelled if no further steps are taken within 5 seconds after selecting the desired PTY with the **▲**  or **▼**PLAY button.

Some stations may broadcast the programmes with different contents from their PTY code.

### ***PTY/News Interrupt Function***

To activate this function, press the  button for more than 2 seconds and select NEWS. The system will hold the last tuned FM station/network PTY while you are listening to the disc. With this function on, playing disc is interrupted and the system switches from disc mode to the FM newscast when the newscast is broadcasting from the FM station.

You can change the volume level of the interrupted newscast. Refer to page 201 for how to adjust the volume level.

When the programme is changed to another programme or the frequency cannot be received for 10 seconds due to a weak signal, the system will return to the disc mode automatically.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)



---

Your audio system has another interrupt function (including TA function). The first activated interrupt function has priority over the others and the indication of the other interrupt function goes out. To activate the other interrupt function, turn off the current interrupt function.

### ***PTY Alarm***

PTY code “ALARM” is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, “ALARM” comes on the display and the volume is changed. When the alarm is cancelled, the system will return to the normal operation mode.

### **Adjusting the Sound**

Press the SOUND (  /  ) button repeatedly to display the BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, and SVC (speed-sensitive volume compensation) settings.

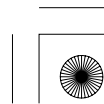
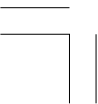
**BASS** — Adjusts the bass.

**TREBLE** — Adjusts the treble.

**FADER** — Adjusts the front-to-back strength of the sound.

**BALANCE** — Adjusts the side-to-side strength of the sound.

**SVC** — Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.





## Audio System (For some types)

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the VOL knob to adjust the setting to your liking.

### *Except for SVC*

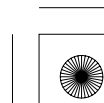
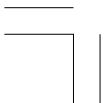
When the level reaches centre, you will see a “C” in the display. Each time the level reaches maximum, minimum or centre, you will hear a beep.

The system will return to the audio display about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

### ***Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)***

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

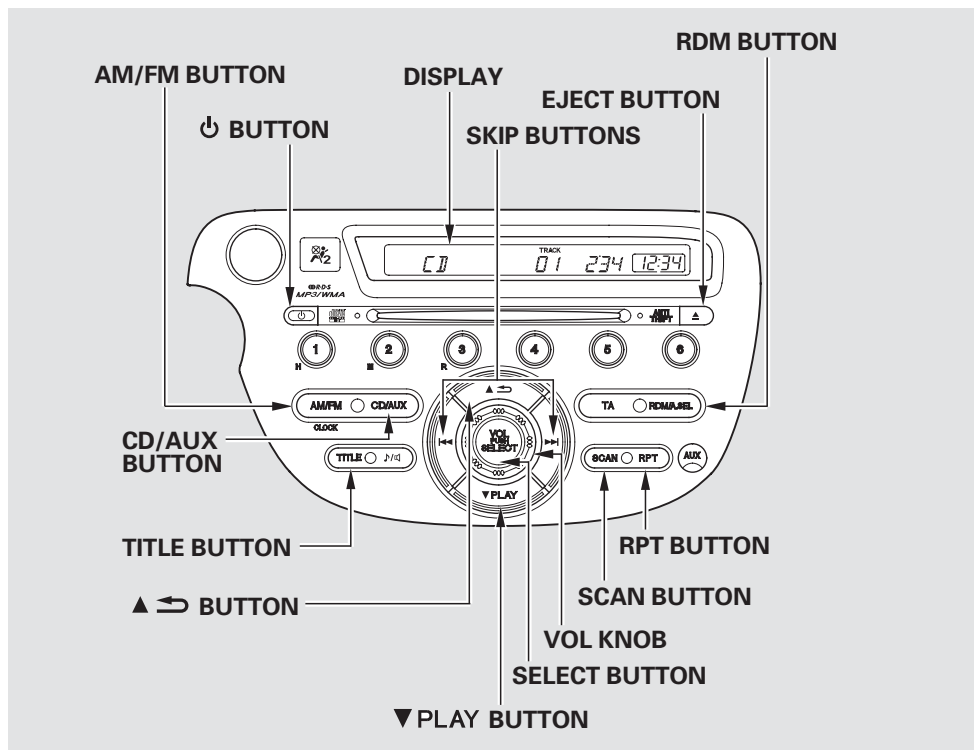
The SVC has four modes: SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. Turn the selector knob to adjust the setting to your liking. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.





## Audio System (For some types)

### Playing a Disc



### To Play a Disc

To load or play discs, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

You operate the disc player with the same controls used for the radio. To select the disc player, press the CD/AUX button. You will see "CD" in the display. The number of the track playing and the elapsed time are shown in the display. You can also select the displayed information with the TITLE button (see page 208). The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

### NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.





## Audio System (For some types)

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA standard. You can select up to 99 folders, or up to 255 tracks/files.

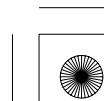
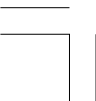
Video CDs and DVDs do not work in this unit.

**NOTE:**

If a file on an MP3 or WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays **UNSUPPORTED**, and then skips to the next file.

Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.

*CONTINUED*





## Audio System (For some types)

---

### *To Load a Disc*

Insert a disc about halfway into the disc slot. The drive will pull the disc in the rest of the way and begin to play it. The number of the track playing is shown in the display. The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

You cannot load and play 8-cm (3-inch) discs in this system.

If the disc has a complex structure, it will take a while to read the disc before the system begins to play it.

### *Text Data Display Function*

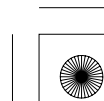
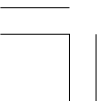
Each time you press the TITLE button, the display shows you the text, if the disc was recorded with text data.

You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the artist, album, and track tag.

The display shows up to 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.). If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.





## Audio System (For some types)

When playing a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With MP3 or WMA files on a disc, the display shows the folder and file name.

### ***To Change or Select Tracks/Files***

You can use the SKIP buttons while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3/WMA mode).

In MP3 or WMA mode, use the **▲➡** button or **▼PLAY** button to select folders in the disc and use the SKIP buttons to change files.

You can also select a folder or track/file directly by using the select button and VOL knob. Push the select button. You will see “ **SEL** ” in the display. Turn the VOL knob to select a track, then push the select button to play your selection. In MP3 or WMA mode, turn the knob to select a folder, push the button to set the selected folder, and turn the knob again to select a file, then push the button to play the selected file.

**SKIP** — Each time you press and release the **▶▶** SKIP button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA mode). Press and release **◀◀** to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

To move rapidly within a track or file, press and hold ( **▶▶** or **◀◀** ) of the SKIP button.

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER SELECTION** — To select a different folder, press the **▲➡** button or **▼PLAY** button. Press the **▲➡** side to skip to the next folder, and press the **▼PLAY** side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)

---

### REPEAT (TRACK/FILE

**REPEAT)** — To continuously replay a track (files in MP3 or WMA mode), press and release the RPT button. You will see “RPT” in the display. Press and hold the RPT button for 2 seconds to turn it off.

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER-REPEAT** — This feature, when activated, replays all the files in the selected folder in the order they are compressed in MP3/WMA. To activate folder repeat mode, press the RPT button repeatedly until you see F-RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. Press and hold the RPT button to turn it off.

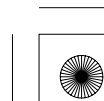
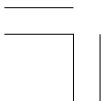
Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, then to normal play.

**SCAN** — The SCAN function samples all the tracks on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc (all files in the current folder in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see “SCAN” in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file in the disc/folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of scan mode and play the last track sampled.

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER SCAN** — This feature, when activated, samples the first file of each folder on the disc. To activate folder scan, press the SCAN button twice. You will see F-SCAN in the display.

The system plays the first file in the first folder for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the first files in the next folders for 10 seconds. After playing the first file in the last folder, the system plays normally.






## Audio System (For some types)

**RANDOM (Random within a disc)** — This feature plays the tracks within a disc (the files within a disc in MP3 or WMA mode) in random order. To activate random play, press and release the RDM button. In MP3 or WMA mode, press the RDM button repeatedly to select RDM (within a disc random play). You will see RDM in the display. Press the RDM button for 2 seconds to return to normal play.

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER RANDOM** — This feature, when activated, plays the files within a current folder in random order, rather than in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To active folder random play, press and release the RDM button. You will see F-RDM in the display. Press and hold the RDM button to return to normal play.


### To Stop Playing a Disc

Press the eject button (  ) to remove the disc. If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds and put it in pause mode. To begin playing, press the CD/AUX button.

You can also eject the disc when the ignition switch is off.

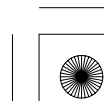
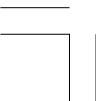
To play the radio when a disc is playing, press the AM/FM button. Press the CD/AUX button again to switch back to the disc player.

To play an audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack or the USB adapter cable when a disc is playing, press the CD/AUX button. Press the CD/AUX button again to switch back to the disc player.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the (  ) button or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

### Protecting Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 228.





## Audio System (For some types)

### Disc Player Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

For additional information on damaged discs, see page 229 .

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

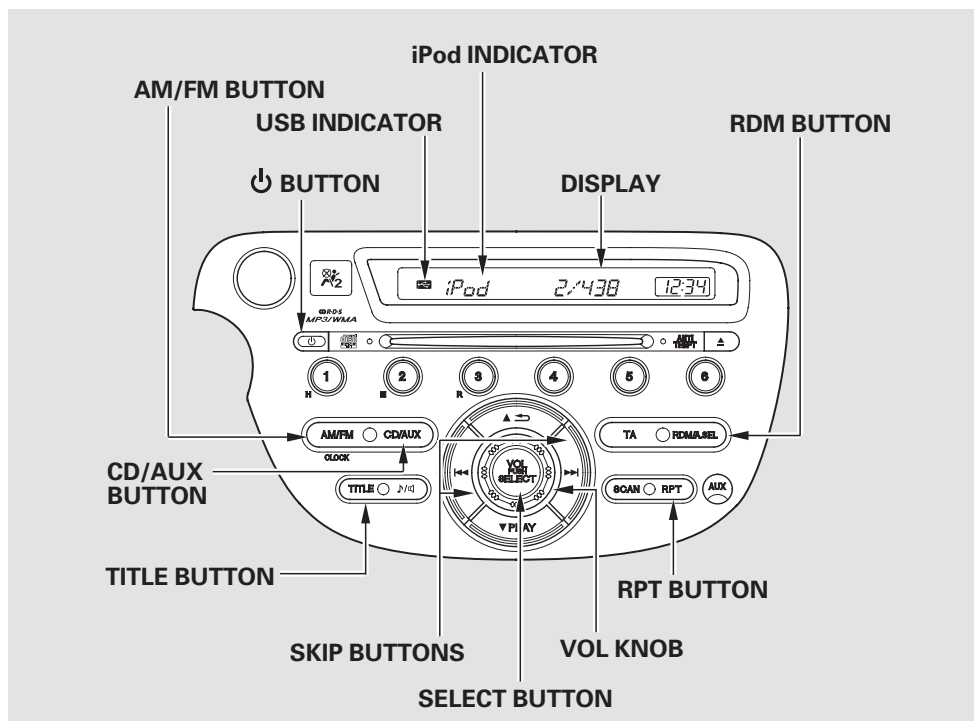
Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
UNSUPPORTED	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 229). Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo Error	





## Audio System (For some types)

### Playing an iPod® (For some types)



### To Play an iPod®

This audio system can operate the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the disc player. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle by using your dock connector, then press the CD/AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The iPod can also be recharged with the ignition switch in these positions.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)

The audio system reads and plays playable sound files on the iPod. The system cannot operate an iPod as a mass storage device. The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

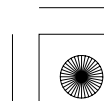
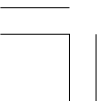
iPod models confirmed to be compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80 GB/160 GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120 GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160 GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano
iPod touch

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### NOTE:

- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.

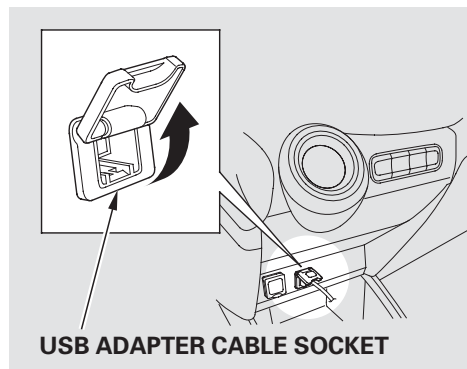




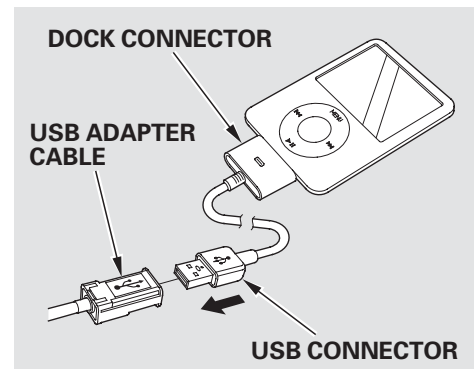
## Audio System (For some types)

- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.

### Connecting an iPod



1. Open the lid of the USB adapter cable socket. Insert the USB adapter cable connector into it securely.



2. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
3. Install the USB connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)

---

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

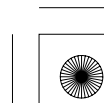
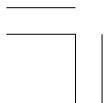
If the system still does not recognize the iPod, it may need resetting. Disconnect the iPod and reset it following the iPod's instructions.

You can disconnect the iPod at any time when the display on the iPod allows to disconnect it. Always confirm the notice on the iPod when to disconnect it and make sure to follow the maker's instructions to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

### ***Text Data Display Function***

Each time you press the TITLE button the display mode switches between the album name, the song name, the artist name, or name off (which turns off the text display).

The display shows up to 16 characters of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.





## Audio System (For some types)

### ***To Change or Select Songs***

Use the SKIP button while an iPod is playing to select passages and change songs.

You can also select playlists, artists, albums or songs from the list by using the select button and VOL knob. Push the select button to switch the display to the list displayed, then turn the VOL knob to select a desired subject. Press the (▼PLAY) button to start playing the song.

Press the select button to change the display to the song list, then turn the same knob to select a song. Press the select button or (▼PLAY) button to set your selection.

**SKIP** — Each time you press and release the ►► SKIP button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next song. Press and release ◄◄ to skip backward to the beginning of the current song. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous song.

To move rapidly within a song, press and hold ( ◄◄ or ►► ) of the SKIP button.

**REPEAT** — To continuously replay a song, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press it again to turn it off.

**SHUFFLE ALL** — Press and release the RDM button to play the songs in random order. You will see RDM in the display. Press and hold the RDM button to return to normal play.

**SHUFFLE ALBUM** — This feature, when activated, plays all songs in each album in random order. To activate shuffle album, press the RDM button twice. You will see F-RDM in the display. Press and release the RDM button to return to normal play.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)

---

### **NOTE:**

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

### **To Stop Playing Your iPod**

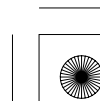
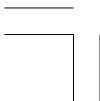
Disconnect the dock connector of the iPod from the USB adapter cable. Make sure to follow the maker's instructions to disconnect it.

To play the radio, press the AM/FM button. Press the CD/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the CD/AUX button again to switch back to the iPod mode.

If you reconnect the same iPod, the audio unit may begin playing where it left off, depending on the iPod specification.

### **iPod® Error Messages**

If you see an error message in the display, see page 219 .



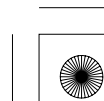


## Audio System (For some types)

### iPod® Error Messages

If there is a problem with your iPod, an error message will appear. The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see. Disconnect the iPod, and reconnect it. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Take your vehicle to a dealer.

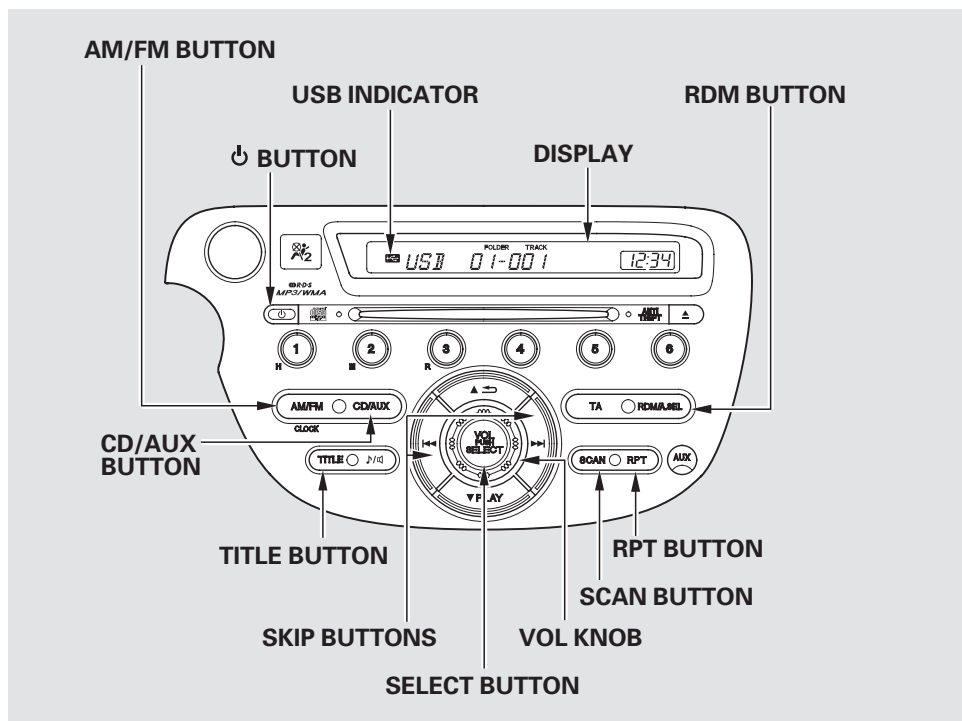
Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM Error	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Abnormal power source	Appears when the overcurrent protection feature of the system stops supplying power to USB because an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
iPod NO SONG	No files in iPod	Appears when the iPod is empty. Store some files in the iPod.
UNSUPPORTED VER.	Use of unsupported iPod	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. See page 214 for the specification information for iPods. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
CONNECT RETRY	Recognition failure of iPod	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.





## Audio System (For some types)

### Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)



### To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can operate the audio files on the USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the disc player. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle, then press the CD/AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.





## Audio System (For some types)

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC\* formats. Depending on the format, the display shows MP3, WMA or AAC when a USB flash memory device is playing. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 65535 files.

\* : Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher, and formatted with the FAT file system. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit. For more information, consult your dealer.

### NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as the device or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.

CONTINUED





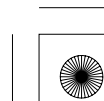
## Audio System (For some types)

---

- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.

- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.
- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.
- Depending on the type of encoding and writing software used, there may be cases where character information does not display properly.

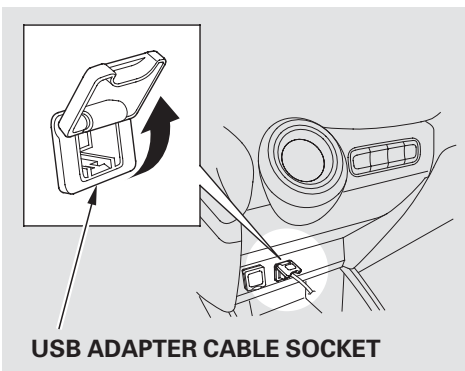
Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays **UNSUPPORTED**, then skips to the next file.



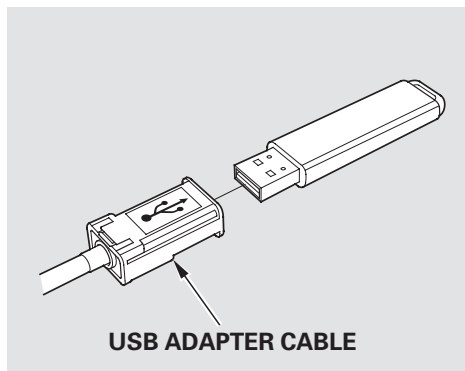


## Audio System (For some types)

### Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



1. Open the lid of the USB adapter cable socket. Insert the USB adapter cable connector into it securely.



2. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

When the USB flash memory device is connected, the USB indicator is shown in the display.

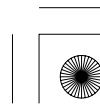
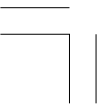
You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Make sure to follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

### ***Text Data Display Function***

Each time you press the TITLE button, the display shows you the text data (folder, file, artist, album or track name) on a file.

The display shows up to 16 characters of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

CONTINUED





## Audio System (For some types)

---

### *To Change or Select Files*

Use the SKIP button while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change MP3, WMA or AAC file.

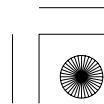
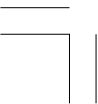
Use the (▲➡ or ▼PLAY) button to select folders in the USB flash memory device.

You can also select a folder or an MP3, WMA or AAC file from the list by using the select button and VOL knob. Push the select button to switch the display to the list displayed, then turn the VOL knob to select a folder. Press the select button to change the display to the MP3, WMA or AAC file list, then turn the same knob to select a file. Press the select button or (▼PLAY) button to set your selection.

**SKIP** — Each time you press and release the ►►| SKIP button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next MP3, WMA or AAC file. Press and release |◄◄ to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a file, press and hold (►►| or |◄◄) of the SKIP button.

**FOLDER SELECTION** — To select a different folder, press the ▲➡ button or ▼PLAY button. Press the ▲➡ side to skip to the next folder, and press the ▼PLAY side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.





## Audio System (For some types)

**REPEAT** — To continuously replay an MP3, WMA, or AAC file, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button to return to normal play.

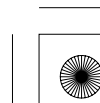
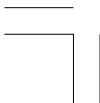
**FOLDER REPEAT** — This feature, when activated, replays all the files in the selected folder in the order they are compressed in MP3, WMA or AAC. To activate folder repeat mode, press the RPT button twice. You will see F-RPT in the display. Press and release the RPT button to return to normal play.

**RANDOM** — This feature plays the files within a USB flash memory device in random order. To activate random play, press the RDM button twice. You will see RDM in the display. Press and release the RDM button to return to normal play.

**FOLDER RANDOM** — This feature, when activated, plays the files within a current folder in random order, rather than in the order they are compressed in MP3, WMA or AAC. To activate folder random play, press and release the RDM button. You will see F-RDM in the display. Press and hold the RDM button to return to normal play.

**SCAN** — The scan function samples all the files on the folder in the order they are recorded in the folder. To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each file in the folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of scan mode and play the last file sampled.

*CONTINUED*





## Audio System (For some types)

---

**FOLDER SCAN** — This feature, when activated, samples the first file in each folder on the USB flash memory device in the order they are recorded. To activate the folder scan feature, press the SCAN button twice. You will see F-SCAN in the display. The system will then play the first file in the main folders for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following first files for 10 seconds each. When it plays a file that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button.

### To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

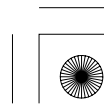
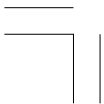
Disconnect the USB flash memory device. On some devices, follow the maker's instructions to disconnect the device.

To play the radio, press the AM/FM button. Press the CD/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the CD/AUX button again to switch back to the USB mode.

If you reconnect the same USB flash memory device, the system will begin playing where it left off.

### USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the display, see page 227 .





## Audio System (For some types)

### USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If there is a problem with your USB flash memory device, an error message will appear. The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see. Disconnect the USB flash memory device, and reconnect it. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM Error	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Abnormal power source	Appears when the overcurrent protection feature of the system stops supplying power to USB because an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
UNPLAYABLE FILE	Use of unsupported files	Appears when the files in the USB flash memory device are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
USB NO SONG	No files in USB flash memory device	Appears when the USB flash memory device is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device. Save some MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device.
UNSUPPORTED	Use of unsupported USB flash memory device	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. See page 221 for the specification information for the USB flash memory device. If it appears when the supported device is connected, reconnect the device.





## Protecting Your Discs

### General Information

- When using CD-R or CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labelled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the system.
- Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

### NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

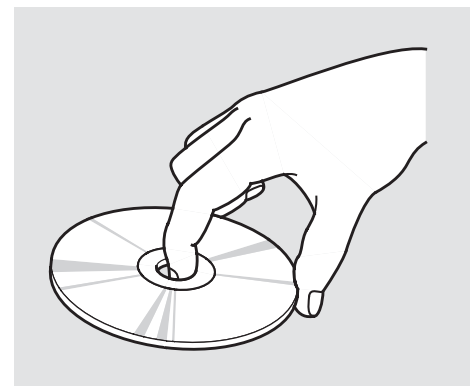
### Protecting Discs

When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the centre to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc player.



Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.





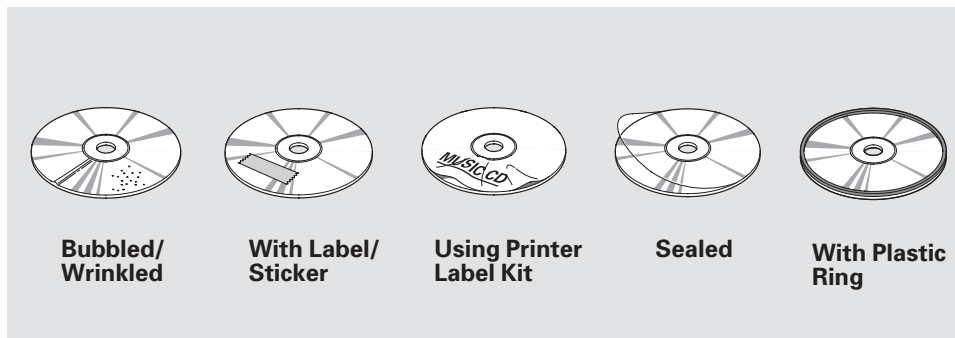
## Protecting Your Discs

### Additional Information on Recommended Discs

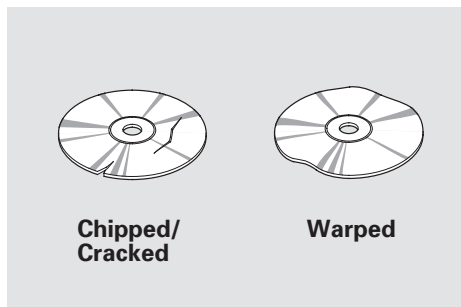
The in-dash disc player has a sophisticated and delicate mechanism. If you insert a damaged disc as indicated in this section, it may become stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples of these discs are shown to the right:

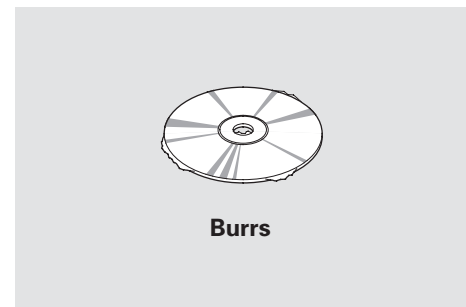
#### 1. Bubbled, wrinkled, labelled, and excessively thick discs



#### 2. Damaged discs



#### 3. Poor quality discs



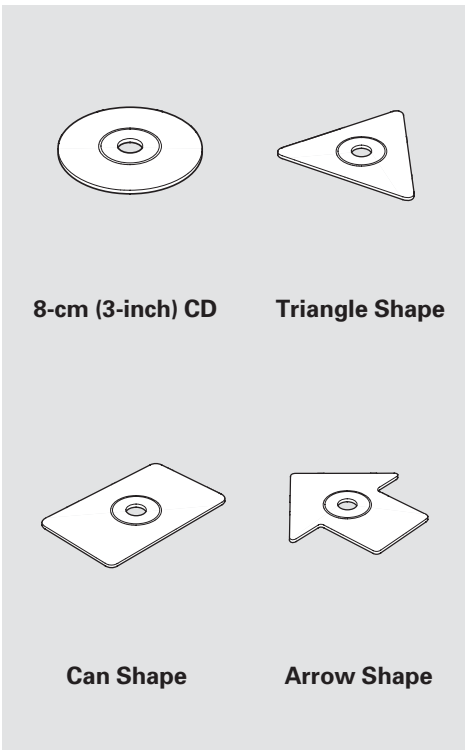
*CONTINUED*



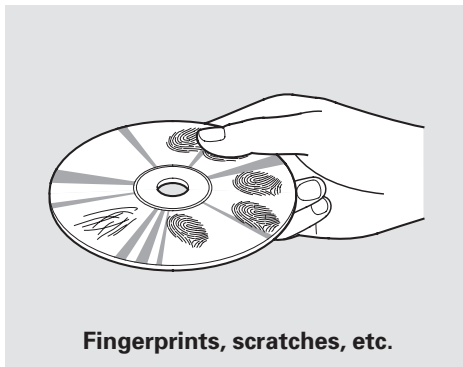


## Protecting Your Discs

### 4. Small, irregular shaped discs



### 5. Discs with scratches, dirty discs



- CD-R or CD-RW may not play due to the recording conditions.
- Scratches and fingerprints on the discs may cause the sound to skip.

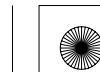
- Recommended discs are printed with the following logo.



- Audio unit may not play the following formats.

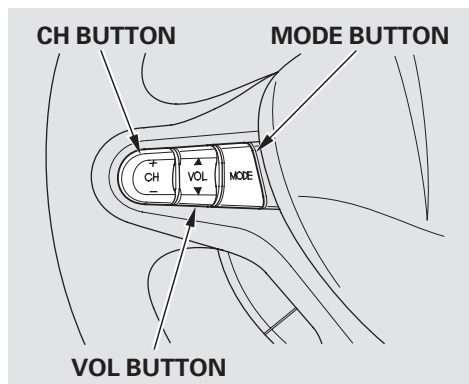


- This audio unit cannot play a Dual-disc®.





## Remote Audio Controls (For some types)



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM, disc (if a disc is loaded), or an audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack or the USB adapter cable. You can select FM1 and FM2 when the auto select feature is not used.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (–) to go back to the previous preset station. If you press and hold the CH button (+) or (–), the system goes into the skip (seek) mode. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

If you are playing a disc, iPod or USB flash memory device, the system skips to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3, WMA or AAC format) each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (–) to return to the beginning of the current track/file. Press it twice to return to the previous track/file.

You will see the track/file number and the elapsed time. If the disc has text data or is compressed in MP3 or WMA, you can also see any other information (track title, file name, folder name, etc.).

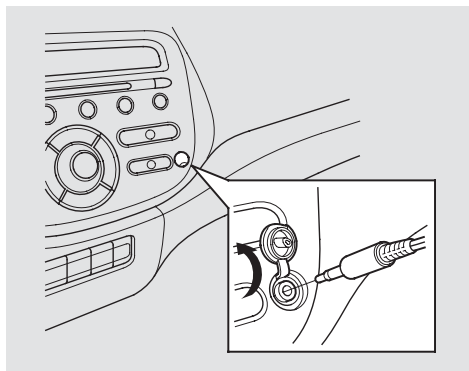
In MP3 or WMA mode, you can use the skip function to select folders. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep, to skip forward to the first file in the next folder. Press the bottom (–) to skip backward to the previous folder.





## Auxiliary Input Jack, Radio Theft Protection

### Auxiliary Input Jack (For some types)



The auxiliary input jack is on the audio unit. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories.

When you plug in a mini-jack cable between a compatible audio unit and the jack, you will see AUX in the display and the system automatically switches to AUX mode.

### Radio Theft Protection

*On vehicles with audio system*

Your vehicle's audio system will disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code using the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from the five-digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

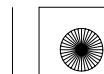
You should have received a card that lists your audio system's code and serial numbers. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from a dealer. To do this, you will need the system's serial number.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the code. The code is on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

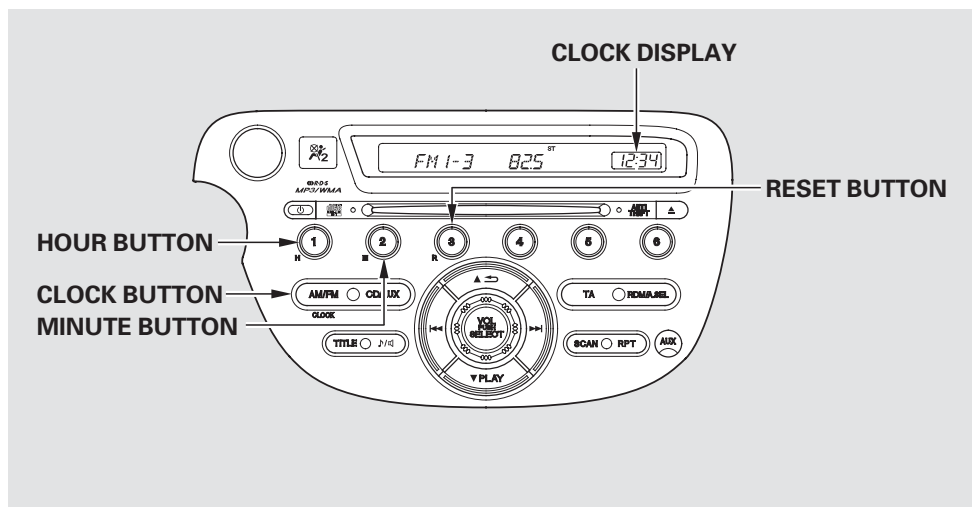
If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have ten tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in ten attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

The system will retain your AM and FM presets even if power is disconnected.





## Setting the Clock



You can quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, press and hold the CLOCK button, then press the R (reset) button to set the time back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, the same procedure sets the time forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example: 1:06 will reset to 1:00  
1:52 will reset to 2:00

*On vehicles with audio system*  
To set the time, press the CLOCK (AM/FM) button until you hear a beep, then release the button. The displayed time begins to blink.

Change the hours by pressing the H (hour) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing the M (minute) button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

Press the CLOCK button again to enter the set time.

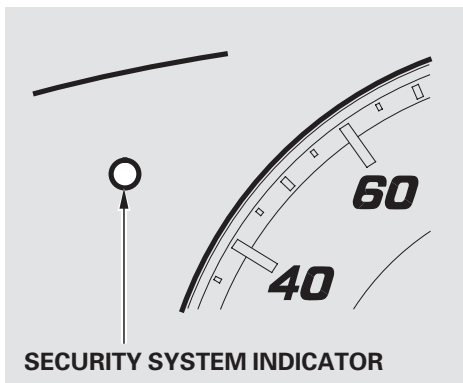




## Security System (For some types)

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and the turn signal lights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the radio. This alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. If the cause of the alarm continues, alarming will repeat several times at about 5-second intervals.

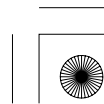
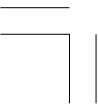
To turn off an activated system before 30 seconds have elapsed, unlock the driver's door with the ignition key or the remote transmitter.



The security system sets automatically 15 seconds after you lock the doors, bonnet, and tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from the outside with the key or remote transmitter. The security system indicator on the instrument panel starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.

When you lock the doors and the tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system has set. When you unlock them, these lights flash once.

The security system also sets after you lock the doors with the lock tab on the driver's door while pulling the outside door handle.





## Security System (For some types), Cruise Control (For some types)

Once the security system is set, opening any door or tailgate (without using the key or the remote transmitter), or the bonnet, will cause the system to alarm. It also alarms if the audio unit is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger inside the locked vehicle turns the ignition switch on.

*On vehicles with super locking system*  
When you set the super locking along with the security system, the alarm is not activated if someone tries to open a door with the lock tabs or the master door lock switch.

The security system will not set if the bonnet, tailgate, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the door and tailgate open indicators on the multi-information display (see page 15 ), to see if the doors and tailgate are fully closed. Since there is no bonnet indicator, manually check the bonnet.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

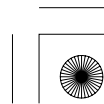
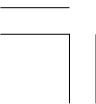
### Cruise Control

Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 40 km/h (25 mph) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open motorways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

#### **WARNING**

**Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.**

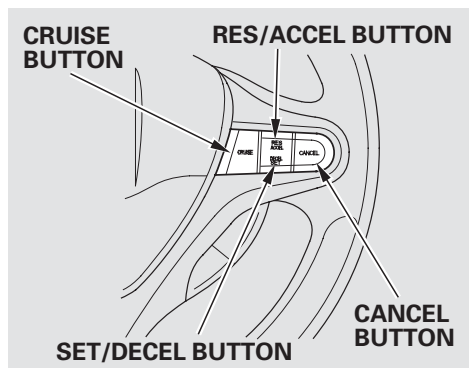
**Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.**





## Cruise Control (For some types)

### Using Cruise Control



1. Push in the CRUISE button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN indicator on the instrument panel comes on.
2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 40 km/h (25 mph).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your vehicle speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.

*On vehicles with manual transmission*  
While the cruise control system is activated, the shift up or down indicator does not work (see page 276).

### Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal until you reach the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase the speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will speed up about 1.6 km/h (1 mph).





## Cruise Control (For some types)

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

**NOTE:** If you need to decrease your speed quickly, use the brakes as you normally would.

- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1.6 km/h (1 mph).
- Tap the brake or clutch pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

Even with cruise control turned on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake or clutch pedal causes cruise control to cancel.

### Cancelling Cruise Control

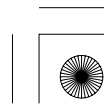
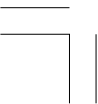
You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

### Resuming the Set Speed

When you push the CANCEL button, or tap the brake or clutch pedal, the system will remember the previously set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 40 km/h (25 mph), and then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on. The vehicle will accelerate to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the CRUISE button turns the system off and erases the previous cruising speed.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) allows you to place and receive phone calls using voice commands, without handling your mobile phone.

To use HFT, you need a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

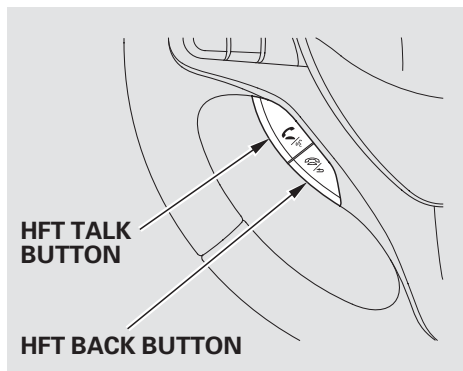
### Visit

[www.hondahandsfree.com](http://www.hondahandsfree.com)

All phones may not operate identically, and some may cause inconsistent operation of the HFT system.

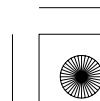
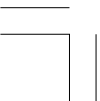
**NOTE:** Before selling or discarding your vehicle, make sure to delete the stored phone data.

### Using HFT *HFT Buttons*



**HFT Talk button** — Press and release to give a command or answer a call.

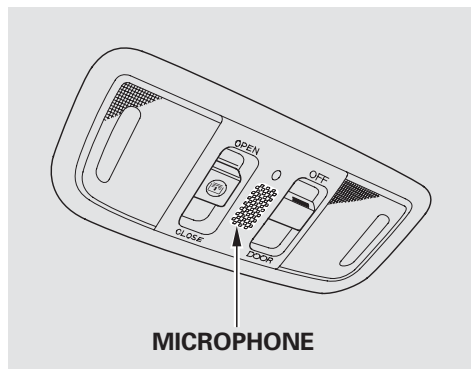
**HFT Back button** — Press and release to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel the command.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### *Voice Control Tips*

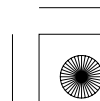
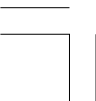


- Air or wind noise from the dashboard and side vents and all windows may interfere with the microphone. Adjust or close them as necessary.
- Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you want to make a command. After the beep, speak in a clear, natural tone.

- Try to reduce all background noise. If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, commands may be misinterpreted.
- Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say "Call 123-456-# # # #" or "Dial Peter."
- When HFT is in use, navigation voice commands cannot be recognised.
- To change the volume level of HFT, use the audio system volume knob or the steering wheel volume controls.

### *Help Features*

- To hear general HFT information, including help on using HFT buttons, Voice control, or making a call, say "Tutorial."
- For help at any time, including a list of available commands, say "Hands free help."

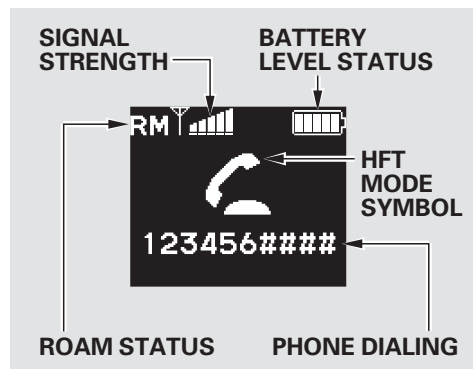




## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### *Information Display*

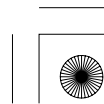
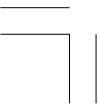
As an incoming call notification, you will see the following display:



Some phones may send battery, signal strength, and roaming status information to HFT.

The Bluetooth icon  will also appear on the display when a phone is linked.

When you are operating the HFT, dialing or receiving calls with the audio system in use, you will see "TEL" on the audio display.

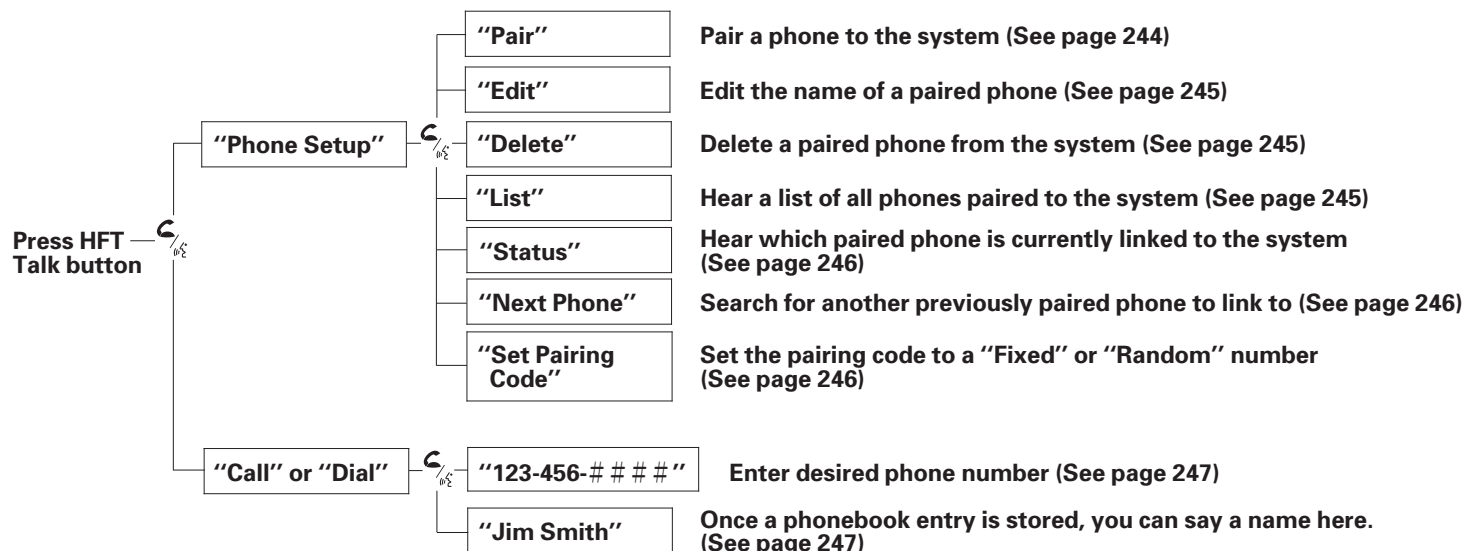




## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### How to Use HFT

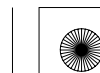
The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.



Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you give a command.

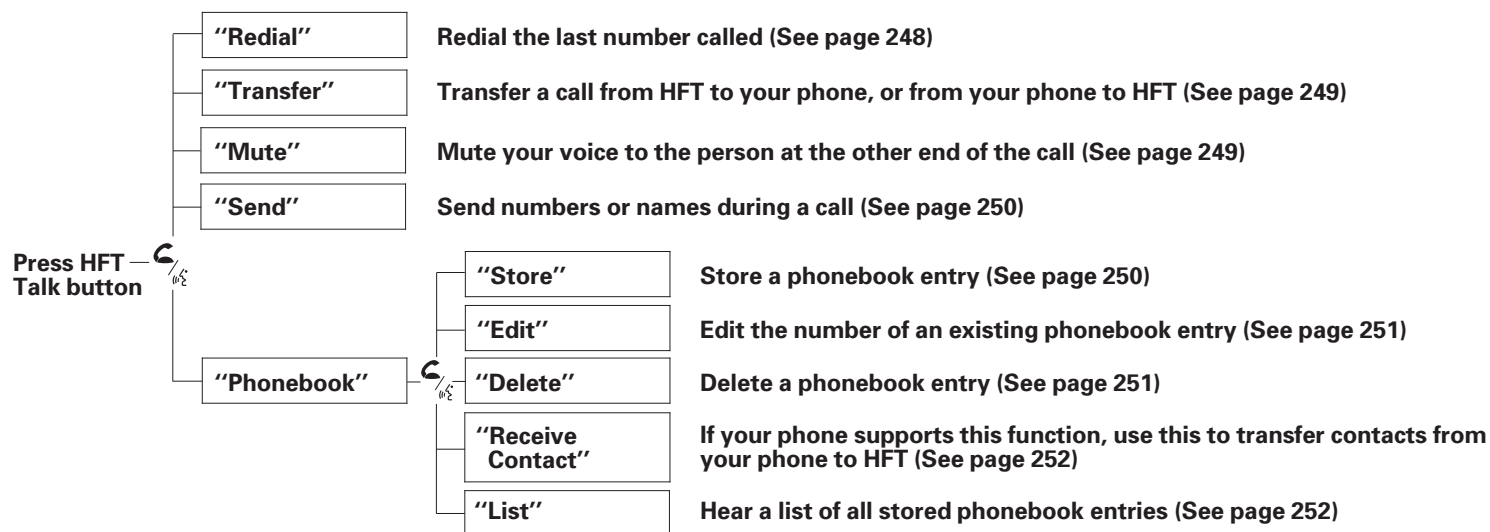
CONTINUED

Features **241**

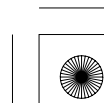
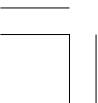




## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

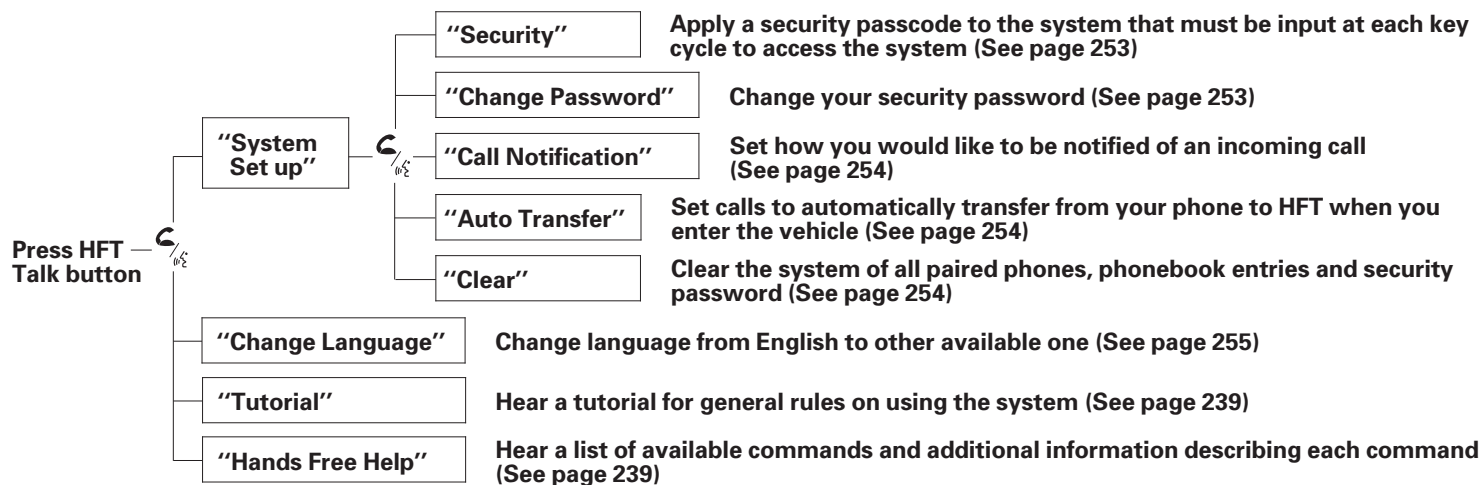


Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you give a command.





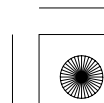
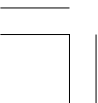
## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)



 Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED

Features **243**





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

To use HFT, you need to pair your Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone to the system.

### Phone Setup

This command group is available for paired mobile phones.

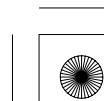
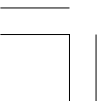
#### *Phone pairing tips*

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Your phone must be in discovery or search mode to pair. Refer to your phone's manual.
- Up to six phones can be paired.

- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If after three minutes your phone is not ready to pair or a phone is not found, the system will time out and return to idle.

#### *To pair a mobile phone:*

1. Press and release the HFT Talk button. If you are pairing a phone for the first time, HFT will give you information about the pairing process. If it is not the first phone you are pairing, say **"Phone setup"** and say **"Pair."**
2. Follow the HFT prompts and put your phone in discovery or search mode. HFT will give you a 4-digit pairing code and begin searching for your phone.  
  
4-digit pairing code is also shown on the multi-information display.
3. When your phone finds a Bluetooth device, select HFT from the options and enter the 4-digit code from the previous step.
4. Follow the HFT prompts and name the newly paired phone.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### *To rename a paired phone:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Edit**” after the prompts.
3. If there is more than one phone paired to the system, HFT will ask you which phone’s name you want to change. Follow the HFT prompts and rename the phone.

### *To delete a paired phone:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Delete**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will ask you which phone you want to delete. Follow the HFT prompts to continue with the deletion.

### *To hear the names of all paired phones:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**List**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will read out all the paired phone’s names.

CONTINUED





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

### *To hear which paired phone is currently linked:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Status**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will tell you which phone is linked to the system.

### *To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Next phone**” after the prompts.
3. HFT disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone.
4. Once another phone is found, it is linked to the system. HFT will inform you which phone is now linked.

If no other phones are found or paired, HFT will inform you that the original phone is linked again.

### *To change the pairing code setting:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Set pairing code**” after the prompts.
3. If you want HFT to create a random code each time you pair a phone, say “**Random.**” If you want to choose your own 4-digit code to be used each time, say “**Fixed**” and follow the HFT prompts.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### **Making a Call**

You can make calls using any phone number or a name in the HFT phonebook. You can also redial the last number called.

Bluetooth is the wireless technology that links your phone to HFT. HFT uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means, the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 10 meters (30 feet).

During a call, HFT allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch. However, this may weaken the vehicle's battery.

### ***To make a call using a name in the HFT phonebook:***

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say **“Call”** or **“Dial.”**
2. Follow the HFT prompts and say the name stored in the HFT phonebook that you want to call.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the name and make the call.

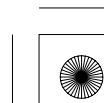
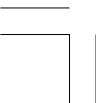
### ***To make a call using a phone number (talk button):***

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say **“Call”** or **“Dial.”**
2. Follow the HFT prompts and say the phone number you want to dial.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the number and say **“Call”** or **“Dial.”**

Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers.

*CONTINUED*





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

### *To redial the last number called by HFT:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button and say “**Redial.**”

### *To make a call using a paired phone via HFT*

You can also make a call from your paired phone in the vehicle. The call will be transferred to HFT automatically.

**NOTE:** Never try to dial from your phone directly if the vehicle is moving.

### **Receiving a Call**

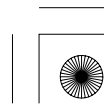
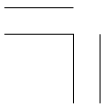
When you receive a call, an incoming call notification (if activated) will play and interrupt the audio system if it is on.

Press the HFT Talk button to answer the call, or the HFT Back button to hang up.

### ***Call Waiting***

If your phone has Call Waiting, press and release the HFT Talk button to put the original call on hold and answer the incoming call.

To return to the original call, press the HFT Talk button again. If you don't want to answer the incoming call, disregard it and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the HFT Back button.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### Transferring a Call

You can transfer a call from HFT to your phone, or from your phone to HFT.

Press and release the HFT Talk button and say **“Transfer.”**

### *Automatic Transferring*

A call on the phone will be automatically transferred to the HFT system when you get into the vehicle and turn on the ignition switch.

If you make a call from your phone while in the vehicle, the call will also be transferred to the HFT system.

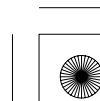
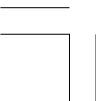
**NOTE:** Never try to dial from your phone directly if the vehicle is moving.

### Muting a Call

You can mute your voice to the person you are talking to during a call.

To mute your voice during a call, press and release the HFT Talk button and say **“Mute.”**

To unmute your voice, press and release the HFT Talk button and say **“Mute”** again.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

### Send Numbers or Names During a Call

HFT allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

#### *To send a name or number during a call:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Send.**”
2. Follow the HFT prompts and say the name or number you want to send.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to send the tones and continue the call.

**NOTE:** To send a hash (#), say “hash.” To send a star (\*), say “star.”

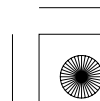
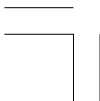
### Phonebook

You can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers on HFT. The numbers you store cannot be only phone numbers but other types, such as account numbers or passwords, which can be sent during a menu-driven call.

#### *To store a phonebook entry:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Store**” after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to list as your phonebook entry.
4. Say the number you want to store for the name entry.
5. Follow the HFT prompts and say “**Enter**” to store the entry.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### NOTE:

- Avoid using duplicate name entries.
- Avoid using “home” as a name entry.
- It is easier for HFT to recognise a multisyllabic or longer name. For example, use “**Peter**” instead of “**Pete**,” or “**John Smith**” instead of “**John**.”

### *To edit the number stored in a name:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Edit**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say the name entry you want to edit.
4. When asked, say the new number for that name.
5. Follow the HFT prompts to complete the edit.

### *To delete a name:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Delete**” after the prompts.
3. Say the name you want to delete and follow the HFT prompts to complete the deletion.

CONTINUED





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

### *To list all names in the phonebook:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

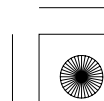
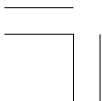
1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**List**” after the prompts.
3. HFT begins reading the names in the order they were stored.
4. If you hear a name you want to call, immediately press the HFT Talk button and say “**Call.**”

### *To store a specific phone number from your mobile phone directly to the HFT phonebook (available on some phones):*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Receive contact**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts, select a number from your mobile phone, and send it to HFT.

4. Follow the HFT prompts and name the number, or say “**Discard**” if it is not the number you want to store.
5. Follow the HFT prompts if you want to store another number.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### System Setup

This command group allows you to change or customize HFT's basic settings.

#### *To set a 4-digit password to lock the HFT system for security purposes:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say **"System setup."**
2. Say **"Security"** after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say the 4-digit password you want to set.
4. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the number.

**NOTE:** Once a password is set, you will need to enter it to use HFT each time you start the vehicle. If you forget the password, your dealer will have to reset it for you, or you will have to clear the entire system (see page 254 ).

#### *To change your security password:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say **"System setup."**
2. Say **"Change password"** after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say the new 4-digit password.
4. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the number.

CONTINUED





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

### *To select either a ring tone or a prompt as the incoming call notification\*:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**System setup.**”
2. Say “**Call notification**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say “**Ring tone**” or “**Prompt.**” You can also say “**Off**” for no audible incoming call notification.

\*: The default setting is a ring tone.

### *To activate or deactivate the auto transfer function:*

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**System setup.**”
2. Say “**Auto transfer**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will let you know if auto transfer is on or off, depending on the previous setting. Follow the HFT prompts to change the setting.

### *To clear the system:*

This operation clears the password, paired phones, all names in the HFT phonebook, and all imported phonebook data.

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**System setup.**”
2. Say “**Clear**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to continue to complete the clearing procedure.

You can also clear the system when you have forgotten the password and cannot access HFT. When HFT asks you for the password, say “**System clear.**” Paired phones, all names in the HFT phonebook and all imported phonebook data will be lost.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

### Change Language

*To change the system language between English, French, Italian, German and Spanish:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Change language.**”
2. Follow the HFT prompts to select the desired language.

If you have not named your paired phone in the language you just selected, HFT will ask you to name it in the current language.

For example, when French is your currently selected language, you can give voice commands in French.

### Quick Language Selection

*To quickly change the language:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button and say a command.

1. Say the language you want to change to in that language.
2. Follow the HFT prompts.

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® name and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd. is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.





## Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

---

### **HFT System Limitations**

When using voice control, the HFT system call is placed on hold, or the HFT system stops its voice recognition. The HFT system call will continue when voice control command is ended. To operate the HFT system again, press the Talk button. Then after the beep, say the appropriate command.

In addition, you cannot use the HFT system while receiving a PTY alarm.

*For information of DoC (Declaration of Conformance)*

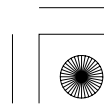
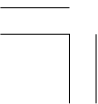
*EU models*

Hereby, *Johnson Controls Automotive*, declares that this *Hands-Free Telephone System* is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

[www.jciblueconnect.com/faq/EU\\_DoC.pdf](http://www.jciblueconnect.com/faq/EU_DoC.pdf)

*Except EU models*

For additional conformance information: [www.jciblueconnect.com/faq](http://www.jciblueconnect.com/faq)





## Before Driving

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what fuel to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period .....	258
Fuel Recommendation .....	258
Service Station Procedures .....	259
Refueling.....	259
Opening and Closing the Bonnet .....	260
Oil Check .....	261
Engine Coolant Check .....	262
Fuel Cutoff System.....	263
Fuel Economy .....	264
Accessories and Modifications ....	265
Carrying Luggage.....	267





## Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

### Break-in Period

Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 1,000 km (625 miles). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles).
- Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.

*On vehicles with manual transmission*

- Do not tow a trailer.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

### Fuel Recommendation

Your vehicle is designed to operate on Premium/Super unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 95 or higher.

Petrol of the recommended Research Octane Number (RON) may not be available in some areas. In this case, petrol of a lower octane may be used temporarily if it does not cause engine "knocking." This will result in decreased engine performance.

Using petrol containing lead will damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. This contributes to air pollution.

### Oxygenated Fuels

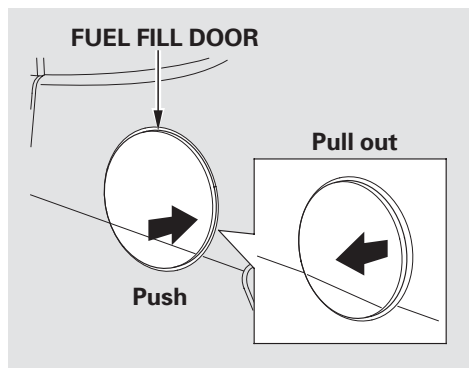
Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or ether compound. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.





## Service Station Procedures

### Refueling



1. Park with the left side closest to the service station pump.
2. Make sure the driver's door is unlocked. The fuel fill door always locks or unlocks in conjunction with the driver's door.

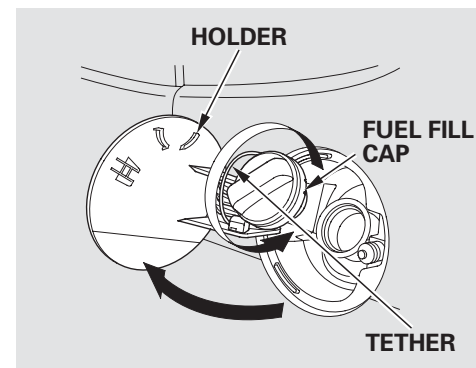
With the driver's door locked, the fuel fill door is also locked.

3. Outside of the vehicle, push on the right side edge of the fuel fill door in the middle until you hear a click. The fuel fill door will pop up slightly. Pull it outward to open it.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.**

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**



4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank equalizes.

Place the fuel fill cap in the holder on the fuel fill door. To prevent the fuel fill cap from becoming lost, it is attached to the fuel filler with a tether.

*CONTINUED*





## Service Station Procedures

5. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to “top off” the tank. This leaves some room in the fuel tank for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.
6. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once.
7. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches. If the door won’t close fully, do not force it. Unlock the drivers door first.

### NOTICE

The fuel door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel door is forced closed when the driver’s door is locked.

### Opening and Closing the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the bonnet release handle under the lower corner of the dashboard. The bonnet will pop up slightly.



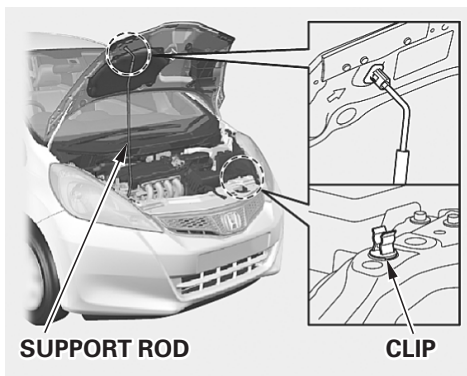
2. Put your fingers between the front edge of the bonnet and the front grille. The bonnet latch handle is above the “H” logo. Push this handle up to release the bonnet. Lift the bonnet.

If the bonnet latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.





## Service Station Procedures



3. Holding the grip, pull the support rod out of its clip. Insert the end into the hole in the bonnet designated by an arrow.

To close the bonnet, lift it up slightly to remove the support rod from the hole. Put the support rod back into its holding clip. Lower the bonnet to about 30 cm (a foot) above the fender, then let it drop. Make sure it is securely latched.

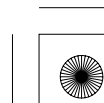
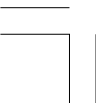
### Oil Check

All engines consume oil as part of their normal operation, therefore, the engine oil level must be checked regularly, for example when refuelling. Always check the oil before a long journey.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

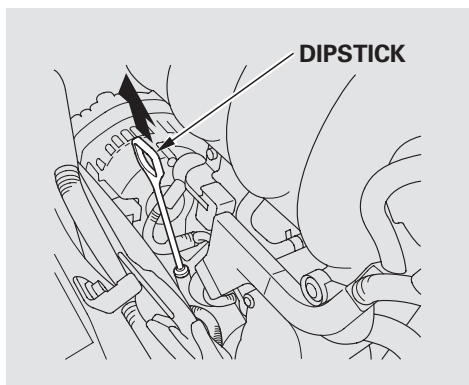
Make sure the engine is warmed up and the vehicle is parked on level ground. Turn off the engine and wait approximately 3 minutes before checking the oil level.

*CONTINUED*





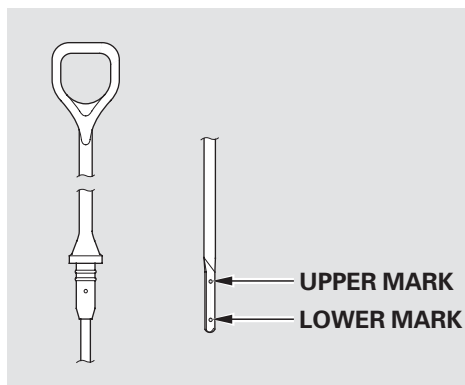
## Service Station Procedures



1. Remove the dipstick (orange handle).

Remove the dipstick carefully, so you do not spill the oil. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.

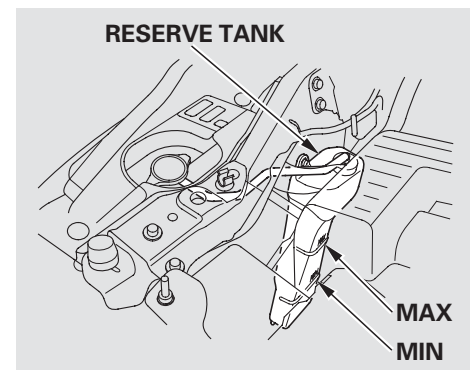
2. Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert it all the way back in its tube.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 328 .

## Engine Coolant Check



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 330 for information on adding the proper coolant.

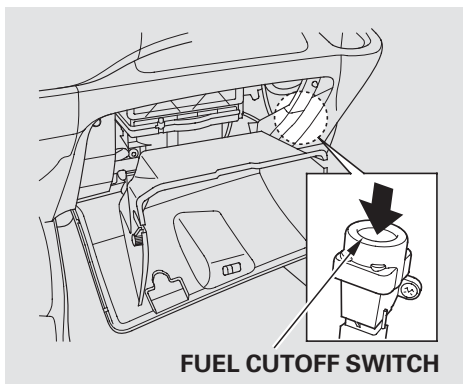
Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 325 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.



## Fuel Cutoff System

The fuel cutoff switch is behind the dashboard on the passenger's side. To access the switch:

1. Open the glove box.
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel (see page 353 ).
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.



4. Extend your arm through the opening of the glove box.

In a collision or sudden impact, this switch automatically cuts off the fuel supply to the engine.

After the switch has activated, it must be reset by pressing the button before the engine can be restarted.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Leaking petrol can ignite or explode, causing you to be seriously or fatally injured.**

**Always check for fuel leaks before resetting the switch.**





## Fuel Economy

---

### Improving Fuel Economy

- Always maintain your vehicle according to the service reminder symbols displayed on the multi-information display. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle. On vehicles without Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owners manual (see page 319 ). In any situation, see **Owner's Maintenance Checks** (see page 325 ).

*For example, an underinflated tyre causes more “rolling resistance,” which uses more fuel.*

- The build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel economy and reduces the chance of corrosion.
- Drive moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.
- Always drive in the highest gear possible.
- *On vehicles with manual transmission* Shift up and shift down indicators on the instrument panel show the best timing to shift to a higher or lower gear, so you will keep the engine operating in its most economical range.

- Try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your vehicle uses extra fuel. Use the cruise control (on some types) when appropriate.
- Wind resistance causes vehicles to use more fuel at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds on the motorway also reduces wind resistance and conserves fuel.
- Combine several short trips into one.
- The air conditioning puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.





## Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Honda accessories, can make it unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

### Accessories

Your dealer has genuine Honda accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle.

Although non-Honda accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antenna, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 421 ) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.





## Accessories and Modifications

---

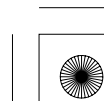
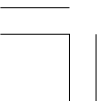
### Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Honda components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

Some examples are:

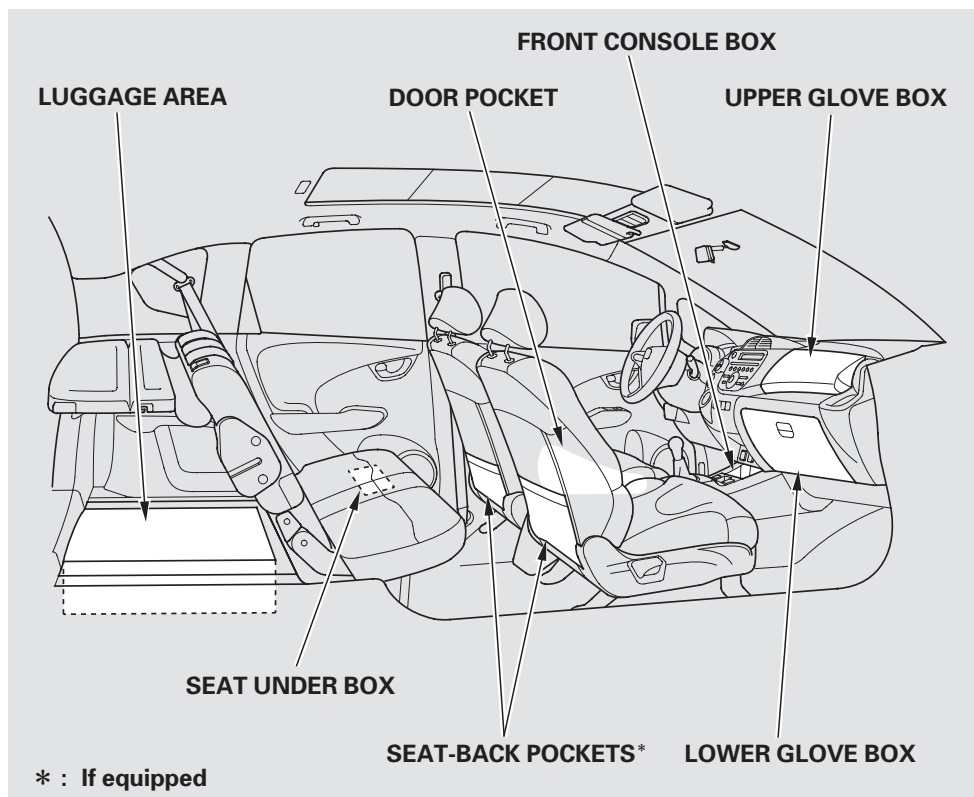
- Lowering your vehicle with a non-Honda suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with a non-Honda suspension kit can affect the handling, stability, and reliability.
- Non-Honda wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components.

- Larger or smaller wheels and tyres can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.





## Carrying Luggage



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Upper glove box
- Lower glove box
- Door and seat-back pockets (on some types)
- Luggage area, including the rear seats when folded up or down.
- Front console box
- Seat under box
- Roof-rack (if installed)

However, carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of luggage, be sure to read the following pages.



## Carrying Luggage

### Load Limits

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Refer to page 435 for the maximum permissible weight and maximum permissible axle weight.

### WARNING

**Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.**

**Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.**

### Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, and proper operation of the seats. Do not stack items higher than the back of the front seats.
- Keep the lower glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.





## Carrying Luggage

- If you fold the rear seats up or down, tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop. Also, keep all luggage below the bottom of the windows. If it is higher, it could interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Try to secure the items with rope or cord so they will not shift while you are driving. Do not stack items higher than the back of the front seats.

Refer to page 156 for folding rear seats.

### Carrying Luggage in the Luggage Area or on a Roof Rack

- Distribute luggage evenly on the floor of the luggage area, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible. Try to secure the items with rope or cord so they will not shift while you are driving.
- Do not place items on the luggage area cover (if equipped), or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the tailgate, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page 73 .

- If you can carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed 55 kg (121 lbs) on vehicles without the sunshade or 45 kg (99 lbs) on vehicles with the sunshade. Please contact your dealer for further information.

Concerning lashing means and retaining devices offered on the accessory market, please contact your dealer.

#### NOTICE

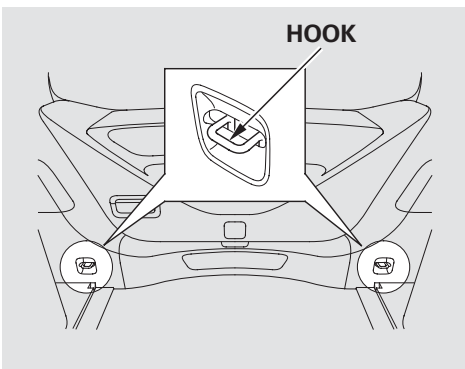
A normal bike rack must not be fitted to the tailgate.



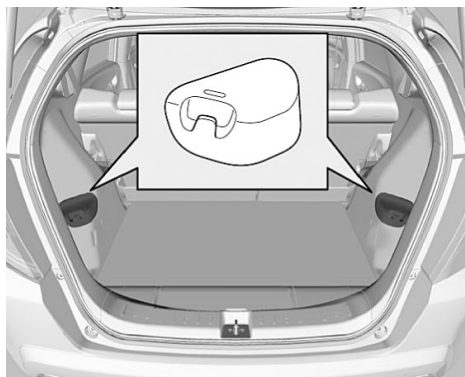


## Carrying Luggage

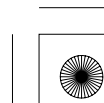
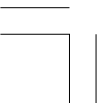
### Luggage Hooks



The hooks on the floor of the luggage area enable you to tie down items stored in the back. Make sure all stored items are secured before driving.



*If equipped*  
Your vehicle also has luggage hooks on the side panel in the luggage area. They are designed to hold light items. Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on each hook weigh less than 1 kg (2.2 lbs).

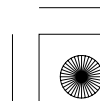
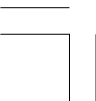




## Driving

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the manual and automatic transmissions. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.

Preparing to Drive .....	272
Starting the Engine.....	273
Manual Transmission.....	274
Automatic Transmission (CVT) ..	277
Driving with the Paddle Shifters.....	282
Parking.....	287
Braking System.....	288
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) .....	289
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	291
Driving in Bad Weather .....	294
Towing a Trailer .....	296





## Preparing to Drive

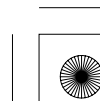
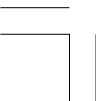
---

You should do the following checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the bonnet is fully closed.
3. Check that the tailgate is fully closed.

4. Visually check the tyres. If a tyre looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
5. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.
6. Check the seat adjustment (see page 149 ).
7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 166 ).

8. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 135 ).
9. Make sure the doors are securely closed.
10. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 18 ).
11. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel (see page 80 ).
12. Check the symbol(s) on the multi-information display.





## Starting the Engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. *Manual transmission:*  
Push the clutch pedal down all the way and shift the transmission to neutral.

*Automatic transmission:*  
Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.

4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. Do not hold the key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds at a time. If the engine does not start right away, pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.

### NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. See **Immobilizer System** on page 138 .

### NOTICE

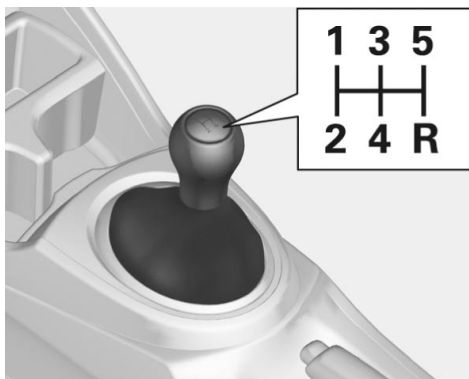
The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 meters (8,000 feet) adds to this problem.

If the outside temperature is below freezing, or if your vehicle has not been driven for several days, warm up the engine for a few minutes before driving (prohibited in Germany! § 30 StVO).





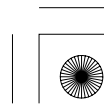
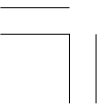
## Manual Transmission



The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot shift directly from fifth to reverse. When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause excessive clutch wear.

Come to a full stop before you shift into reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into reverse with the vehicle moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure the engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear. Refer to the maximum allowable speeds charts.





## Manual Transmission

### **WARNING**

**Rapid slowing or speeding-up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.**

**Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.**

### **NOTICE**

Do not rest your hand on the shift lever while driving; pressure transmitted from your hand may cause premature wear to the gear selector mechanism.

### **Engine Speed Limiter**

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

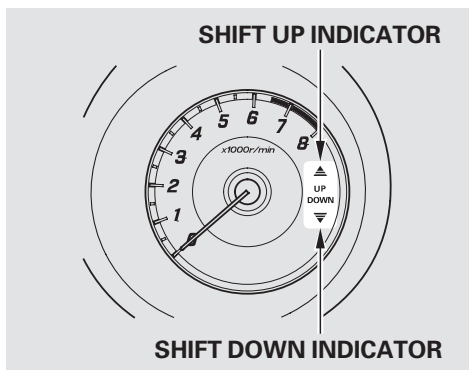
Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.





## Manual Transmission

### Shift Up/Shift Down Indicators



The shift indicator light may be used as a guide to help you change gear when you would like to drive to achieve better fuel efficiency.

Either shift up or shift down indicator will come on at the best time to shift to a higher or lower gear for better fuel economy. You can achieve better fuel economy by accelerating and decelerating slowly, and shifting when prompted by the shift up or down indicator.

The shift down indicator prompts you to shift to a lower gear according to your acceleration when you are climbing a hill or for faster accelerating on a level road.

This indicator will not prompt to downshift to first gear. It is up to you to downshift to first gear to increase engine braking. Avoid sudden engine braking.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

If there is a problem with the shift up or down indication system, both of the shift up and shift down indicators will not come on. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**The shift indicator is only a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy. Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.**



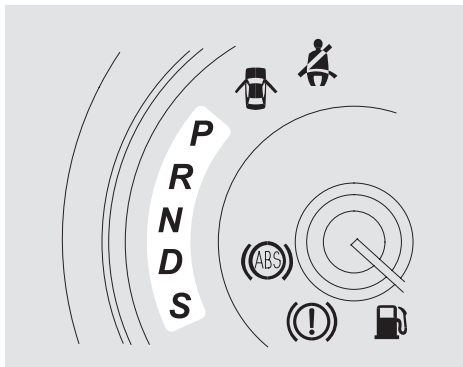


## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

### Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Honda's Continuously Variable Transmission's unique design provides a smooth, constant flow of power. It is electronically controlled for more precise operation and better fuel economy.



### Shift Lever Position Indicators

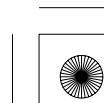
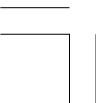


This indicator on the instrument panel shows which position the shift lever is in.

The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

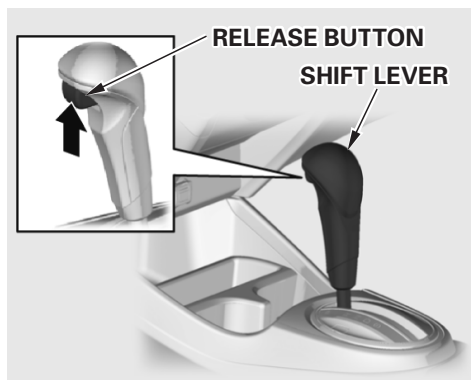
When the “D” indicator warns of a possible problem with the transmission, you will see the symbol “,” or, the symbol with a “,” or, the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message.





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

### Shifting

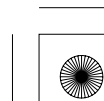
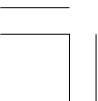


To shift from Park to any position, press the brake pedal, the release button on the front of the shift lever, then pull the lever. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position.

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal and press the release button.
R to P N to R D to S	Press the release button.
S to D D to N N to D R to N	Move the lever.

**Park (P)** – This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Press the release button on the front of the shift lever to move it.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page 281 .





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. You must also press the release button to shift into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

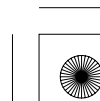
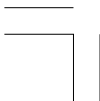
**Reverse (R)** — Press the brake pedal and the release button on the front of the shift lever to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop, and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.

**Neutral (N)** — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another position.

**Drive (D)** — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically adjusts to keep the engine at the best speed for the driving conditions.

*CONTINUED*

**Driving 279**





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

---

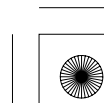
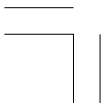
**Second (S)** – To shift into the S position, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, and move the lever to S. The S position is similar to D, except the range of ratios are different for better acceleration and increased engine braking.

With the shift lever in D or S, you can also use the paddle shifters to shift the transmission up or down. With the paddle shifters, you can operate the transmission much like a manual transmission without a clutch pedal. For more information on driving with the paddle shifters, see page 282 .

### Engine Speed Limiter

The CVT shifts automatically to maintain proper engine speed in any shift position.

When the vehicle reaches the maximum speed in any shift position, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter (180 km/h, 112 mph) in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the speed to below the maximum.



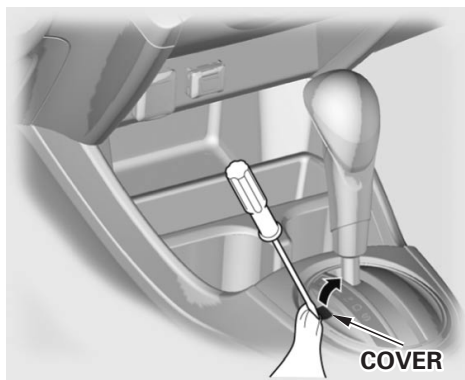


## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

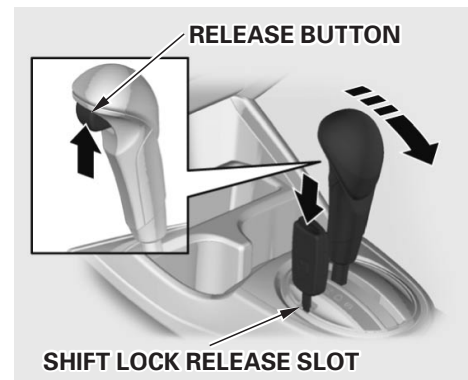
### Shift Lock Release

This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
3. Put a cloth on the notch of the shift lock release slot cover to prevent scratches. Using a small flat-tip screwdriver or metal fingernail file, carefully pry on the notch of the cover to remove it.

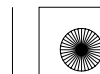


4. Insert the key in the shift lock release slot.
5. Push down on the key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.



6. Remove the key from the shift lock release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the left side. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.



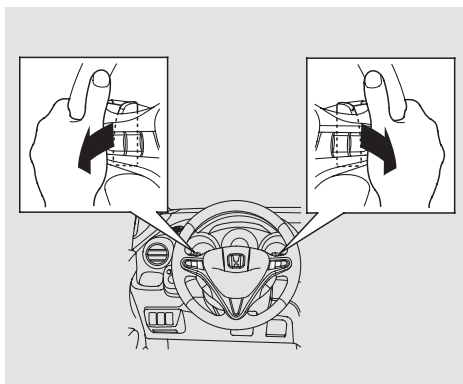


## Driving with the Paddle Shifters (For some types)

### Using the Paddle Shifters in the D position (D-Paddle Shift Mode)

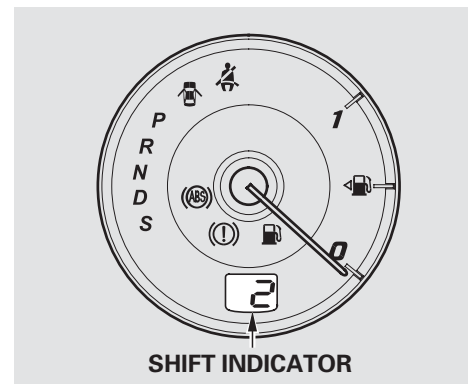
When you are driving in the D position, pulling either paddle shifter switches from the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT) to the D-paddle shift mode. You can shift the transmission up or down through seven-stages manually with the paddle shifters.

Downshifting gives you more power when climbing, and provides engine braking when going down a steep hill.



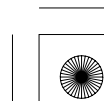
To shift up or down, use the + (right) or - (left) paddle shifter on either side of the steering wheel.

Pull the + (right) paddle shifter to upshift. Pull - (left) to downshift.



When you pull either paddle shifter, the shift indicator shows you the selected speed number.

When the transmission returns to ordinary automatic transmission (CVT), the displayed shift indicator disappears.





## Driving with the Paddle Shifters (For some types)

Downshifting with the – (left) paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphill. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

The transmission control system monitors the accelerator pedal use and your driving conditions. When you press the accelerator pedal as in the normal driving, the system judges that you are driving at a constant cruising speed without using the paddle shifters. Under these conditions, D-paddle shift mode is cancelled, and the transmission automatically returns to ordinary automatic transmission (CVT).

To cancel the D-paddle shift mode manually, pull and hold the + side paddle shifter until the shift indicator goes out.

The transmission remains in the selected speed if you do not accelerate.

*CONTINUED*





## Driving with the Paddle Shifters (For some types)

---

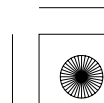
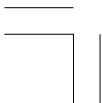
Each time you pull either paddle shifter, the transmission shifts one speed up or down. If you want to shift up or down more than two speeds, pull the paddle shifter twice, pause, and then pull it again.

The automatic transmission (CVT) will not allow you to shift if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed.
- If you try to do this, the shift indicator will flash the number of the lower speed several times, then return to a higher speed.
- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed.
- You press both paddle shifters at the same time.
- You pull one of the two paddle shifters with another paddle shifter being pressed.

The transmission downshifts to first speed and returns to ordinary automatic transmission (CVT) when the vehicle comes to a complete stop and the vehicle speed is about 10 km/h (6 mph).

If there is a problem in the transmission while you are driving with the paddle shifters, the D indicator flashes, the D-paddle shift mode is cancelled, and the transmission returns to ordinary automatic transmission (CVT).



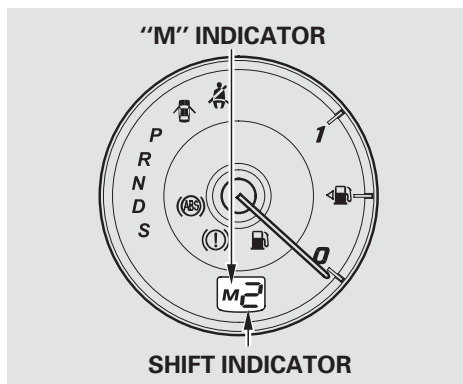


## Driving with the Paddle Shifters (For some types)

### Using the Paddle Shifters in the S position (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode)

With the shift lever in the S position, you can select the 7-Speed Manual shift mode to shift speeds; much like a manual transmission using the paddle shifters, but without a clutch pedal.

To enter the 7-speed manual shift mode, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, move the lever to the S position, then pull either paddle shifter. To cancel the 7-speed manual shift mode and return to the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT), move the shift lever from the S position. When moving the shift lever, be careful not to operate incorrectly. While you are driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission will not automatically return to the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT).



When you move the shift lever from the "D" to the "S" position and pull either paddle shifter, the shift indicator displays "M" along with the selected speed number.

To upshift, pull the + (right) paddle shifter. To downshift, pull the - (left) paddle shifter.

If you keep depressing the accelerator pedal without pressing the paddle shifter, the speed will be automatically shifted up just before the tachometer's red zone.

The transmission also shifts automatically as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. It downshifts to first speed when the vehicle speed reaches 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.

Downshifting with the - (left) paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphill. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

*CONTINUED*





## Driving with the Paddle Shifters (For some types)

---

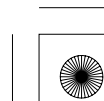
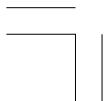
The automatic transmission (CVT) will not allow you to shift if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed.

If you try to do this, the shift indicator will flash the number of the lower speed several times, then return to a higher speed.

- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed.

- You press both paddle shifters at the same time.
- You pull one of the two paddle shifters with another paddle shifter being pressed.





## Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.


If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

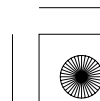
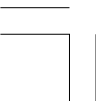
### Parking Tips

- Make sure the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the luggage area or take them with you.
- Lock the doors and the tailgate.

*On vehicles with security system*  
Check the indicator on the instrument panel to verify that the security system is set.

- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.

- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb.
- Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes. You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message in the multi-information display (see page 168 ).





## Braking System

---

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The emergency brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, builds up heat, reduces their effectiveness and reduces brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious in your driving.

### Braking System Design

The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.

### Brake Pad Wear Indicators

All four disc brakes have audible brake pad wear indicators.

If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.





## Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

*You should never pump the brake pedal.* Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”


You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry roads, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.



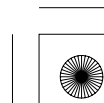
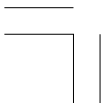
### ABS Indicator

If the ABS indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

If the ABS indicator comes on while driving, test the brakes as instructed on page 419 .

You will also see the symbol “ ” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

CONTINUED







## Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

---

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

If this happens, you will also see the symbols “” (for ABS system) and “” (for Brake system), or “CHECK SYSTEM” messages with each of these symbols on the multi-information display.

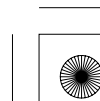
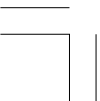
Test your brakes as instructed on page 419 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

**Important Safety Reminders**  
**ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.** It only helps with steering control during braking.

**ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly,** such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

**ABS cannot prevent the loss of stability.** Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

**A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop** on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.





## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system. You will also see the VSA activation indicator blink.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.



### VSA OFF Indicator

When VSA is off, the VSA OFF indicator comes on as a reminder.



### VSA System Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA system indicator blink.

If the VSA system indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays on or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.


*CONTINUED*





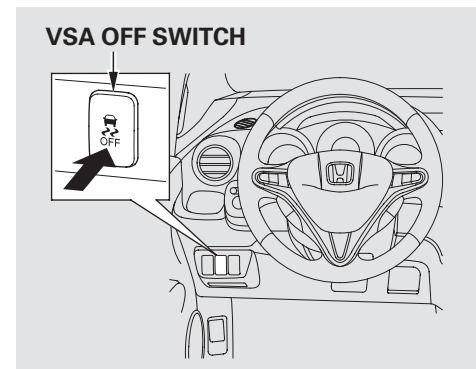
## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

When the VSA system indicator comes on, you will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

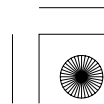
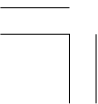
Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

### VSA OFF Switch



This switch is under the driver's side vent. To turn the VSA system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. Press and hold the switch again. It turns the system back on.





## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.

### VSA and Tyre Sizes

Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tyres (see page 365 ).

If you install winter tyres, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.





## Driving in Bad Weather

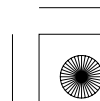
---



Rain, fog, and snow conditions require a different driving technique because of reduced traction and visibility. Keep your vehicle well-maintained and exercise greater caution when you need to drive in bad weather. The cruise control (on some types) should not be used in these conditions.

**Driving Technique** — Always drive slower than you would in dry weather. It takes your vehicle longer to react, even in conditions that may seem just barely damp. Apply smooth, even pressure to all the controls. Abrupt steering wheel movements or sudden, hard application of the brakes can cause loss of control in wet weather. Be extra cautious for the first few kilometers (miles) of driving while you adjust to the change in driving conditions. This is especially true in snow. A person can forget some snow-driving techniques during the summer months. Practice is needed to relearn those skills.

Exercise extra caution when driving in rain after a long dry spell. After months of dry weather, the first rains bring oil to the surface of the roadway, making it slippery.





## Driving in Bad Weather

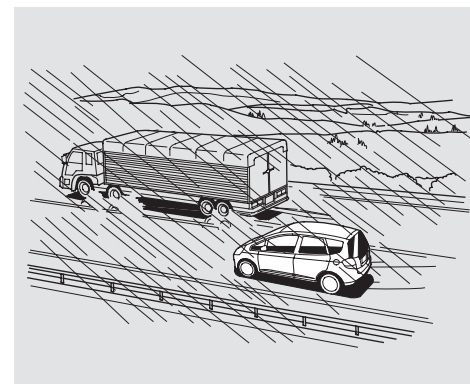
**Visibility** — Being able to see clearly in all directions and being visible to other drivers are important in all weather conditions. This is more difficult in bad weather. To be seen more clearly during daylight hours, turn on your headlights.

Inspect your windscreen wipers and washers frequently. Keep the windscreen washer reservoir full of the proper fluid. Have the windscreen wiper blades replaced if they start to streak the windscreen or leave parts unwiped. Use the demister and air conditioning (on some types) to keep the windows from fogging up on the inside (see pages 188 and 192 ).

**Traction** — Check your tyres frequently for wear and proper pressure. Both are important in preventing “aquaplaning” (loss of traction on a wet surface). In the winter, mount snow tyres on all four wheels for the best handling.

Watch road conditions carefully, they can change from moment to moment. Wet leaves can be as slippery as ice. “Clear” roads can have patches of ice. Driving conditions can be very hazardous when the outside temperature is near freezing. The road surface can become covered with areas of water puddles mixed with areas of ice, so your traction can change without warning.

Be careful when downshifting. If traction is low, you can lock up the drive wheels for a moment and cause a skid.



Be very cautious when passing, or being passed by other vehicles. The spray from large vehicles reduces your visibility, and the wind buffeting can cause you to lose control.

**CAUTION:** *Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.*





## Towing a Trailer

*On vehicles with manual transmission*  
Your vehicle has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their luggage. You can also use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

### **Break-In Period**

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (625 miles) (see page 258 ).

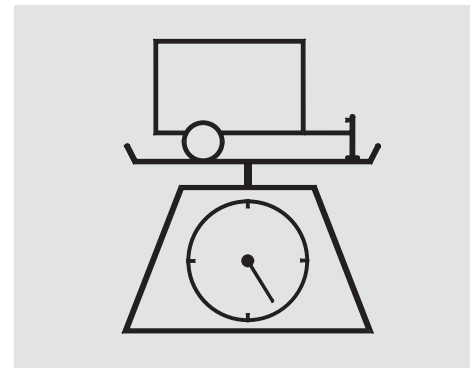


### **⚠ WARNING**

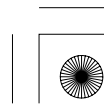
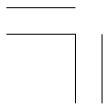
**Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.**

### **Load Limits**

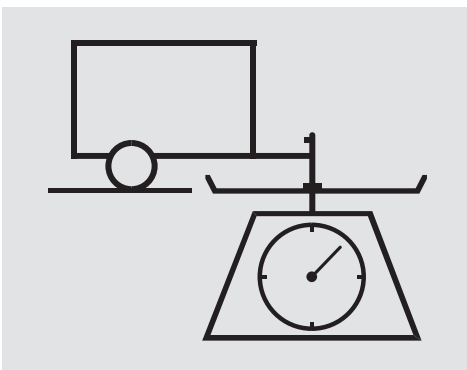


- The total weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes) plus its luggage must not exceed the maximum towing weight. See page 435 .





## Towing a Trailer



- The trailer nose load should never exceed 95 kg (209 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 950 kg (2,094 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- For example, if the trailer and its load weigh 225 kg (500 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 22.5 kg (50 lbs). Adjust trailer's luggage to change the trailer nose load. Start by putting approximately 60 percent of the luggage toward the front and 40 percent toward the rear. With a trailer package of more than 950 kg (2,094 lbs), you may need to adjust the luggage weight toward the rear. Never load the trailer so the back is heavier than the front. This takes weight off your vehicle's rear axle and reduces traction.
- The maximum permissible weight must not exceed the specified limit as shown on page 435.
- The maximum permissible weight is total weight of the vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage and towbar.

- The maximum towing weight must not exceed the specified limit as shown on page 435 .

This weight will be estimated on normal driving below 1,000 meters elevation.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 meters of elevation.

The combined vehicle and trailer weights are the maximum permissible weight and trailer weight with everything in and on the trailer.

*CONTINUED*





## Towing a Trailer

---

- Please consider that the installation of optionals (and trailer nose load when towing a trailer) will reduce the loading capacity.

Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and drivetrain.

### Checking Loads

The best way to confirm that vehicle and trailer weights are within limits is to have them checked at a public scale.

Using a suitable scale or a special trailer nose load gauge, check the total weight, the weight at each axle and the trailer nose load the first time you set up a towing combination (a fully-loaded vehicle and trailer), then recheck the loads whenever the conditions change.

### Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing can require a variety of equipment, depending on the size of your trailer, how it will be used, how much load you are towing, and where you tow.

Discuss your needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and follow the guidelines in this section. Also make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the country's regulations where you are driving.

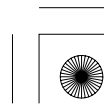
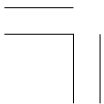
### *Towbars*

Any towbar used on your vehicle must be properly bolted to the underbody.

Refer to page 434 for the towbar mounting points.

### *Safety Chains*

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Make sure the chains are secured to the trailer and towbar, and that they cross under the trailer nose and can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.





## Towing a Trailer

### ***Trailer Brakes***

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

See your trailer dealer or rental agency for more information on installing electric brakes.

### ***Trailer Lights***

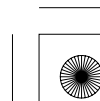
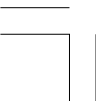
Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the country's regulations where you are driving. Check the requirements for the areas where you plan to tow, and use only equipment designed for your vehicle.

You can get an optional trailer lighting connector for your vehicle from your dealer.

Since lighting and wiring vary by trailer type and brand, you should have a qualified technician install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer. Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

Always consult your dealer before connecting the trailer lights to your vehicle's lighting system.

*CONTINUED*





## Towing a Trailer

### ***Additional Trailer Equipment***

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Check the local laws in the country. Even if there are no legal requirements, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

Ask your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

### **Pre-Tow Checklist**

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

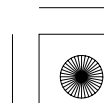
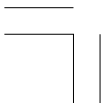
- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the suspension and the cooling system are in good operating condition.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits.
- The towbar, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items in or on the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.

- The lights and brakes on your vehicle and the trailer are working properly.

- Your vehicle tyres and spare (if equipped) are properly inflated, and the trailer tyres and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted to 100 km/h (62 mph).





## Towing a Trailer

### Driving Safely With a Trailer

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving manoeuvres before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines in this section.

### Towing Speeds and Gears

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.

Do not exceed the limited speed when towing a trailer. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling (see “**Driving on Hills**” in the next page for additional gear information).

Either shift up or shift down indicator will come on at the best time to shift to a higher or lower gear for the better fuel economy.

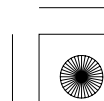
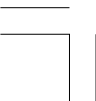
The shift down indicator will not prompt to downshift to first gear. It is up to you to downshift to first gear to increase engine braking. Avoid sudden engine braking.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

### Making Turns and Braking

Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

CONTINUED





## Towing a Trailer

---

### ***Driving on Hills***

When climbing hills, closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

When driving down hills, reduce your speed and always apply engine braking by shifting down. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, when going down a steep hill, use the second gear to provide greater engine braking.

Do not “ride” the brakes, and remember, it will take longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

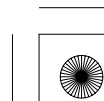
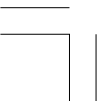
Driving on an uphill road of more than 12% slope is not recommended for your vehicle.

We recommend that you tow a trailer on the roads recommended by the trailer association.

Make sure to set the parking brake when starting off on an incline.

### ***Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting***

Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause the trailer to sway. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed, and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.





## Towing a Trailer

### ***Backing Up***

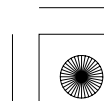
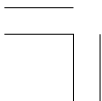
Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel, then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left, and turn the wheel right to move the trailer to the right.

### ***Parking***

Follow all normal precautions when parking, including firmly setting the parking brake and putting the transmission in 1st or reverse. Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

### **Towing a Trailer**

*On vehicles with automatic transmission*  
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer.

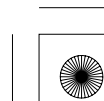
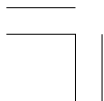




10/10/25 19:12:47 32TF0630\_309



**304**





## Maintenance

Regularly maintaining your vehicle is the best way to protect your investment. You will be rewarded with safer, more economical, trouble-free driving. This section lists items that need to be checked regularly and explains how to check them. It also details some simple maintenance tasks you can do yourself. The service reminder symbols and indications/maintenance schedules show you when these things need to be done.

Maintenance Safety .....	306
Service Reminder System (For applicable countries) .....	307
Maintenance Schedule (On vehicles without service reminder system) .....	318
Maintenance Schedule (On vehicles without Service Book) .....	319
Maintenance Record .....	323
Owner's Maintenance Checks .....	325
Fluid Locations .....	326
Adding Engine Oil .....	328
Engine Coolant .....	330
Windscreen Washers .....	332
Transmission Fluid .....	333
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) .....	333
Manual Transmission .....	335
Brake and Clutch Fluid .....	335
Air Cleaner Element .....	337
Fuel Filter .....	338
Lights .....	339
Air Conditioning System .....	352
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	353
Wiper Blades .....	357

Tyres .....	361
Checking the Battery .....	368
Replacing the Battery .....	370
Vehicle Storage .....	372





## Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified technician.

### Important Safety Precautions

To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.**

### Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.**

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.






## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

One of the most convenient and important features of the multi-information display on your vehicle is the service reminder system.

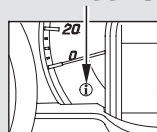
Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining distance or time before the next service to be performed.

The multi-information display shows you that the service timing is near, coming or passed. At each service timing, the warning symbol or symbol with a message (if selected) comes on amber with the system message indicator (  ).

You can also see the service reminder information on the multi-information display as the remaining distance or time (counted by days). This helps to keep you aware of the timing for maintenance to be

### Service Reminder Flow on the Multi-Information Display

#### SYSTEM MESSAGE INDICATOR



#### Warning Symbols (Amber)

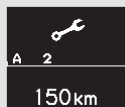
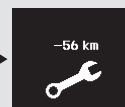
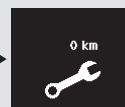
##### Near Service Timing



##### Service Timing



##### Service Timing Over/Passed



↓ : Press the SEL/RESET button.

Service Reminder Information

Distance (km) is shown.

performed.

The system also displays the code(s) for scheduled service items.

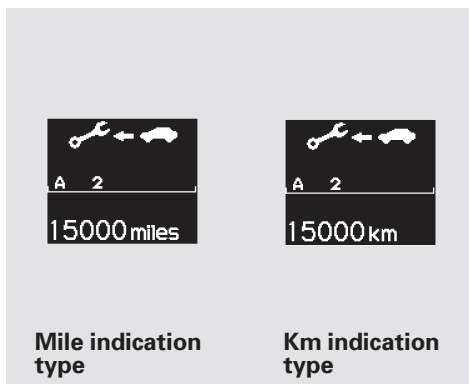
The above illustration shows the service reminder display flow.

CONTINUED






## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)



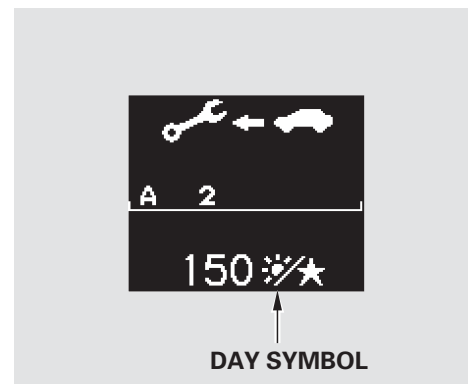
The remaining distance is shown in miles or kilometers, depending on types.

The remaining distance will be changed in increments of 50 kilometers (miles) until the  warning symbol comes on amber. After this warning symbol is shown on the multi-information display, the remaining distance will be counted down per 10 kilometers (miles).

If the service timing is passed, the warning symbol with the negative distance will be displayed. The passed distance will be counted down per kilometer (mile).

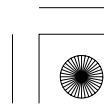
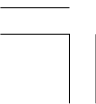
### NOTE:

The displayed remaining distance may not correspond to the actual driving distance. The remaining distance is estimated by your vehicle's onboard computer depending on the driving conditions.



The remaining days are shown with the symbol “  .”

If the remaining days are more than 30 days, the display will be changed in increments of 10 days. When the remaining days are under 30 days, the display will be counted down per day.





## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

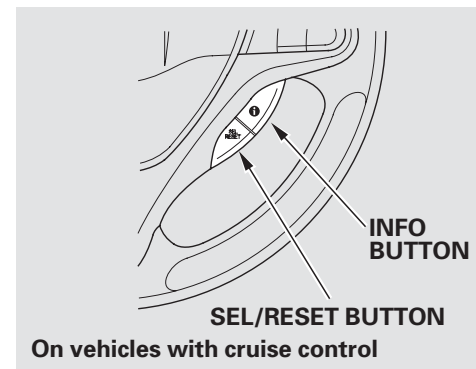
The system switches the display between the remaining distance and the remaining days, depending on your driving conditions. If you do not drive frequently, generally the display shows the remaining time. The system monitors the driving conditions, and records the elapsed time and distance from the last maintenance. Based on this data, the system assumes the future driving conditions and selects the appropriate service reminder display.

The service reminder system is available in some countries. To confirm the countries where this system is available, refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle, or ask your dealer.

In some countries, this service reminder system is not available. In these countries, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

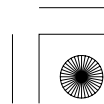
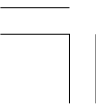
If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the applied countries, consult your dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country. Please ask your dealer to get the service schedules on your vehicle.

### Service Reminder Information



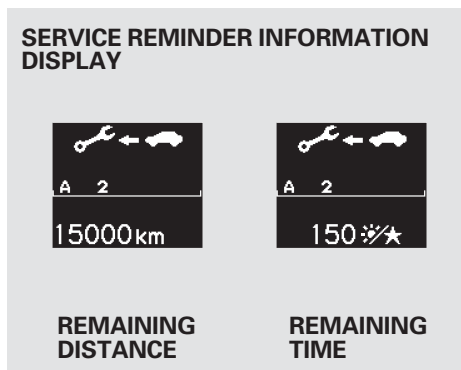
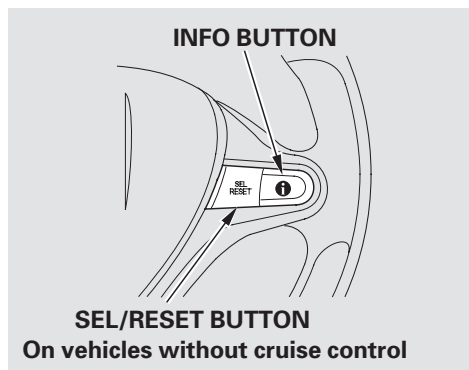
To see the service reminder information displayed on the multi-information display, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the service reminder information appears (see page 96 ).

*CONTINUED*






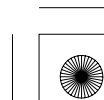
## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)



### *Service Items*

All the service items displayed on the multi-information display are in code (A, B, 2 through 9). For an explanation of the service reminder codes, refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

The remaining distance or time until the next service timing is shown along with the symbol “.” The system also displays a service item code to indicate the service item(s) required at the next maintenance service. If there are several service items to be performed, only the code of the shortest interval will be displayed.






## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

### *Required Service Timing Near*



When any of the service items is required in less than 30 days or the total estimated driving distance corresponding to the terms of about 30 days, the multi-information display interrupts the current display and shows the above symbol or the symbol with a “SERVICE DUE SOON” message in amber. The system message indicator (  ) also comes on as a reminder.

This display reminds you that the time is coming soon to take your vehicle in for the required service.

### SERVICE REMINDER INFORMATION DISPLAY



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the service reminder information. The service reminder information display shows all codes indicating the service items to be performed at the next service.

When you switch the display, the warning symbol/message in amber will be turned off, but you will see the symbol/message each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

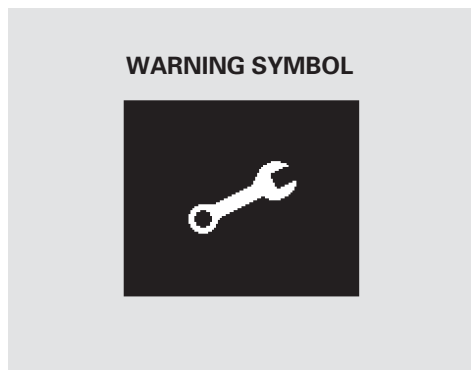
*CONTINUED*






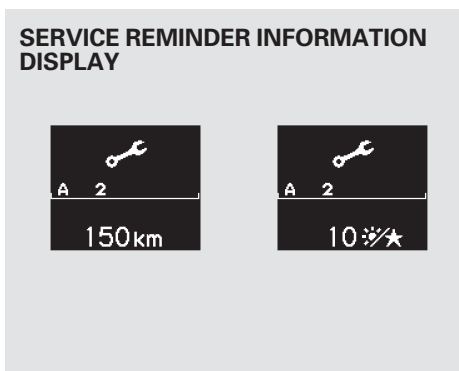
## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

### *Service Timing*



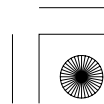
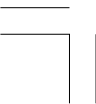
When any of the service items is required in less than 10 days or total estimated driving distance corresponding to the terms of about 10 days, the multi-information display interrupts the current display and shows the above symbol or the symbol with a “SERVICE DUE NOW” message in amber. The system message indicator (  ) also comes on as a reminder.

When you see this symbol or the symbol with a message, have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the service reminder information. The service reminder information display shows all codes indicating the service items to be performed at the next service.

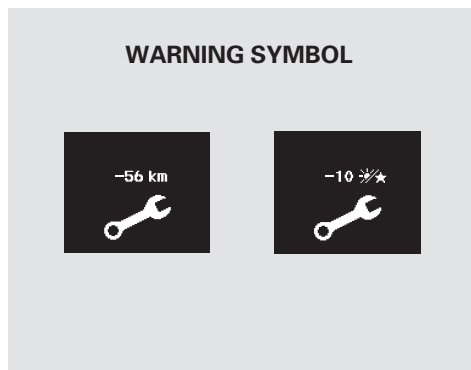
When you switch the display, the warning symbol/message in amber will be turned off, but you will see the symbol/message each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.





## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

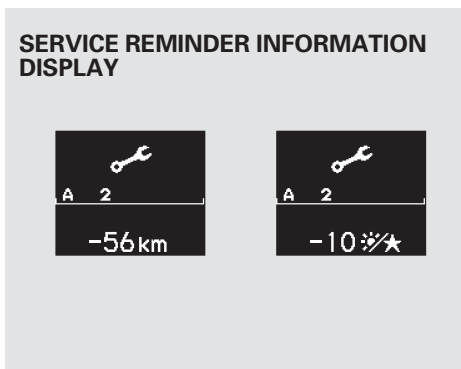
### Service Timing Over/Passed



When the remaining distance or time is 0, the multi-information display shows 0.

If the indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time or distance reaches 0, the multi-information display interrupts the current display and shows the above symbol or the symbol with a “SERVICE OVER DUE” message in amber, and the total negative

distance or time. The system message indicator ( ⓘ ) also comes on as a reminder.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the service reminder information. The service reminder information display shows the negative distance or time, and all codes for the service items to be performed.

The warning symbol/message in amber is not turned off. You can select another display by pressing either the INFO button or the SEL/RESET button. If you want to see the symbol/message again, press the INFO button repeatedly. The system message indicator ( ⓘ ) also remains on as a reminder.

CONTINUED





## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

The warning symbol/message in amber, and the negative distance or time will come on every time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

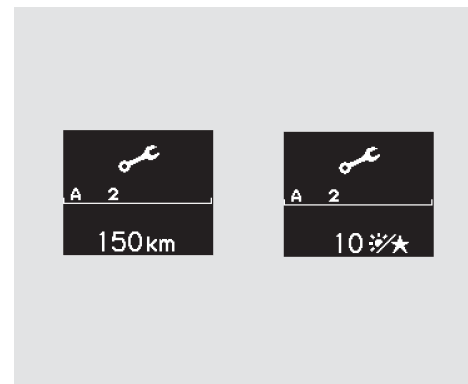
Negative distance or time means your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the service reminder.

### Resetting the Service Reminder

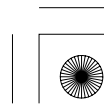
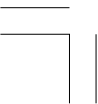
The required service should be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of Honda by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorized dealer meets all of these requirements.

After completing the required maintenance service, your dealer will reset the display. When you press and release the SEL/RESET button repeatedly to select the service reminder information display, you will see the next required service item and the remaining distance or time on the display.

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the service reminder as follows:



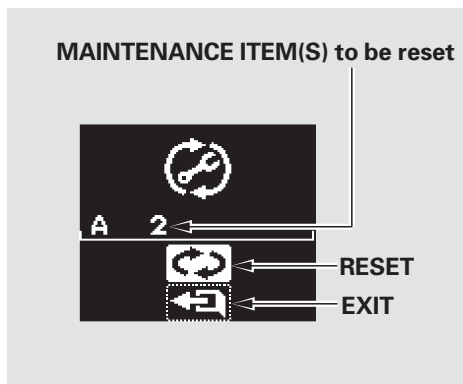
1. Park the vehicle. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Do not try to drive your vehicle. If the vehicle speed reaches over 2 km/h (1 mph), this mode is cancelled.





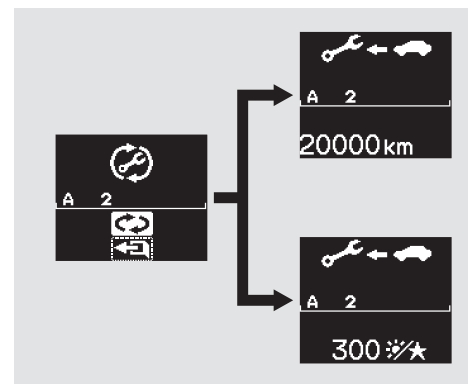
## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)


2. If the service reminder information is not displayed, press and release the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the service reminder information display.



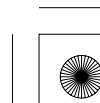
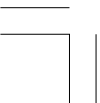
3. Press and hold the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 10 seconds. The service reminder reset mode will be shown on the multi-information display.

Only the displayed items will be reset if you go to the next step.



4. Select “” (reset) by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button to reset the service reminder. The displayed service item code(s) will disappear, and the displayed distance or time will also reset.

CONTINUED






## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

---

You will see the next main required service item and the remaining distance or time on the multi-information display.

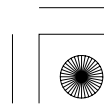
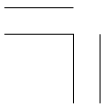
If you want to exit the service reminder reset mode without changing anything, select “  ” (exit), then press the SEL/RESET button.

### Important Service Precautions

If you have the required service done but do not reset the display, or reset the display without doing the service, the system will not show the correct service intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when service is needed.

Your authorized Honda dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service.

However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Service may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Make sure to have the service facility or person reset the display as previously described. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out your maintenance service records. Check your Service Book for more information.

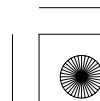
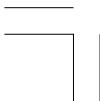




## Service Reminder System (For applicable countries)

We recommend using genuine Honda parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance service done. These are manufactured to the same high quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the time and distance calculation of the service reminder system is suspended. This will cause the service timing to be incorrect. In this case, the calculation should be updated by your dealer.





## Maintenance Schedule (On vehicles without service reminder system)

---

If the service reminder system is not available in your vehicle, follow the maintenance schedules in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

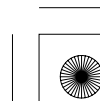
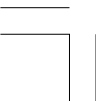
On vehicles without Service Book, follow the maintenance schedules in this owner's manual (see page 319 ).

The required maintenance schedule specifies all maintenance required to keep your vehicle in peak operating condition. Maintenance work should be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of Honda by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorized dealer meets all of these requirements.

The maintenance schedule assumes you will use your vehicle as normal transportation for passengers and their possessions. You should also follow these recommendations:

- Avoid exceeding your vehicle's load limit. This puts excess stress on the engine, brakes, and many other vehicle parts.
- Operate your vehicle on reasonable roads within the legal speed limit.
- Drive your vehicle regularly over a distance of several kilometers (miles).
- Always use the recommended petrol only (see page 258 ).

We recommend the use of genuine Honda parts and fluids or their equivalent whenever you have maintenance done. These are the same high-quality items that went into your vehicle when it was new, so you can be sure they fit and perform flawlessly.





## Maintenance Schedule (On vehicles without Service Book)

Service at the indicated distance or time — whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe* <sup>2</sup>	Every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
	Severe* <sup>2</sup>	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km (18,750 miles)									
Inspect valve clearance		Every 40,000 km (25,000 miles)									
Replace fuel filter* <sup>3</sup>					●				●		
Replace spark plugs Iridium type		Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)									
Inspect drive belt		●			●		●		●		●
Inspect idle speed							●				
Replace engine coolant		200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years									

\* 1 : Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet that came with your vehicle.

\* 2 : Refer to page 322 for replacement information under severe conditions.

\* 3 : Refer to page 338 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

This maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the trouble-free operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

CONTINUED





## Maintenance Schedule (On vehicles without Service Book)

Service at the indicated distance or time — whichever comes first.	km x 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000		12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid*	M/T	Normal	Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 6 years									
		Severe			●			●			●	
	CVT		●		●		●		●		●	
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Check parking brake adjustment			●	●		●		●		●		●
Replace dust and pollen filter			●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check expiry date for TRK bottle (if equipped)			●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Rotate tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles)									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots			Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months									
Suspension components												
Driveshaft boots												
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)			●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
All fluid levels and condition of fluid			●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Exhaust system												
Fuel lines and connections												

\* : Refer to page 322 for replacement information under severe conditions.





## Maintenance Schedule (Russia)

Service at the indicated distance or time — whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144
Replace engine oil and oil filter	Normal	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 6 months											
Replace air cleaner element			●		●		●		●		●		●
Inspect valve clearance				●			●			●			●
Replace fuel filter* <sup>2</sup>							●						●
Replace spark plugs	Iridium	Every 120,000 km											
Inspect drive belt		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Inspect idle speed									●				
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years											
Replace transmission fluid	M/T				●				●				●
	CVT			●			●			●			●
Inspect front and rear brakes		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years											
Check parking brake adjustment		●	●		●		●		●		●		●
Replace dust and pollen filter* <sup>1</sup>			●		●		●		●		●		●
Check lights alignment		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard operation)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check expiry date for TRK bottle (if equipped)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Inspect vehicle corrosion		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect the following items:													
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots													
Suspension components													
Driveshaft boots													
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
All fluid levels and condition of fluids													
Exhaust system													
Fuel lines and connections													
Tyre condition													

\*1 : When you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air, under dusty conditions or the airflow from the climate control system becomes less than usual. Replace the filter every 15,000 km or 1 year.

\*2 : Refer to page 322 for replacement information under driving conditions.

This maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the trouble-free operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.





## Maintenance Schedule (On vehicles without Service Book)

### NOTE:

If you drive your vehicle under one or more of the following severe conditions, the items described below must be serviced according to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

### Severe driving conditions:

A: Driving less than 8 km (5 miles) per trip, or in freezing temperatures driving less than 16 km (10 miles) per trip.

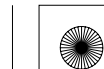
B: Driving in extremely hot (over 35°C) conditions.

C: Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.

D: Towing trailer, driving with a loaded roof rack, or driving in mountainous conditions.

E: Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D, E
<i>Except Russia</i> Manual transmission fluid	B, D





## Maintenance Record (On vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

<b>20,000 km</b> 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>40,000 km</b> 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>60,000 km</b> 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>80,000 km</b> 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>100,000 km</b> 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date

<b>120,000 km</b> 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>140,000 km</b> 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>160,000 km</b> 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>180,000 km</b> 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date
<b>200,000 km</b> 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month Date



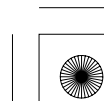
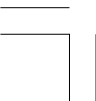


## Maintenance Record (Russia)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

<b>15,000 km</b> (or 12 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>30,000 km</b> (or 24 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>45,000 km</b> (or 36 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>60,000 km</b> (or 48 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>75,000 km</b> (or 60 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>90,000 km</b> (or 72 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date

<b>105,000 km</b> (or 84 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>120,000 km</b> (or 96 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>135,000 km</b> (or 108 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>150,000 km</b> (or 120 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>165,000 km</b> (or 132 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date
<b>180,000 km</b> (or 144 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month
		Date





## Owner's Maintenance Checks

You should check the following items at the use or specified intervals.

- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 261.
- Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 262.
- Windscreen washer fluid — Check the level in the reservoir monthly. If weather conditions cause you to use the washers frequently, check the reservoir each time you stop for fuel. See page 332.
- Windscreen wipers — Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wipers do not wipe the windscreen securely, check them for wear, cracks, and other damage.

- Automatic transmission (CVT) — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 333.
- Brakes and clutch — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 335.
- Brake pedal — Check the brake pedal for smooth operation.
- Parking brake — Check the parking brake lever for smooth operation.
- Tyres — Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 361.
- Battery — Check its condition and the terminals for corrosion monthly. See page 368.

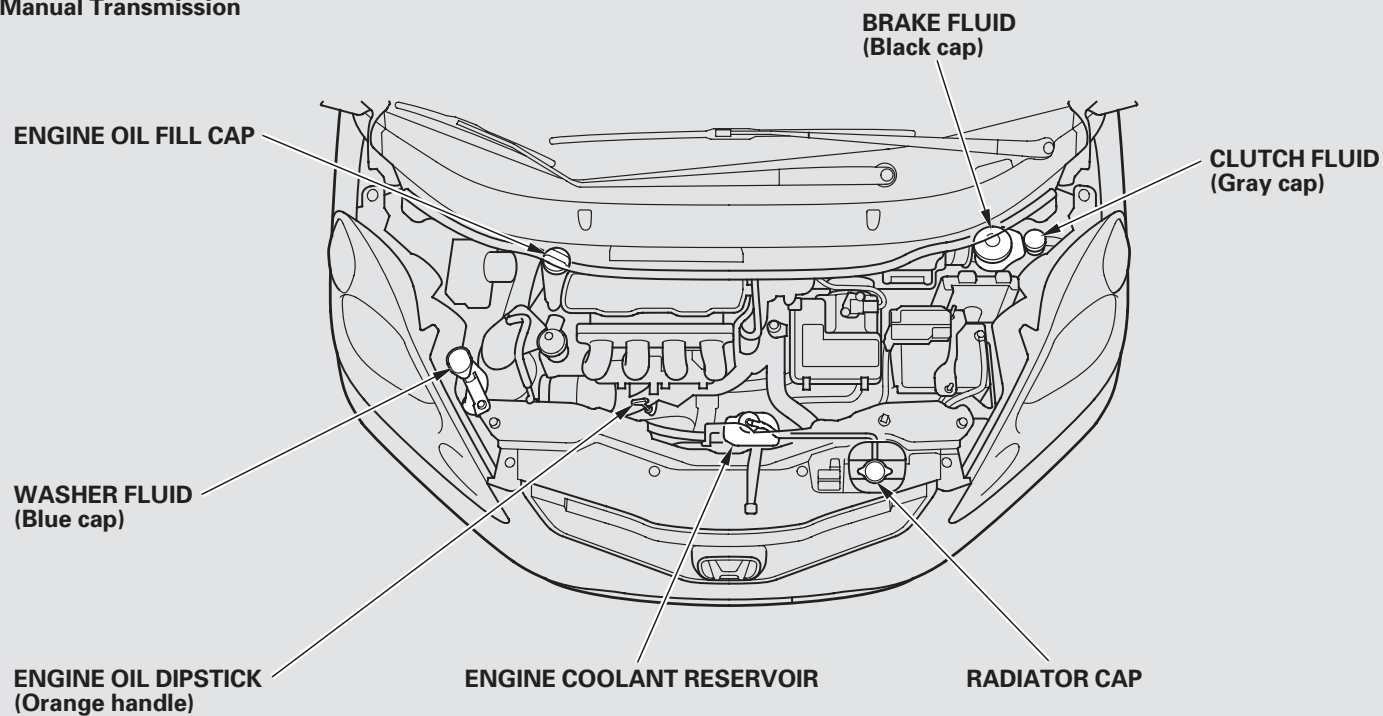
- Air conditioning system (on some types) — Check its operation weekly. See page 352.
- Windscreen demister — Operate the heater and air conditioning and check the demister vents monthly.
- Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, position lights, tail-lights, high-mount brake light, turn signals, and licence plate lights monthly. See page 339.
- Doors — Check the tailgate and all doors including the rear doors for smooth opening/closing and secure locking.
- Horn — Check the horn operation.



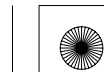


## Fluid Locations

Manual Transmission



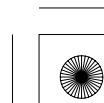
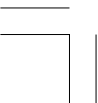
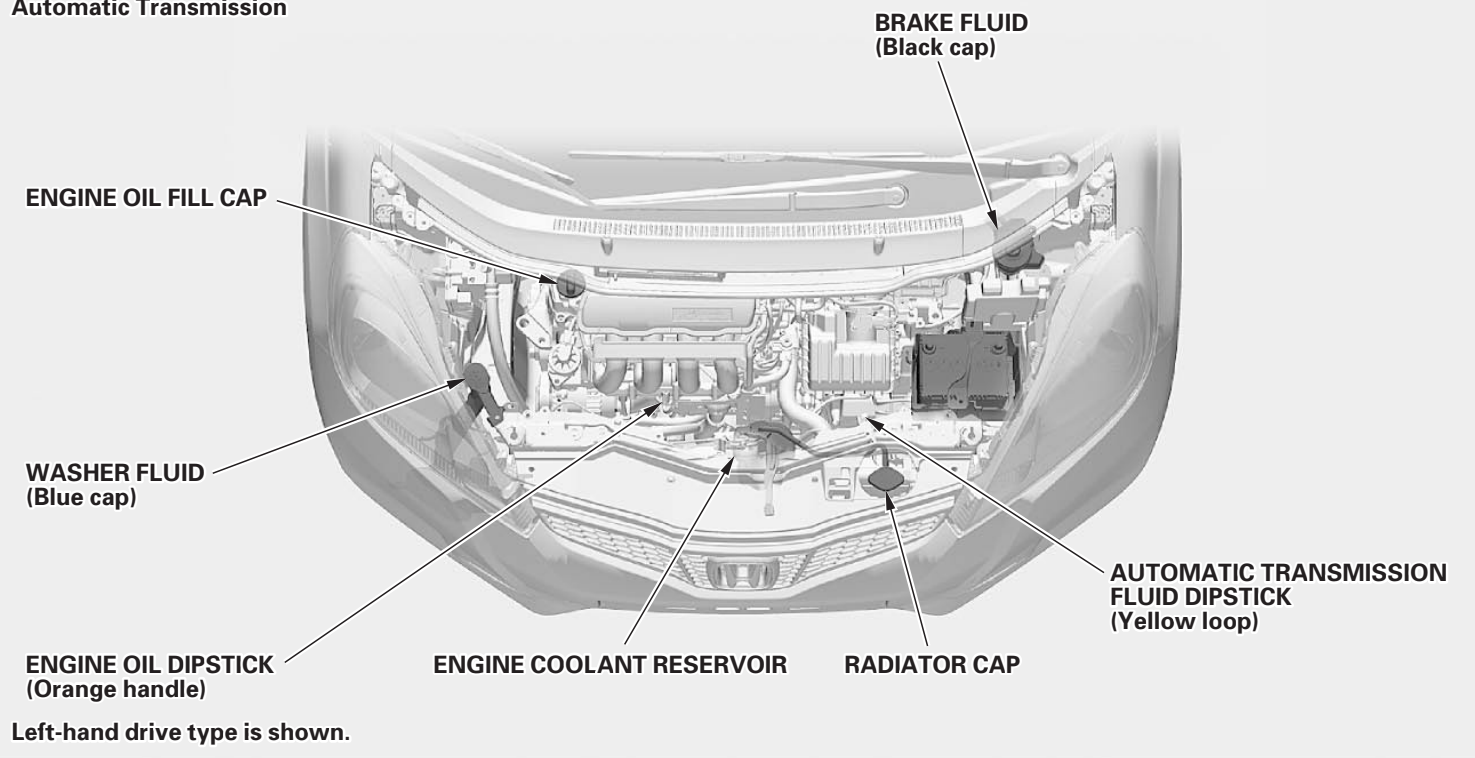
1.2 L engine model with left-hand drive is shown.





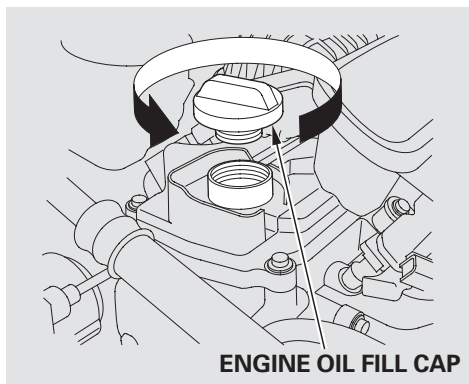
## Fluid Locations

### Automatic Transmission





## Adding Engine Oil



Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.

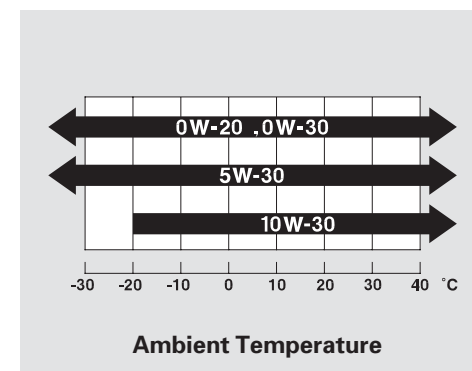
Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Let the engine warm up and turn off the engine, let it sit for approximately 3 minutes, then check the oil level on the engine oil dipstick. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

### Recommended Engine Oil *On vehicles with service reminder system*

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil. It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil, "ACEA A3/B3," or "ACEA A5/B5" in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

This oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.

You can select the proper SAE/ACEA viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:



0W-20 oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.





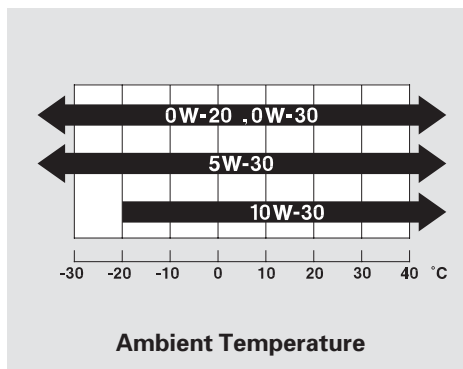
## Adding Engine Oil

### ***On vehicles without service reminder system***

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil. It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

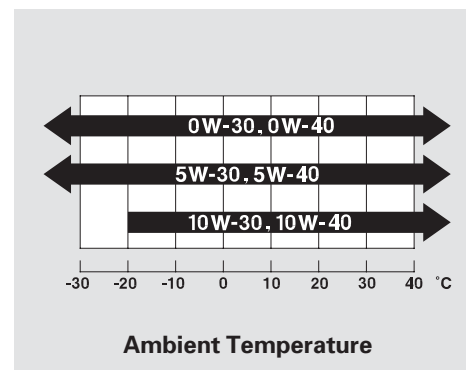
On European models without service reminder system, "ACEA A1/B1," "ACEA A3/B3," or "ACEA A5/B5" can also be used.

You can select the proper SAE/ACEA viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:

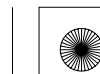


0W-20 oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.

*Except for European models*  
You can select the proper SAE viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:



0W-30 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.





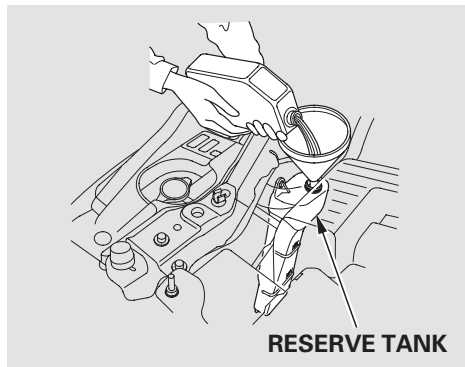
## Adding Engine Oil, Engine Coolant

Always use an API service SL or higher grade fuel-efficient oil. This oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.

### Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect your engine's or transmission's performance and durability.

### Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Always use genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent distilled water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

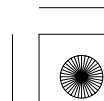
The cooling system contains many aluminium components that can corrode if an improper antifreeze is used. Some antifreeze, even though labelled as safe for aluminium parts, may not provide adequate protection.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

### **⚠ WARNING**

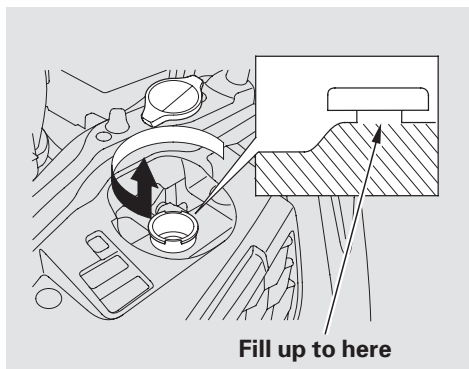
**Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.**

**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**





## Engine Coolant

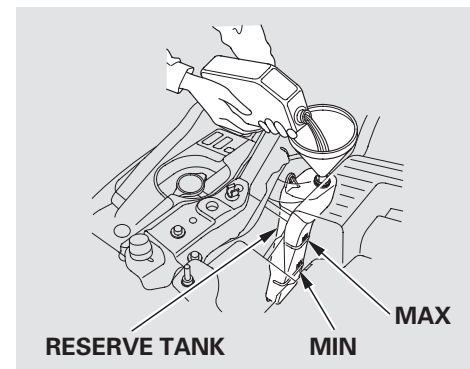


1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap anticlockwise, without pressing down.

3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning anticlockwise.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

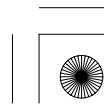
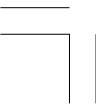
Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.



6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

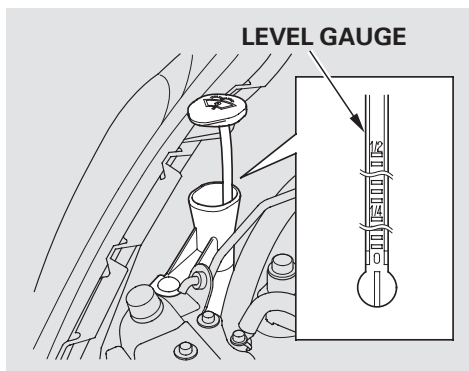
Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.





## Windscreen Washers

Check the fluid level in the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.



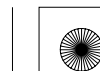
Check the fluid level by removing the cap and looking at the level gauge.

Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windscreen washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windscreen wiper blades with windscreen washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition them.

### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially-available windscreen washer fluid.



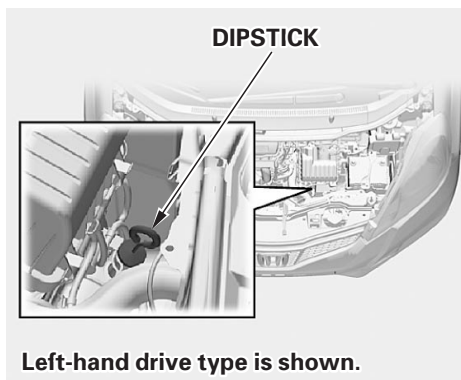


## Transmission Fluid

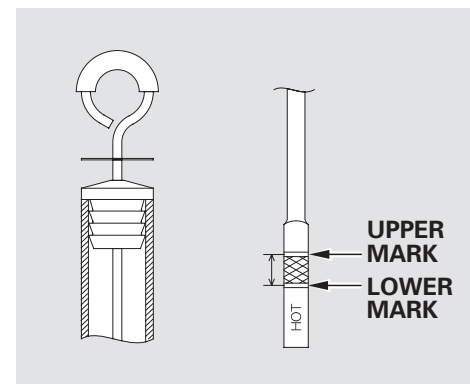
### Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine, let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds (but no longer than 90 seconds) before doing step 2.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.
3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.



4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. There is a HOT side and a COLD side on the dipstick. The fluid level should be between the upper and lower marks on the HOT side.

*CONTINUED*





## Transmission Fluid

---

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled fluid could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Honda CVTF (continuously variable transmission fluid) or HMMF (Honda Multi Matic fluid) in some countries.

### NOTICE

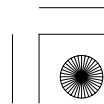
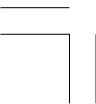
Use only Honda CVTF (continuously variable transmission fluid). Do not mix with other transmission fluids. Using transmission fluid other than Honda CVTF (continuously variable transmission fluid) may cause deterioration in transmission operation and durability, and could result in damage to the transmission. Damage resulting from the use of transmission fluid other than Honda CVTF (continuously variable transmission fluid) is not covered by the Honda new vehicle warranty.

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the service reminder indication. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without the Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.





## Transmission Fluid, Brake and Clutch Fluid

### Manual Transmission

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the service reminder indication. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without the Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

Always use genuine Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF). If it is not available, you may use an API service SJ or higher grade motor oil with a viscosity of SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 as a temporary replacement. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives, and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.

### Brake and Clutch Fluid

Check the fluid level in the reservoirs monthly. There are up to two reservoirs, depending on the model. They are:

- Brake fluid reservoir (all models)
- Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission only)

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” message on the multi-information display when the brake fluid level is low.

Replace the brake fluid according to the service reminder indication. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without the Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

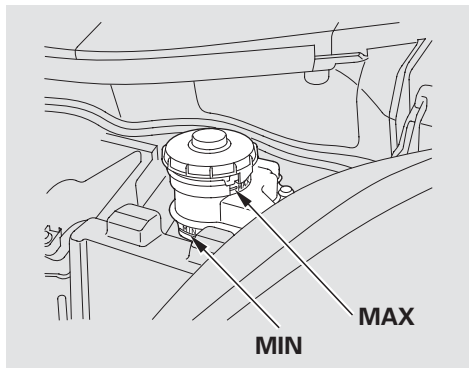
Always use genuine Honda Brake Fluid or an equivalent from a sealed container that is marked DOT3 or DOT4 only. Brake fluid marked DOT5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system.





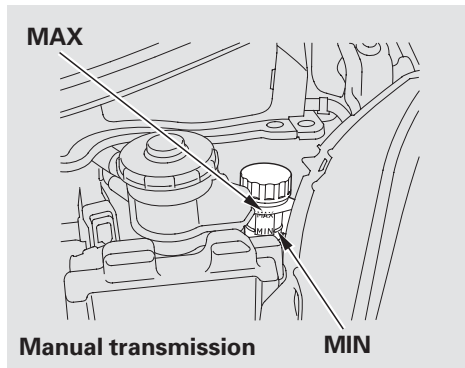
## Brake and Clutch Fluid

### Brake System



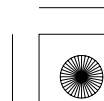
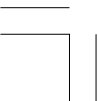
The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

### Clutch System



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

A low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.



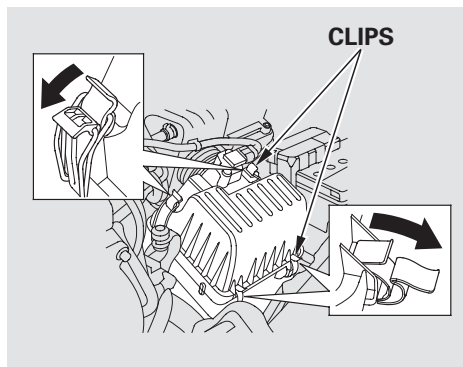


## Air Cleaner Element

The air cleaner element should be replaced according to the service reminder indication. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without the Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

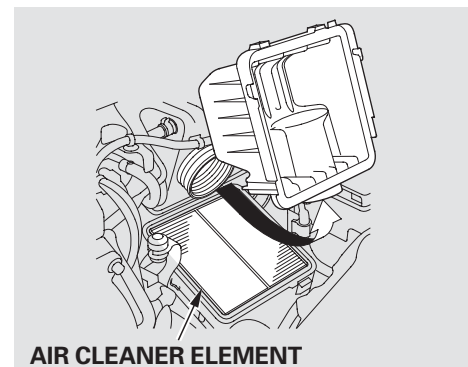
### Replacement



The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing in the engine compartment.

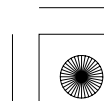
To replace it:

1. Unsnap the four hold-down clips and remove the air cleaner housing cover.



2. Remove the old air cleaner element.
3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.

*CONTINUED*





## Air Cleaner Element, Fuel Filter

---

4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.
5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover, and snap the four hold-down clips back into place. Make sure they are securely latched.

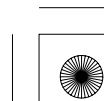
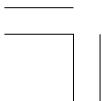
### Fuel Filter

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without the Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or 2 years (except vehicles with Service Book)/ every 45,000 km, or 3 years (Russia model), if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated. In a high dust environment, the fuel filter may become clogged sooner.

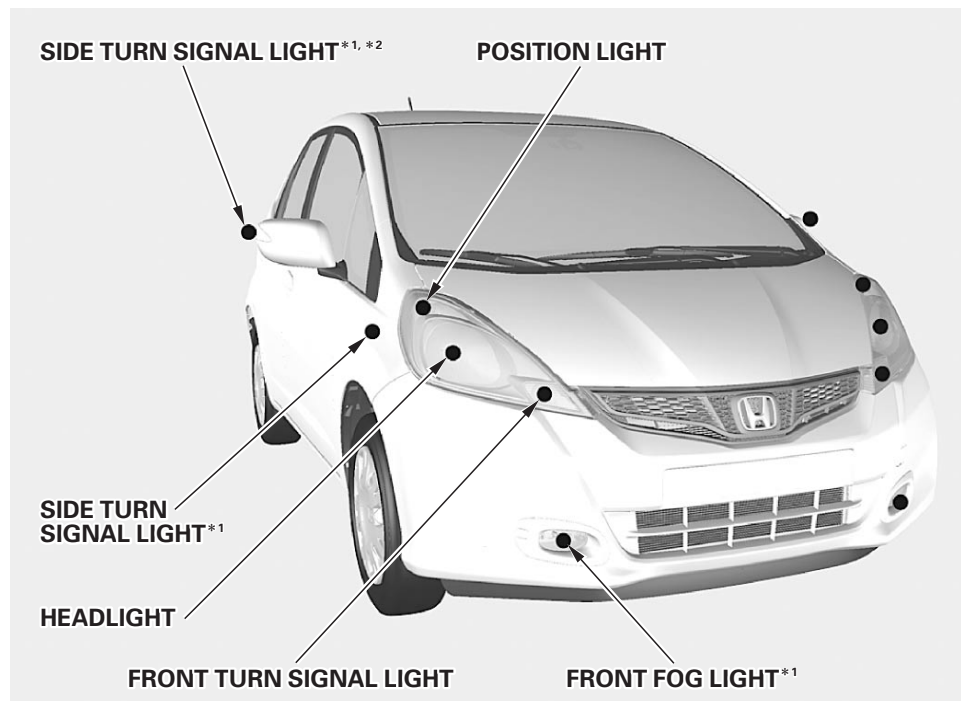
Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Since the fuel system is under pressure, fuel can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.





## Lights

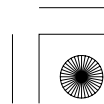
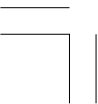
Check the operation of your vehicle's exterior lights at least once a month. A burned out bulb can make the condition of your vehicle unsafe reducing your vehicle's visibility and the ability to signal your intentions to other drivers.



\*1: If equipped

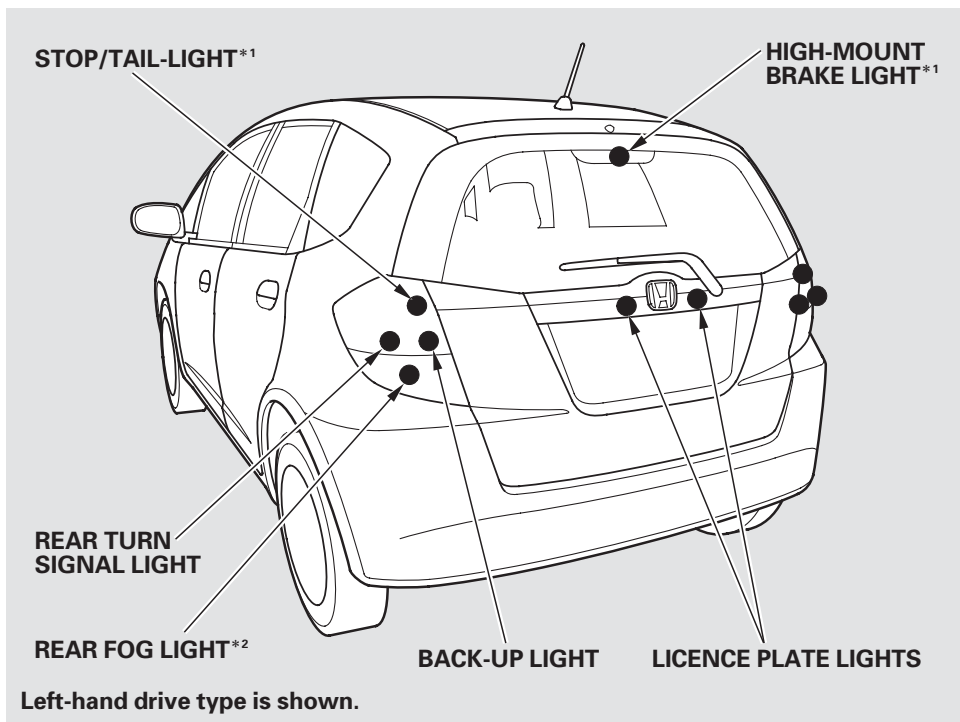
\*2: Replacement of these bulbs should be done by your dealer.

*CONTINUED*





## Lights



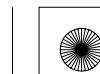
\*1 : Replacement of these bulbs should be done by your dealer.

\*2 : Rear fog light is installed on the driver's side only.

Check the following:

- Headlights (low and high beam)
- Position lights
- Turn signals
- Front fog lights (for some types)
- Side turn signals
- Stop/Tail-lights
- Back-up lights
- Rear fog light
- Hazard light function
- Licence plate lights
- High-mount brake light

If you find any bulbs are burned out, replace them as soon as possible. Refer to the chart on page 437 to determine what type of replacement bulb is needed.





## Lights

### Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustments should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

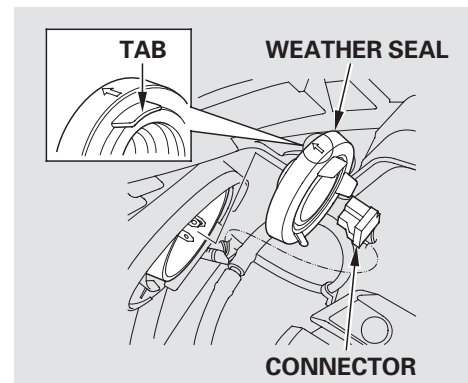
The vertical angle of the headlights can be adjusted. For more information, see page 134 .

### Replacing a Headlight Bulb

Your vehicle has halogen headlight bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

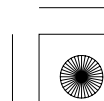
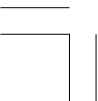
#### NOTICE

Halogen headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.



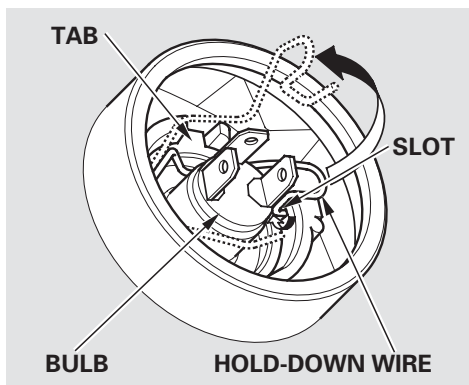
1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pulling the connector straight back.
3. Remove the rubber weather seal by pulling on the tab.

*CONTINUED*

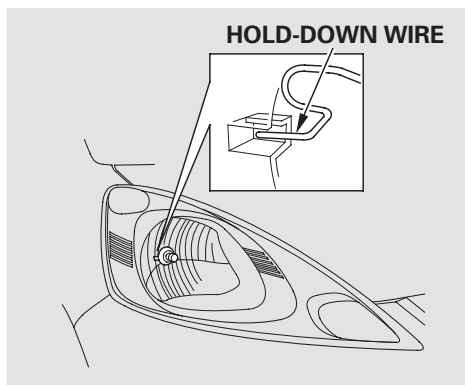




## Lights

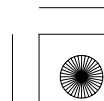


4. Unclip the end of the hold-down wire from its slot. Pivot the wire out of the way, then remove the bulb.



5. Install the new bulb into the hole, making sure the tabs are in their slots. Pivot the hold-down wire back in place, and clip the end into the slot.
6. Make sure that the hold-down wire is installed properly and securely. You can check its installation from the inspection window on the headlight assembly.

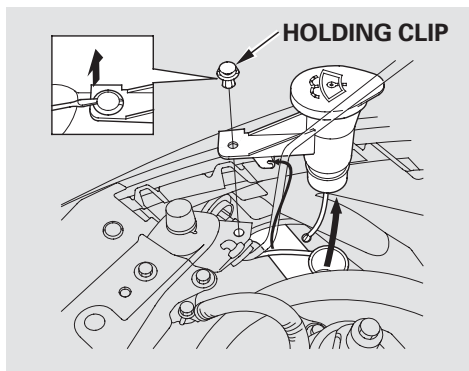
7. Install the rubber weather seal over the back of the headlight assembly. Make sure it is right side up.
8. Push the electrical connector onto the new bulb. Make sure it is connected securely. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.





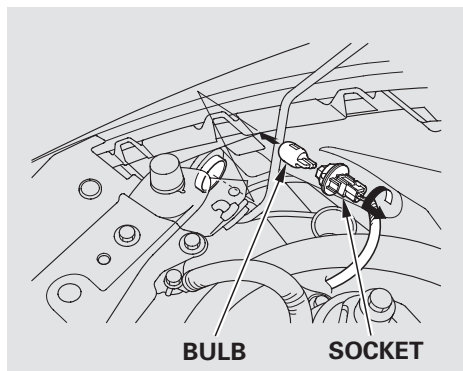
## Lights

### Replacing a Front Turn Signal Light Bulb



1. Open the bonnet.

The front turn signal light is next to the headlight bulb. When replacing the right bulb, first remove the windscreen washer reservoir. Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the reservoir.



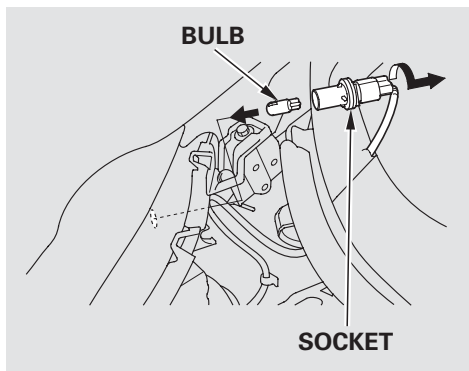
2. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
6. (Right side)  
Put the windscreen washer reservoir back in place. Install the holding clip. Lock it in place by pushing on the centre.



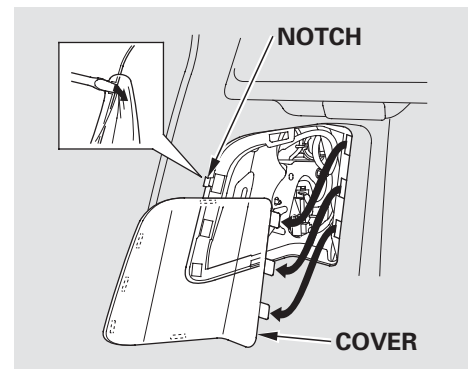
## Lights

### Replacing a Front Position Light Bulb



1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

### Replacing Rear Bulbs

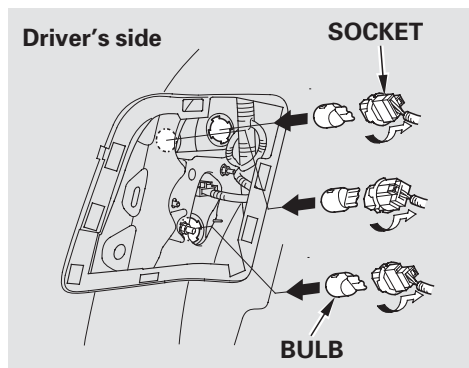


1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover to prevent scratches. Remove it by carefully prying in the notch on its middle edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.
2. Determine which of the three bulbs is burned out: back-up light, turn signal light or rear fog light (on the driver's side only).





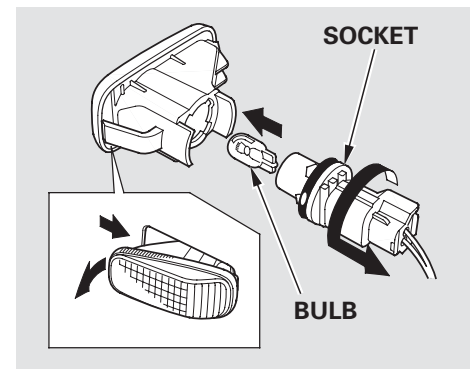
## Lights



3. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
4. Remove the burned out bulb by pulling it straight out of its socket.

5. Install the new bulb into the socket.
6. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
7. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly by turning it clockwise until it locks.
8. Reinstall the light assembly cover.

### Replacing a Side Turn Signal Bulb (For some types)



1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly toward the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket one-quarter turn anticlockwise to remove it from the lens.

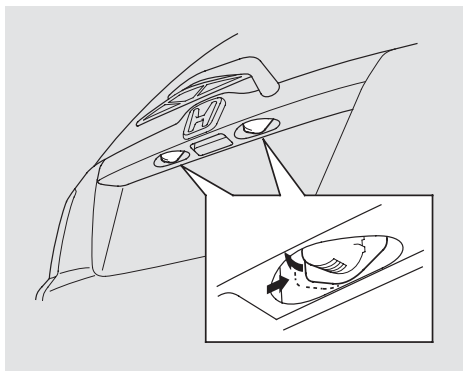
*CONTINUED*



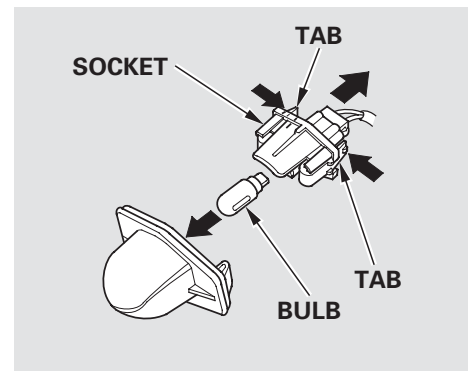
## Lights

3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Put the socket back into its hole in the lens and turn it clockwise until it locks.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
6. Put the side turn signal assembly back into the body, rear first. Push on the front edge until it snaps into place.

### Replacing a Rear Licence Plate Light Bulb



1. Push the rear licence light assembly toward the right and pull it out of the tailgate.



2. Remove the licence light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.





## Lights

4. Turn on the position lights and check that the new bulb is working.
5. Put the licence light assembly back into the tailgate, the right edge first. Push the assembly to the left until it stops.

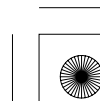
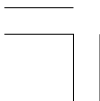
### Replacing a Front Fog Light Bulb (For some types)

Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

### NOTICE

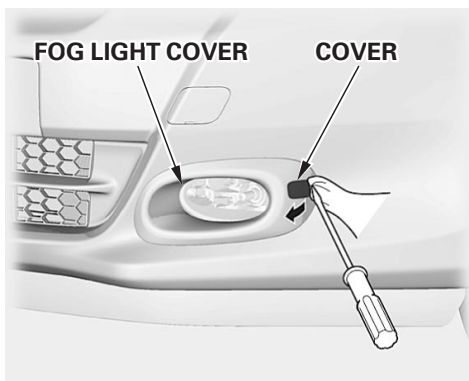
Halogen light bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

*CONTINUED*

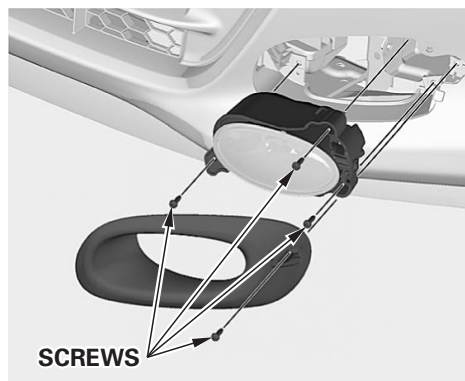




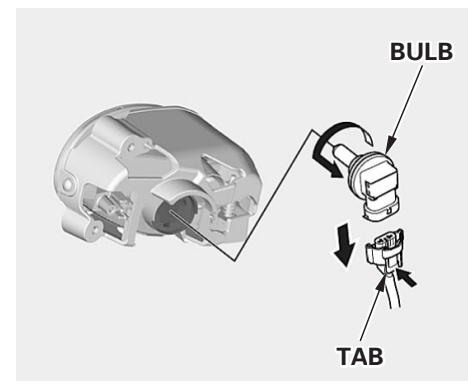
## Lights



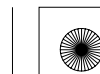
1. Put a cloth on the edge of the cover to prevent scratches. Remove the cover from the front bumper by using a flat-tip screwdriver or some other flat tool.
2. To remove a front fog light cover, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw. Pull the screw side of the fog light cover, then carefully pull it out of the bumper.



3. To remove a front fog light assembly, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screws, then carefully pull it out of the bumper.



4. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
5. Remove the bulb by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.





## Lights

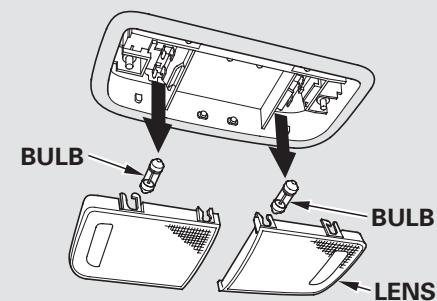
6. Install the new bulb into the hole and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.
8. Turn on the front fog lights to test the new bulb.
9. Reinstall the fog light assembly into the bumper and tighten the screws securely.
10. Reinstall the fog light cover into the bumper while setting the tab in the bracket. Tighten the screw securely.

### Replacing Bulbs in the Interior Lights

The ceiling lights and spotlights (if equipped) come apart the same way.

1. Put a cloth on the edge of the lens to prevent scratches, then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of it with a fingernail file or a small flat-tip screwdriver. Do not pry on the edge of the housing around the lens.

### SPOTLIGHTS



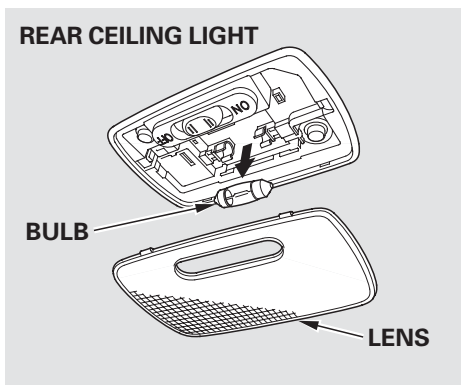
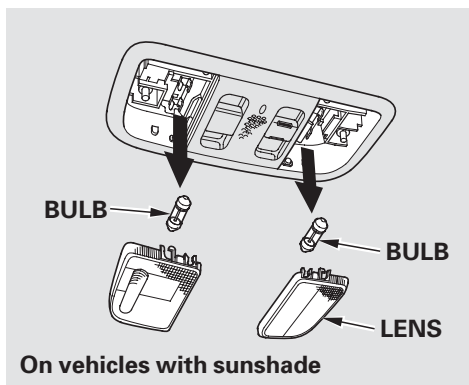
Spotlights:  
Pry on the inner edge of both spotlights.

*CONTINUED*



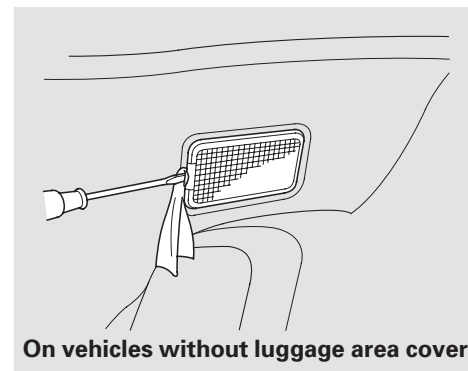


## Lights



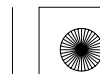
- Ceiling light:  
Pry on the front edge of the lens near both sides.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its metal tabs.
  3. Push the new bulb into the metal tabs. Snap the lens back in place.

## Replacing the Luggage Area Light Bulb



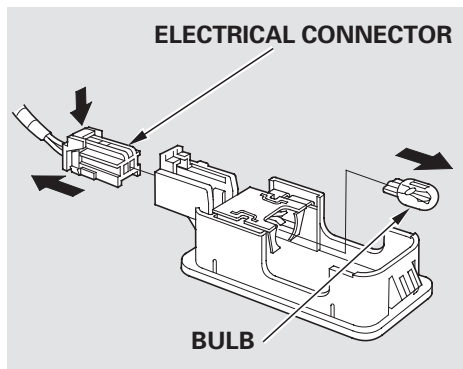
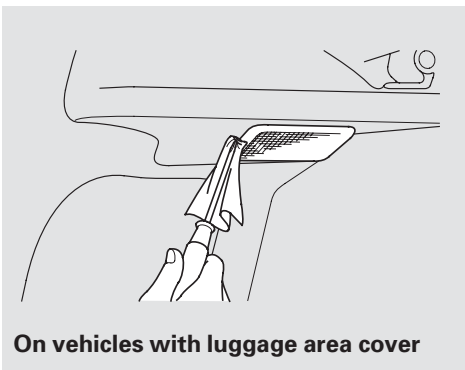
1. Open the tailgate.

Put a cloth on the rear edge of the light assembly to prevent scratches. Remove the light assembly by using a small flat-tip screwdriver to pry carefully on the rear edge of the assembly.

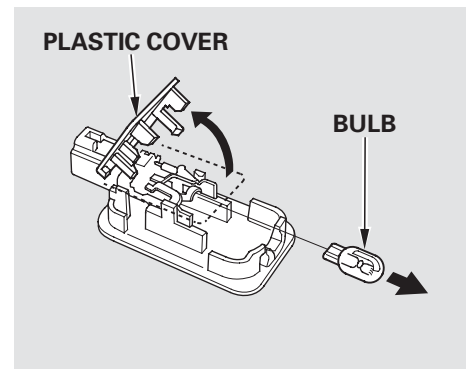




## Lights



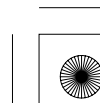
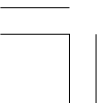
2. Remove the electrical connector.



*For some types*  
Remove the plastic cover by pivoting it upward.

3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its metal tabs.

4. Push the new bulb into the metal tabs. Reinstall the electrical connector and carefully snap the lens back in place.





## Air Conditioning System (For some types)

Your vehicle's air conditioning is a sealed system. Any major maintenance, such as recharging, should be done by a qualified technician. You can do a couple of things to make sure the air conditioning works efficiently.

Periodically check the engine's radiator and air conditioning condenser for leaves, insects, and dirt stuck to the front surface. These block the air flow and reduce cooling efficiency. Use a light spray from a hose or a soft brush to remove them.

### NOTICE

The condenser and radiator fins bend easily. Only use a low-pressure spray or soft-bristle brush to clean them.



Run the air conditioning at least once a week during the cold weather months. Run it for at least 10 minutes while you are driving at a steady speed with the engine at normal operating temperature. This circulates the lubricating oil contained in the refrigerant.

If the air conditioning does not get as cold as before, have your dealer check the system. Recharge the system with Refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

### NOTICE

Whenever you have the air conditioning system serviced, make sure the service facility uses a refrigerant recycling system. This system captures the refrigerant for reuse. Releasing refrigerant into the atmosphere can damage the environment.





## Dust and Pollen Filter

This filter removes the dust and pollen that is brought in from the outside through the heating and cooling system/climate control system.

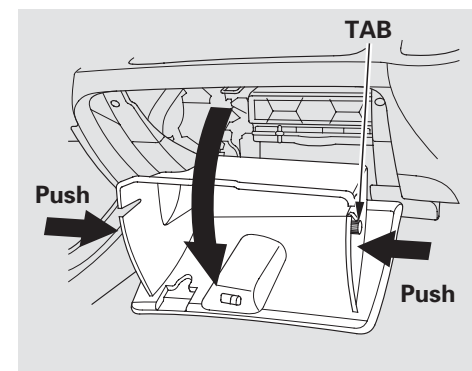
This filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication (if applicable). On vehicles without service reminder system, see the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without the Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

The dust and pollen filter should be replaced at short intervals if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and diesel-powered vehicles. Replace it more often if airflow from the heating and cooling system/climate control system becomes less than usual.

### Replacement

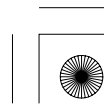
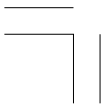
*For left-hand drive models*



The dust and pollen filter is located behind the glove box.  
To replace it:

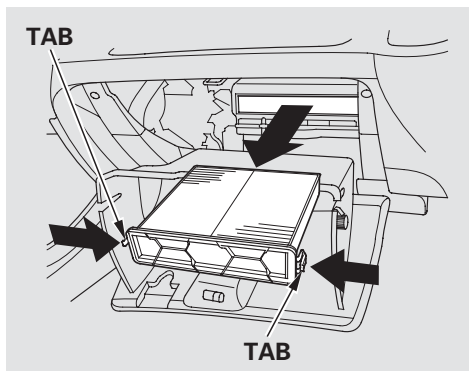
1. Open the glove box.
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

*CONTINUED*

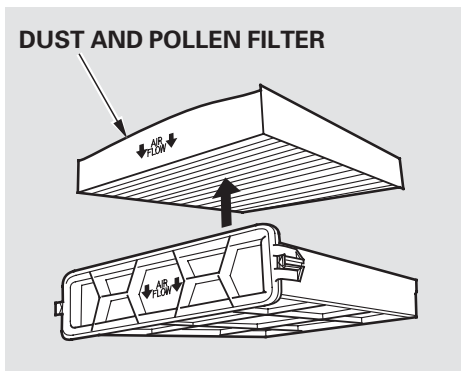




## Dust and Pollen Filter



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the dust and pollen filter case. Pull out the case.



5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install the new filter in the case. Make sure the arrows of the "AIR FLOW" marks on the filter point to the airflow direction (downward).

7. Install the case. Make sure both tabs "click" into place.

8. Pivot the glove box up into position. Install the tabs back in place.

9. Close the glove box.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by your dealer.

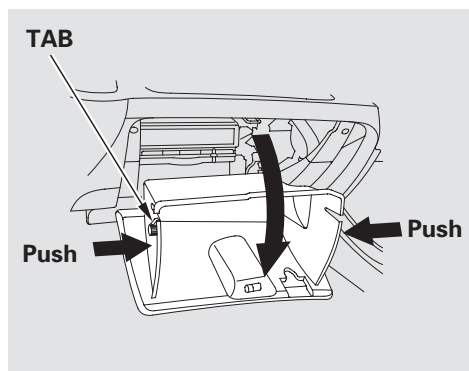




## Dust and Pollen Filter

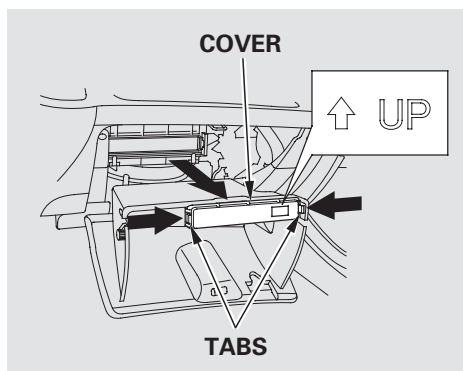
### Replacement

*For right-hand drive models*

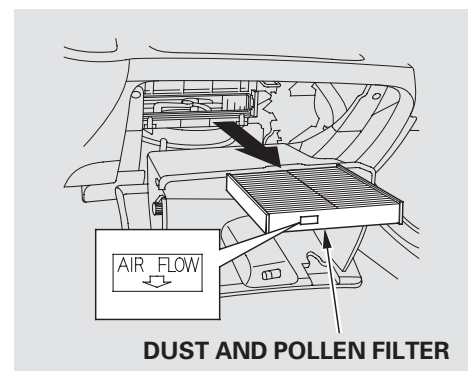


The dust and pollen filter is located behind the glove box.  
To replace it:

1. Open the glove box.
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the dust and pollen filter case and pull it out.



5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install the new filter in the case. Make sure the arrows of the "AIR FLOW" marks on the filter point to the airflow direction (downward).

*CONTINUED*



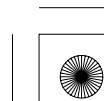
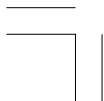


## Dust and Pollen Filter

---

7. Install the cover. Make sure both tabs “click” into place.
8. Pivot the glove box up into position. Install the tabs back in place.
9. Close the glove box.

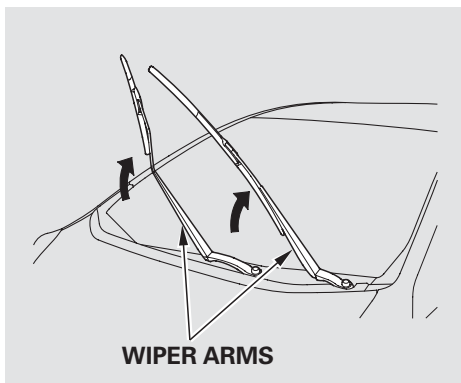
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by your dealer.





## Wiper Blades

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

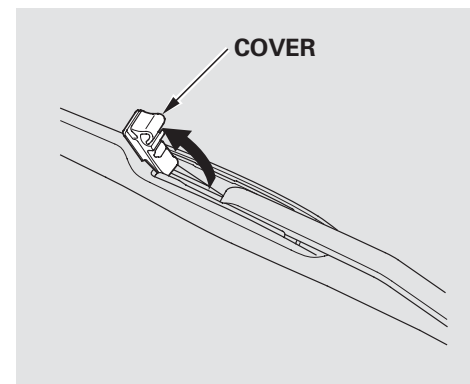


To replace a front wiper blade:

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield. Raise the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the bonnet and the wiper arms.



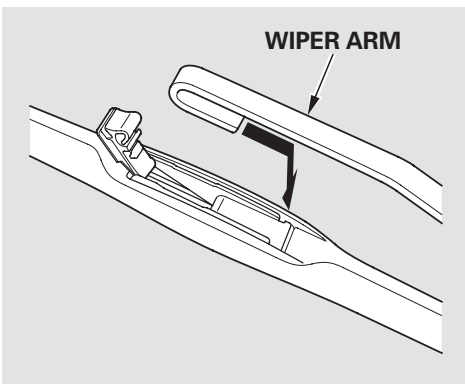
2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pulling up the cover.

*CONTINUED*



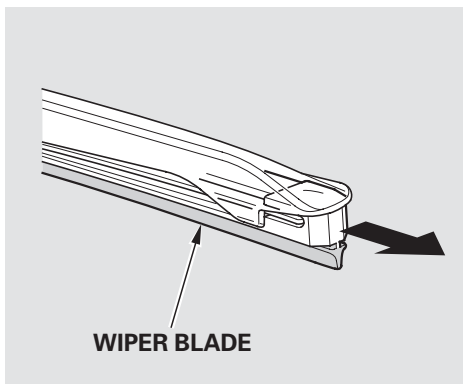


## Wiper Blades

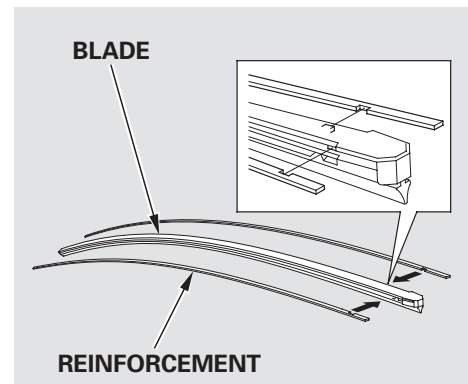


3. Push the blade assembly toward the base of the arm.

Carefully pull out the blade assembly to prevent it from hitting the windshield.

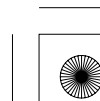


4. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.



5. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

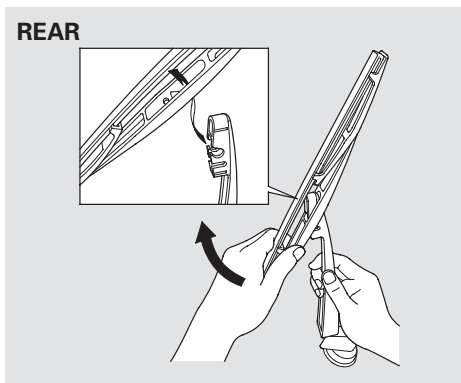
When you install the reinforcement, align the lug portion on the blade and notch on the reinforcement.





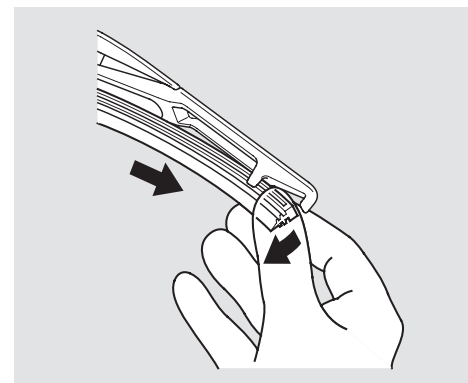
## Wiper Blades

6. Slide the new wiper blade assembly into the holder along the tabs on the holder.
7. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
8. Lower the wiper arm down against the windscreen. Lower the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.



To replace a rear wiper blade:

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.
2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pivoting the blade assembly upward.



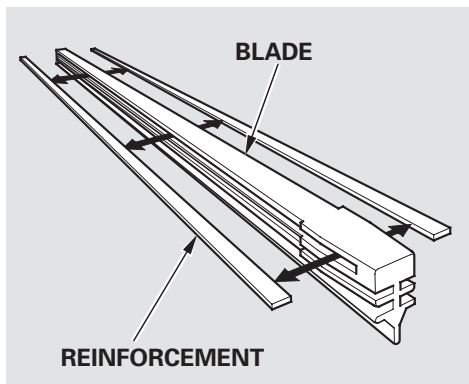
3. Pull one end of the blade out from the holder.
4. Slide the blade out of the holder.

*CONTINUED*

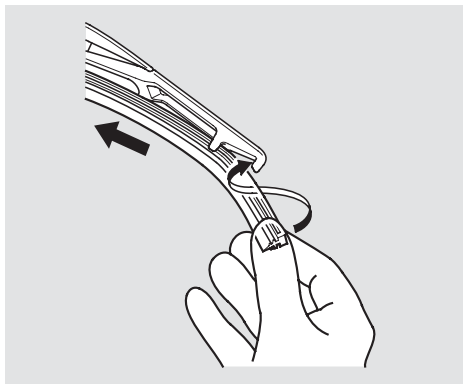




## Wiper Blades

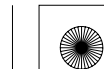


5. Examine the new wiper blade. If it has no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.



6. Slide the new blade into the holder. Make sure it is engaged in the slot along its full length.
7. Insert both ends of the blade into the holder. Make sure they are secure.

8. Install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
9. Lower the wiper arm against the window.





## Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tyres and what to do when they need to be replaced.

### **WARNING**

**Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.**

### **Inflation Guidelines**

Keeping the tyres properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tyres can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

We recommend that you visually check your tyres every day. If you think a tyre might be low, check it immediately with a tyre gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tyre at least once a month. Even tyres that are in good condition may lose 10 to 20 kPa (0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1 to 2 psi) per month.

Remember to check the spare tyre (if equipped) at the same time.

Check the air pressure when the tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tyre pressures on the label on the driver's doorjamb.

If you check air pressure when the tyres are hot [driven for several kilometers (miles)], you will see readings 30 to 40 kPa (0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4 to 6 psi) higher than the cold readings. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the recommended cold air pressure. The tyre will be underinflated.

*CONTINUED*





## Tyres

You should get your own tyre pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tyre pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tyre problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

While tubeless tyres have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tyre starts losing pressure.

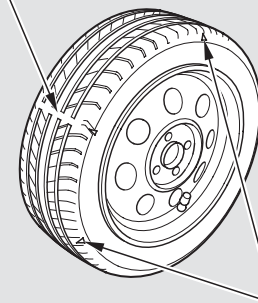
For convenience, the recommended cold air pressures and tyre sizes are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

### Tyre Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tyres for damage, foreign objects, and wear. You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.

### TREAD WEAR INDICATOR



### INDICATOR LOCATION MARKS

Your tyres have wear indicators moulded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a band 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) wide across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread left on the tyre.

A tyre this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tyre if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.





## Tyres

### Tyre Maintenance

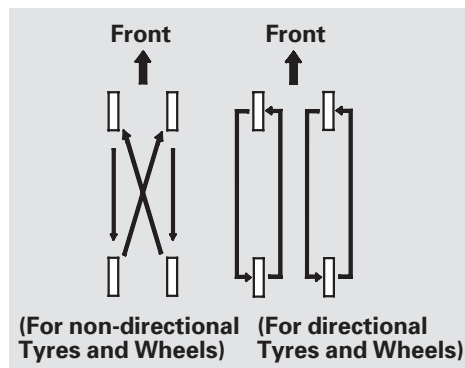
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

Have your dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tyre life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

#### NOTICE

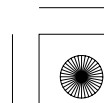
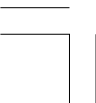
*For vehicles equipped with aluminium wheels:*  
Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only genuine Honda wheel weights for balancing.

### Tyre Rotation



To help increase tyre life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles). Move the tyres to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated. The above illustration shows how the tyres should be rotated.

If you purchase directional tyres, rotate only front-to-back. When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.





## Tyres

### Replacing Tyres and Wheels

Replace your tyres with radial tyres of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tyres on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause the ABS to work inconsistently.

The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tyre size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to work.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tyres or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels. Consult your dealer before replacing tyres.

Replacement wheels are available at your dealer.

### WARNING

**Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.**





## Tyres

### Wheel and Tyre Specifications

Wheels:

15 x 5 1/2 J

16 x 6 J

Tyres:

175/65R15 84H

175/65R15 84T

185/55R16 83H

185/55R16 83T

The sizes of wheels and tyres installed on your vehicle vary depending on models.

See the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb or ask your dealer for information on the proper size of the tyres on your vehicle.

### Winter Tyres

Because of the limited winter qualification of summer tyres for winter use we recommend the use of winter tyres (M + S tyres) on snowy and icy roads. If M + S tyres are installed, all four wheels should be equipped to insure safe driving. Use only tyres of the same brand with the same profile. Pay attention to the tyre size, load capacity and speed class when buying.

Install the winter tyres according to the remarks in the registration paper. According to the EEC Directive for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If any questions arise, please discuss these with one of our dealers.





## Tyres

### Tyre Chains

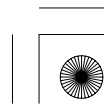
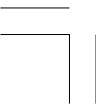
Use snow chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area. Install the snow chains on the front wheels. Use greater caution when driving with snow chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains. Some snow chains may damage the vehicle's tyres, wheels, suspension, brake lines and body. Choose only fine limbed chains which guarantee enough free space between the tyre and the other vehicle parts in the wheelhouse. Pay attention to the sectional assembly view and other directions from the chain manufacturer. Consult your dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.

When you have installed tyre chains, drive at less than 30 km/h (19 mph) on roads covered with snow or ice. To minimize tyre and chain wear, avoid driving on cleared roads with chains installed.

### WARNING

**Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.**



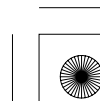
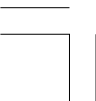


## Tyres

Use only the specified chains or their equivalents for your tyres as listed.

Original Tyre Size*	Chain Type
175/65R15 84H 175/65R15 84T	48404 RUD-matic classic or equivalents
185/55R16 83H 185/55R16 83T	48479 RUD-matic classic or equivalents

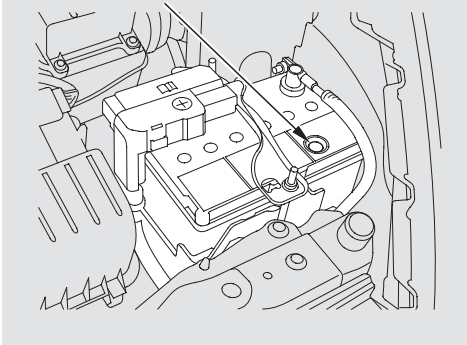
\* : Original tyre is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.





## Checking the Battery

### TEST INDICATOR WINDOW



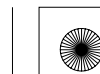
Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colours.

The location of the test indicator window varies between manufacturers.

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your dealer or a qualified technician.

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.





## Checking the Battery

### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation. A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

### Emergency Procedures

**Eyes** — Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

**Skin** — Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

**Swallowing** — Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

*CONTINUED*





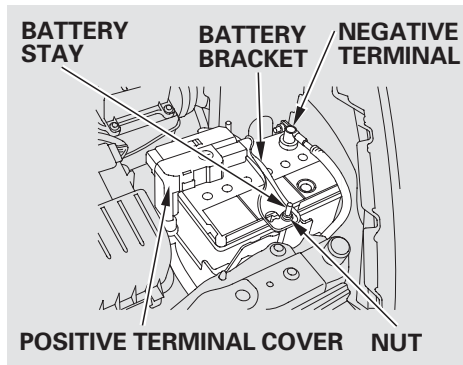
## Checking the Battery, Replacing the Battery

*For some types*

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system may disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the code (see page 232 ).

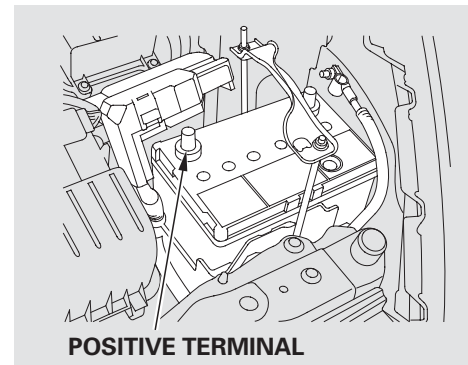
If your vehicle's battery is disconnected, or goes dead, the time setting is lost. To reset the time, see page 233 .

### Replacing the Battery



When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance instructions in Maintenance Safety on page 306 and the warnings in the Checking the Battery section to prevent potential hazards.

1. Make sure the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position.
2. Open the bonnet.



3. Loosen the bolt on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (–) terminal.

Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.





## Replacing the Battery

4. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the bolt on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.
5. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
6. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.
7. Take out the battery carefully.

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Make sure the battery bracket is positioned correctly as shown on the previous page.



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.  
Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

*On vehicles with service reminder system*

If you store your vehicle with the battery disconnected, the time and distance calculation of the service reminder system should be updated at your dealer (see page 317).





## Vehicle Storage

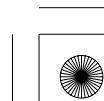
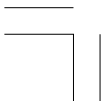
---

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in reverse (manual) or Park (automatic).
- Block the rear wheels.

- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tyres are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front and rear wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windscreen.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and tailgate seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and tailgate seals.

- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Nonporous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.





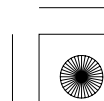
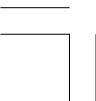
## Vehicle Storage

### ***On vehicles with service reminder system***

- After parking the vehicle for an extended period with the battery disconnected, the time and distance calculation of the service reminder system should be updated. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. If not, the service reminder system will not show the proper intervals.

### ***On vehicles without service reminder system***

If you store your vehicle for 1 year or longer, have your dealer perform the maintenance inspections called for in the 2 years/40,000 km (25,000 miles) maintenance schedule as soon as you take it out of storage (see the Service Book that came with your vehicle, on vehicles without the Service Book, see the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual). The replacements called for in the maintenance schedule are not needed unless the vehicle has actually reached that time or distance.

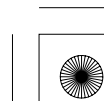
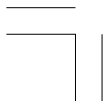




10/10/25 19:22:45 32TF0630\_379



**374**





## Appearance Care

Regular cleaning and polishing of your vehicle helps to keep it “new” looking. This section gives you information on how to clean your vehicle and preserve its appearance: the paint, brightwork, wheels and interior. Also included are several things you can do to help prevent corrosion.

Exterior Care.....	376
Washing .....	376
Waxing .....	377
Aluminium Wheels .....	377
Roof Antenna .....	378
Paint Touch-up .....	378
Interior Care.....	379
Carpeting .....	379
Floor Mats .....	379
Fabric .....	380
Vinyl .....	380
Leather.....	380
Windows .....	380
Seat Belts.....	381
Air Fresheners .....	381
Corrosion Protection .....	382





## Exterior Care

---

### Washing

Frequent washing helps preserve your vehicle's beauty. Dirt and grit can scratch the paint, while tree sap and bird droppings can permanently ruin the finish.

Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

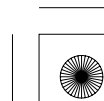
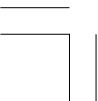
Only use the solvents and cleaners recommended in this owner's manual.

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle.

- Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
- Fill a bucket with cool water. Mix in a product made especially for car washing.
- Wash the vehicle using water and detergent solution and a soft-bristle brush, sponge, or soft cloth. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.
- Check the body for road tar, tree sap, etc. Remove these stains with tar remover or turpentine. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. Remember to re-wax these areas, even if the rest of the vehicle does not need waxing.
- When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a chamois or soft towel. Letting it air-dry will cause dulling and water spots.

As you dry the vehicle, inspect it for chips and scratches that could allow corrosion to start. Repair them with touch-up paint (see page 378 ).





## Exterior Care

### Waxing

Always wash and dry the whole vehicle before waxing it. You should wax your vehicle, including the metal trim, whenever water sits on the surface in large patches. It should form into beads or droplets after waxing.

You should use a quality liquid or paste wax. Apply it according to the instructions on the container. In general, there are two types of products:

**Waxes** — A wax coats the finish and protects it from damage by exposure to sunlight, air pollution, etc. You should use a wax on your vehicle when it is new.

**Polishes** — Polishes and cleaner/waxes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They normally contain mild abrasives and solvents that remove the top layer of the finish. You should use a polish on your vehicle if the finish does not have its original shine after using a wax.

Cleaning tar, insects, etc. with removers also takes off the wax. Remember to re-wax those areas, even if the rest of the vehicle does not need waxing.

### Aluminium Wheels (For some types)

Clean your vehicle's aluminium alloy wheels as you do the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

The wheels have a protective clearcoat that keeps the aluminium from corroding and tarnishing. Using harsh chemicals, including some commercial wheel cleaners or stiff brushes, can damage this clear-coat. Only use a mild detergent and soft brush or sponge to clean the wheels.

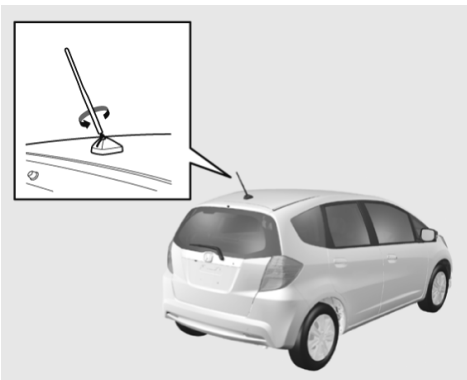




## Exterior Care

---

### Roof Antenna



#### **NOTICE**

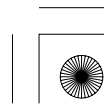
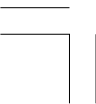
Your vehicle is equipped with an antenna at the rear of the roof. Before using a “drive-through” car wash, remove the antenna by unscrewing it by hand. This prevents the antenna from being damaged by the car wash brushes.

Afterward, reinstall the antenna and tighten it securely by hand.

### Paint Touch-up

Your dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s colour. The colour code is printed on a plate on the front doorjamb on the left side. Take this code to your dealer so you are sure to get the correct colour.

Inspect your vehicle frequently for chips or scratches in the paint. Repair them right away to prevent corrosion of the metal underneath. Use the touch-up paint only on small chips and scratches. More extensive paint damage should be repaired by a professional.





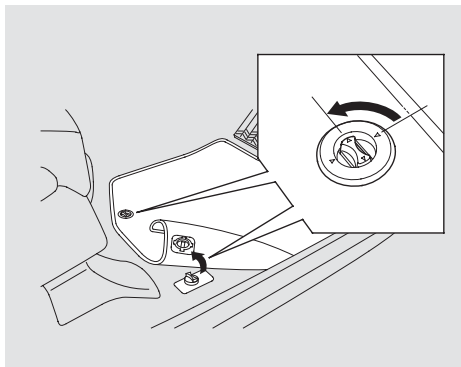
## Interior Care

### **Carpeting**

Vacuum the carpeting frequently to remove dirt. Ground-in dirt will make the carpet wear out faster.

Periodically shampoo the carpet to keep it looking new. Use one of the foam-type carpet cleaners on the market. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner, applying it with a sponge or soft brush. Keep the carpeting as dry as possible by not adding water to the foam.

### **Floor Mats**



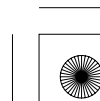
#### *If equipped*

The driver's floor mat that came with your vehicle hooks over the floor mat anchors. To lock each anchor, turn the knob clockwise. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals.

When cleaning or replacing, turn the knob anticlockwise to unhook the floor mat.

If you remove the driver's floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use non-Honda floor mats, make sure they fit properly and that they can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of an anchored mat.





## Interior Care

---

### Fabric

Vacuum dirt and dust out of the material frequently. For general cleaning, use a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water, letting it air dry. To clean off stubborn spots, use a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Test it on a hidden area of the fabric first, to make sure it does not bleach or stain the fabric. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.

### Vinyl

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Wipe the vinyl with a soft cloth dampened in a solution of mild soap and water. Use the same solution with a soft-bristle brush on more difficult spots. You can also use commercially-available spray or foam-type vinyl cleaners.

### Leather

#### (For some types)

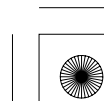
Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral wool detergent solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

### Windows

Clean the windows, inside and out, with a commercially-available glass cleaner. You can also use a mixture of one part white vinegar to ten parts water. This will remove the haze that builds up on the inside of the windows. Use a soft cloth or paper towels to clean all glass and clear plastic surfaces.

#### NOTICE

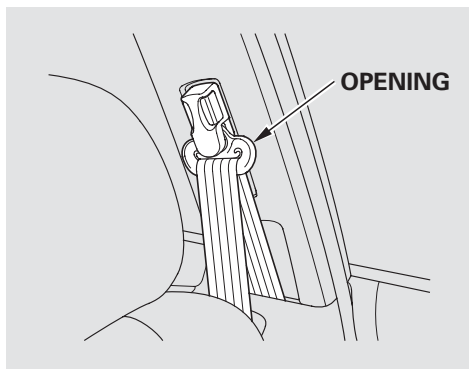
The rear window demister wires are bonded to the inside of the glass. Wiping vigorously up-and-down can dislodge and break the demister wires. When cleaning the rear window, use gentle pressure and wipe side-to-side.





## Interior Care

### Seat Belts



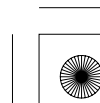
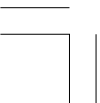
If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up around the openings of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the openings with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

### Air Fresheners

If you want to use an air freshener/deodorizer in the interior of your vehicle, it is best to use a solid type. Some liquid air fresheners contain chemicals that may cause parts of the interior trim and fabric to crack or discolour.

If you use a liquid air freshener, make sure you fasten it securely so it does not spill as you drive.





## Corrosion Protection

---

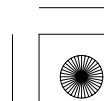
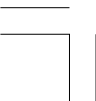
Two factors normally contribute to causing corrosion in your vehicle:

1. Moisture trapped in body cavities. Dirt and road salt that collects in hollows on the underside of the vehicle stays damp, promoting corrosion in that area.
2. Removal of paint and protective coatings from the exterior and underside of the vehicle.

Many corrosion-preventive measures are built into your vehicle. You can help keep your vehicle from corroding by performing some simple periodic maintenance:

- Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you discover them.
- Inspect and clean out the drain holes in the bottom of the doors and body.
- Check the floor coverings for dampness. Carpeting and floor mats may remain damp for a long time, especially in winter. This dampness can eventually cause the floor panels to corrode.

- Use a high-pressure spray to clean the underside of your vehicle. This is especially important in areas that use road salt in winter. It is also a good idea in humid climates and areas subject to salty air. Be careful of the ABS wheel sensors and wiring at each wheel.
- Have the corrosion-preventive coatings on the underside of your vehicle inspected and repaired periodically.

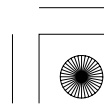
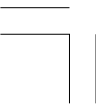




## Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tyre.....	384
Changing a Flat Tyre .....	385
Honda TRK .....	392
If the Engine Won't Start.....	407
Jump Starting .....	409
If the Engine Overheats .....	411
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	413
Oil Level Indicator .....	414
Charging System Indicator.....	416
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	417
PGM-FI Warning .....	418
Brake System Indicator .....	419
Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually .....	420
Fuses .....	421
Fuse Locations .....	425
Emergency Towing .....	428
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck.....	430





## Compact Spare Tyre (For some types)

Use the compact spare tyre as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tyre repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

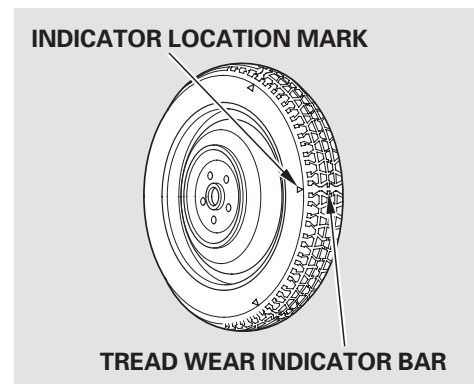
Check the air pressure of the compact spare tyre every time you check the other tyres. It should be inflated to:

**420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> , 60 psi)**

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- This tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tyre.

- Do not use your compact spare tyre on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.
- The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.



Replace the tyre when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement tyre should be the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tyre.





## Changing a Flat Tyre

### *On vehicles with spare tyre*

If you have a flat tyre while driving, pull over safely. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an area far away from traffic lanes.




### *On vehicles with Honda TRK*

Your vehicle is equipped with the tyre sealant kit instead of the spare tyre. This kit is available for easy repair of a flat tyre (see page 392 ).

### NOTICE

Use the jack that came with your vehicle. If you try to raise another vehicle with this jack or use another jack to raise your vehicle, the vehicle or jack can be damaged.

Jack Label for EU models

1.	2.	3.
		

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

See page 437 for your jack type.

### ⚠ WARNING

**The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.**

**Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**

CONTINUED



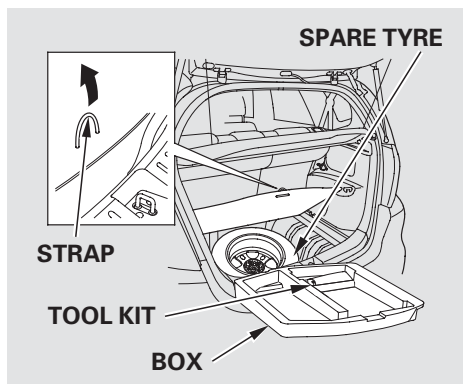


## Changing a Flat Tyre

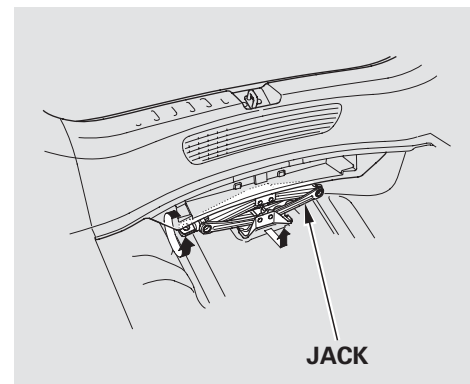
1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.

If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

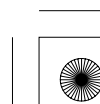
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all the passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tyre.



3. Open the tailgate. Raise the luggage area floor by lifting up on the strap.
4. Take the box out of the spare tyre.
5. Take the tool kit out of the box.

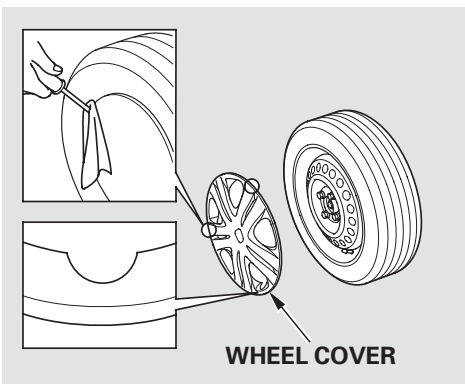


6. Take the jack out of the luggage area. Turn the jack's end bracket anticlockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack by lifting it straight up.
7. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tyre out of its well.
8. Place blocks in front and back of the wheel diagonally opposite the tyre you are changing.





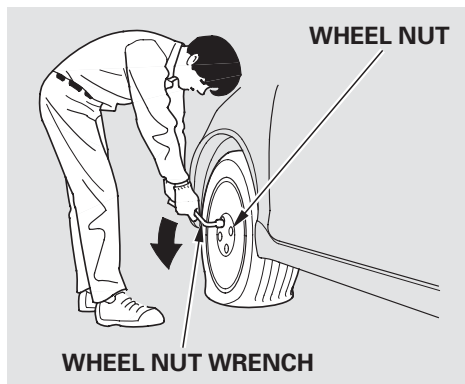
## Changing a Flat Tyre



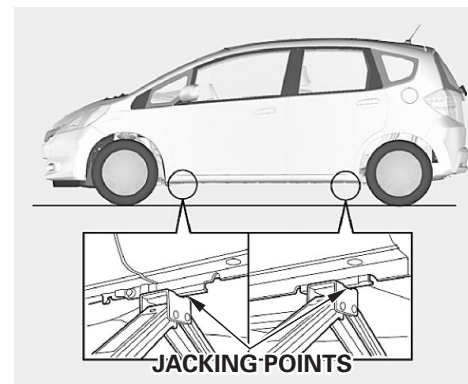
*On some models*

Before removing the wheel nuts, remove the wheel cover from the wheel with a flat-tip screwdriver. Put a cloth on the end of the wheel cover to prevent scratches, then pry it carefully with a screwdriver. Do not attempt to forcibly pry the wheel cover off.

To install a wheel cover, see page 391.



9. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.

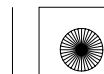


10. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tyre you need to change. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

**NOTE:**

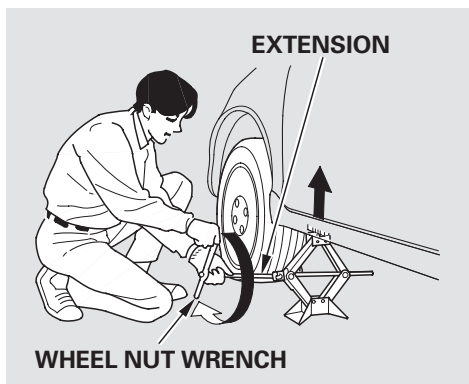
Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

*CONTINUED*

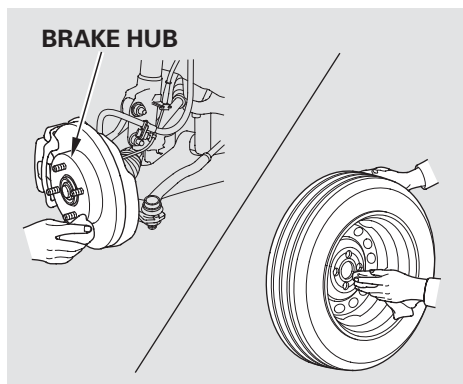




## Changing a Flat Tyre



11. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tyre is off the ground.
12. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tyre. Handle the wheel nuts carefully; they may be hot from driving. Place the flat tyre on the ground with the outside surface facing up.



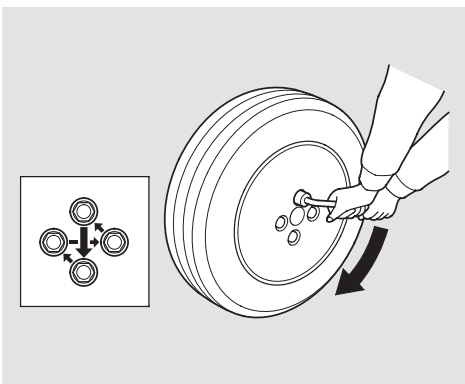
13. Before mounting the spare tyre, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

14. Put on the spare tyre. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.
15. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.



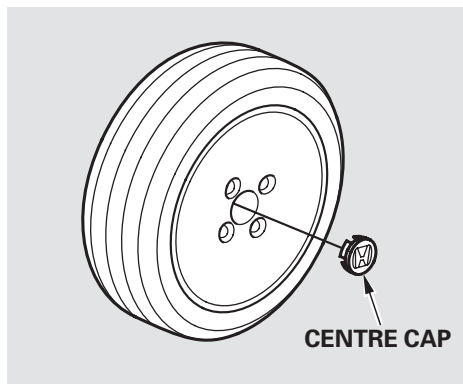


## Changing a Flat Tyre

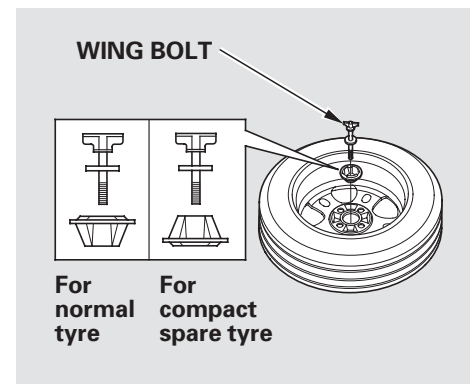


16. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

Tighten the wheel nuts to:  
108 N·m (11 kgf·m , 80 lbf·ft)



17. On some types, remove the centre cap before storing the flat tyre in the spare tyre well.



18. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.

19. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.

20. Secure the flat tyre by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole. Store the box in the wheel of the flat tyre.

*CONTINUED*





## Changing a Flat Tyre

21. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket clockwise to lock it in place. Store the tool kit. Replace the cover.

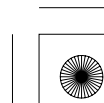
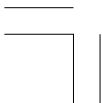
Store the wheel cover or centre cap in the luggage area. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged.

### **WARNING**

**Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.**

**Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.**

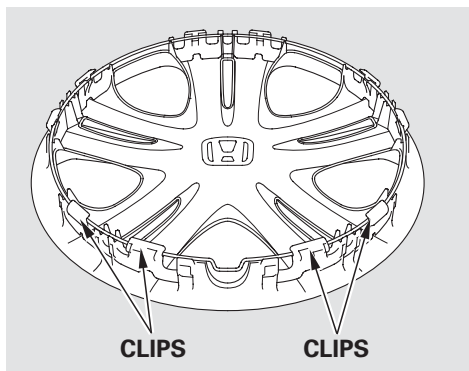
22. Close the tailgate.



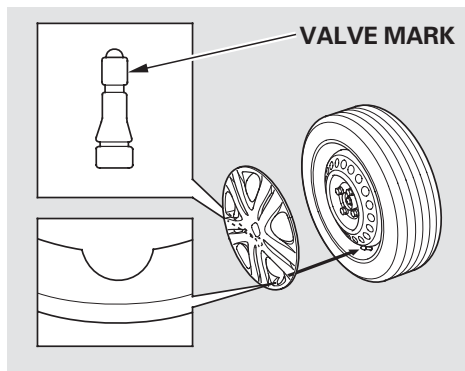


## Changing a Flat Tyre

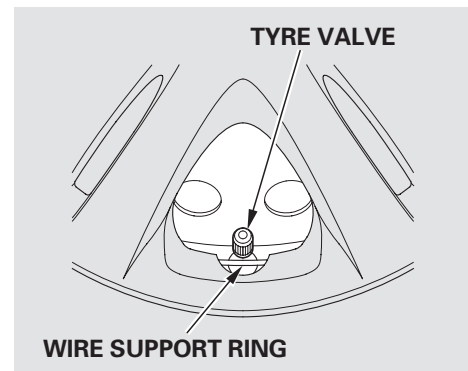
### *Installing a wheel cover (On some models)*



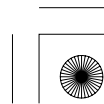
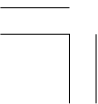
1. Make sure the wire support ring is hooked into the clips around the edge of the wheel cover.



2. Align the valve mark on the wheel cover to the tyre valve on the wheel, then install the wheel cover.



3. Make sure the wire support ring is on the outer side of the tyre valve as shown.





## Honda TRK (For some types)

### *On vehicles with Honda TRK*



Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tyre. Instead, your vehicle has the tyre sealant kit (Honda TRK: temporary repair kit of TERRA-S®). This kit is available only for easy repair of a flat tyre.

When using the tyre sealant kit, always follow the instructions and the procedure in this owner's manual.

You should check the usable period of the tyre sealant according to the service reminder indication.

If the service reminder system is not available on your vehicle, refer to the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle, or the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual (on vehicles without Service Book).

If your vehicle has a compact spare tyre, see page 385 for how to replace a flat tyre.

To remind you of the instructions for using the tyre sealant kit, the handling manual is included in the kit. Symbols   on the handling manual are to remind you to read this owner's manual for using the tyre sealant kit.

Read the handling manual well and use it correctly.

Small punctures in the tyre tread, caused by a nail or a screw, can be sealed with the temporary repair kit.

### **NOTICE**

The tyre sealant kit cannot be used in the following cases.

Inform your dealer or a Roadside Assistance Service.

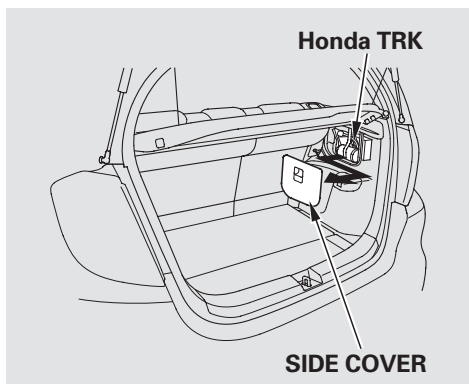
Have your vehicle towed (see Emergency Towing on page 428 ).

1. Expired best before date of the tyre sealant.
2. Cuts or piercing in the tyre tread larger than approximately 4 mm (3/16ths of an inch).
3. Cuts in the tyre side wall.
4. Tyre damage caused by driving with considerably reduced tyre pressure or even with deflated tyres.
5. A tyre bead completely unseated outside or inside of rim.
6. A rim damaged.
7. 2 or more tyres punctured.

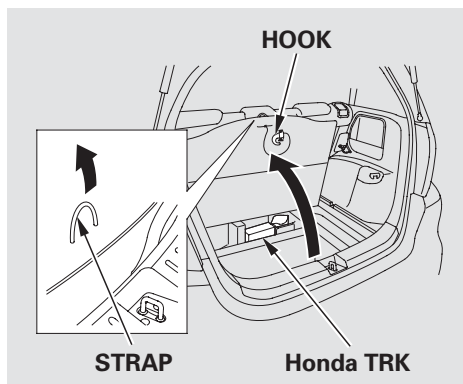




## Honda TRK (For some types)



Open the tailgate. Remove the side cover by pulling its handle. Take the Honda TRK out of the rear right side compartment.



### *On some models*

Open the tailgate. Raise the luggage area floor by lifting up on the strap. Take the Honda TRK out of the luggage area.

To keep the luggage area floor out of the way, attach the hook to the tailgate sill.

### Instructions for Use

1. If you have a flat tyre while driving, stop in a safe place. Make sure to park the vehicle on firm, level and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in neutral and set the parking brake.

If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.
3. Examine the tyre for a puncture or other damage thoroughly.

CONTINUED



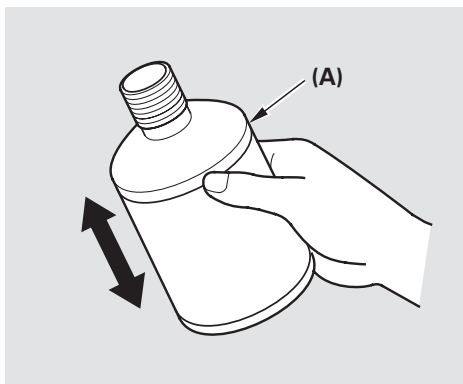


## Honda TRK (For some types)

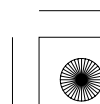
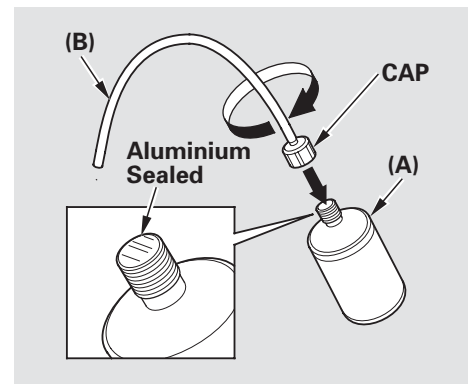
4. If the damage is smaller than 4 mm (3/16ths of an inch) and within the tyre tread, proceed with the following instructions.
5. Have all the passengers get out of the vehicle while you repair a flat tyre temporarily.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**If you drive a vehicle after repair without extracting a nail or a screw, it may cause air leakage again or damage the inside and burst a tyre. If you have to drive, drive carefully, especially around corners.**



6. Shake the bottle (A). Screw the filler hose (B) onto the bottle (A), thereby piercing the seal of aluminium.





## Honda TRK (For some types)

### ⚠ CAUTION

**Contains ethylene glycol.**

- **Harmful if swallowed. Swallow plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately.**
- **Irritating to eyes. Rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice.**
- **Keep locked up and out of the reach of children.**
- **If you shake the bottle after connecting the hose with the bottle, it may spill sealant. Shake bottle well before connecting hose.**

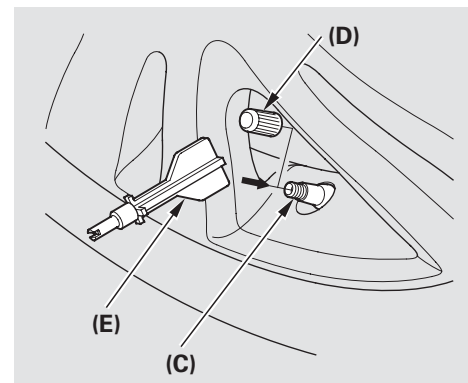
### NOTICE

If sealant adheres to clothes, it may not be possible to remove. Be careful not to spill any.

#### *Safety Label on the Sealant Bottle*

To remind you of the information for repairing a flat tyre with this sealant kit, the labels are attached on the sealant bottle. Read the instructions carefully. Symbols ⚠ and 📖 on the label are to remind you to read the Honda TRK section for using the tyre sealant kit.

If you have any questions about the tyre sealant kit, please contact your dealer.

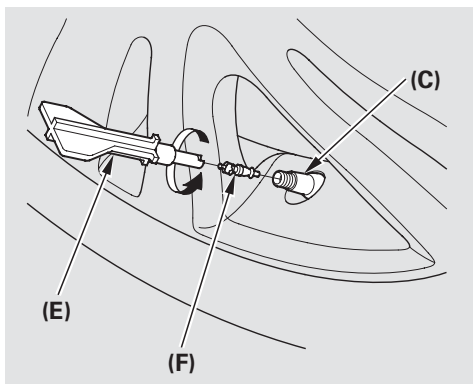


7. Unscrew the valve cap (D) from the tyre valve (C). Deflate the tyre completely pushing the valve insert using the back of the valve remover (E).

CONTINUED



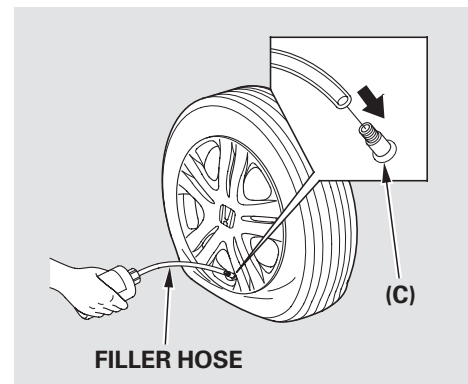
## Honda TRK (For some types)



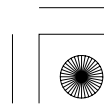
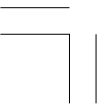
Unscrew the valve insert (F) using the valve remover (E). Do not place the valve insert (F) in sand or dirt.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

A valve insert can jump out, if air remains in tyre. Be careful in removing valve insert.

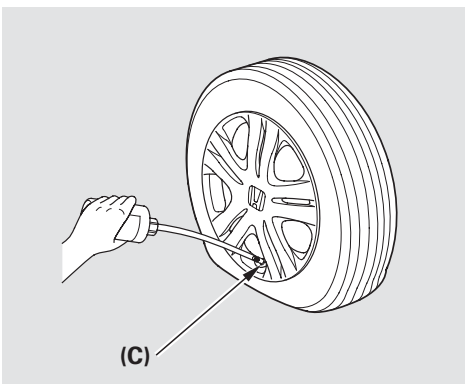


8. Screw the filler hose onto the tyre valve (C).

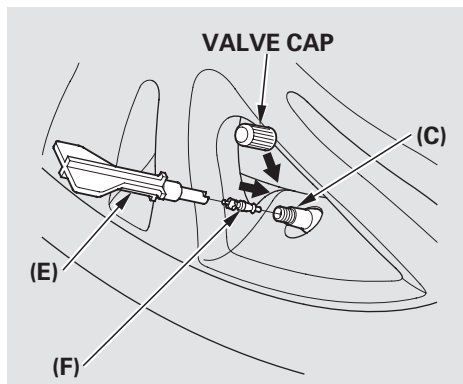




## Honda TRK (For some types)

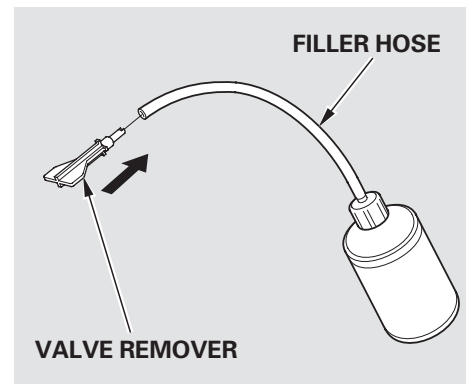


Hold the filling bottle with the filler hose downwards and compress. Squeeze the complete contents into the tyre.



9. Pull off the filler hose and firmly screw the valve insert (F) into the tyre valve (C) using the valve remover (E).

Reinstall the valve cap.



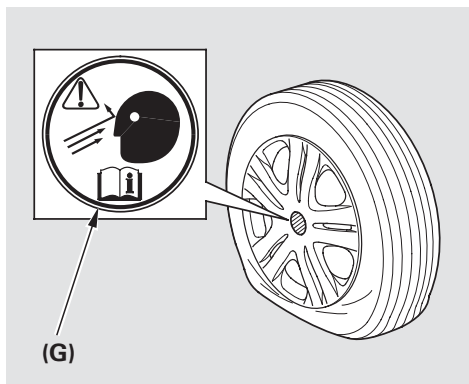
Insert the end of the valve remover into the opening of the filler hose.

*CONTINUED*

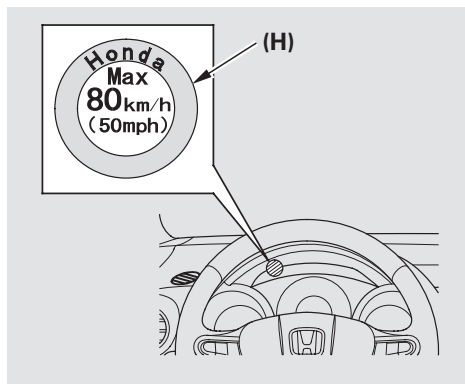




## Honda TRK (For some types)



Affix the “Tyre Sealant in the tyre” sticker (G) on the wheel.

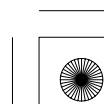


Affix the “Maximum Speed” sticker (H) within the driver’s range of vision on the display.

### ⚠ CAUTION

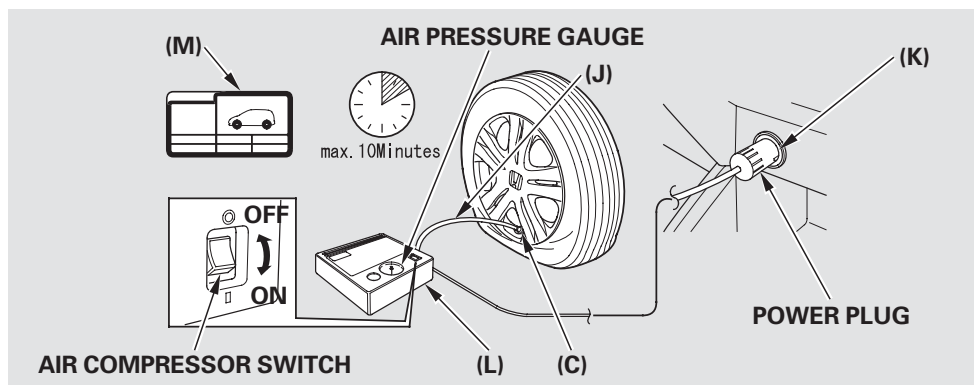
Do not affix a sticker on the steering wheel. The SRS air bag may not function.

Do not affix it in the position where it prevents the driver from seeing the warning indicators or speedometer.





## Honda TRK (For some types)



10. Screw the inflation hose (J) to the tyre valve (C). Fit the plug to the socket (K) of the accessory power socket in the front console panel.

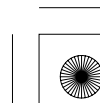
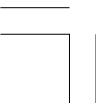
Turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. Turn on the air compressor (L). Inflate the tyre to the required air pressure (M). Do not inflate the tyre for more than 10 minutes. If overinflated, deflate air by loosening the screw of the hose.

### ⚠ CAUTION

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be severely damaged.

The Tyre Sealant Kit cannot provide the necessary seal. Inform a Honda Dealer or Roadside Assistant Service.

CONTINUED

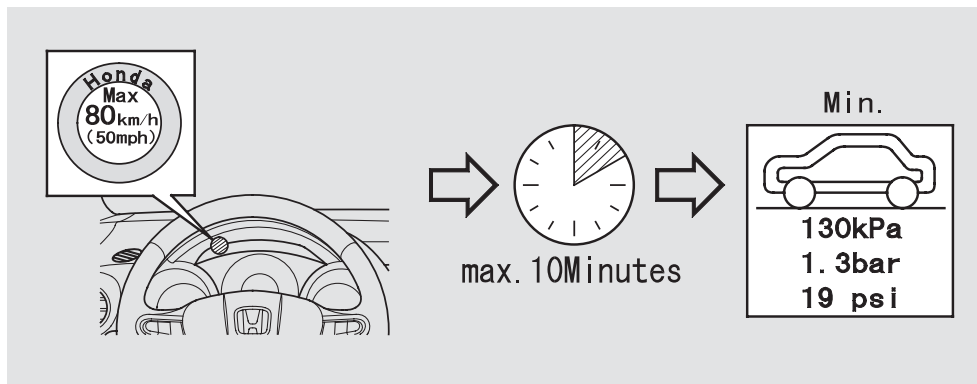




## Honda TRK (For some types)

### NOTICE

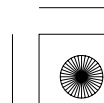
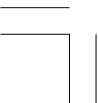
Operate the electric inflation pump for not longer than 15 minutes. It can cause overheating.



11. Continue the journey immediately. Drive carefully within the speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

### NOTICE

If you drive at a speed of more than 80 km/h (50 mph), your vehicle may vibrate and will not drive safely.





## Honda TRK (For some types)

12. After 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles) running, check the tyre pressure with the air compressor pressure gauge. Note that the air pressure must be checked with the air compressor turned off. If the tyre pressure is kept, the tyre puncture is sealed. Continue to drive carefully to the nearest Honda dealer or a Roadside Assistance Service.

13. If the required air pressure has dropped, inflate the tyre to the required air pressure and repeat from step 10.

### WARNING

**In the following cases, do not drive on.  
Inform a Honda dealer or a Roadside Assistance Service.**

- **The tyre pressure has dropped below 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi).**
- **The tyre pressure has still dropped after steps 10 and 11.**

### NOTICE

- Have the tyre replaced at the nearest Honda dealer. To repair the sealed tyre, consult your dealer.
- A wheel can be reused after wiping sealant with cloth, but the valve must be replaced.
- Dispose of the used bottle at a Honda dealer.

### NOTICE

If the puncture hole cannot be detected, the tyre repair shop cannot repair the sealed tyre. When you continue running, check tyre pressure often and if tyre pressure decreases, have the sealed tyre repaired at a Honda dealer.

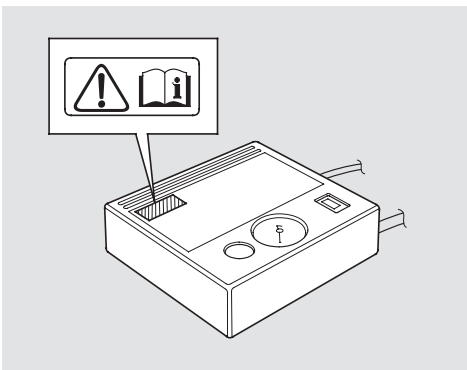
*CONTINUED*







## Honda TRK (For some types)

### *Instructions for Labels on the Air Compressor*



To remind you of the information for repairing a flat tyre with this sealant kit, the labels are attached on the air compressor. The following shows you the instructions for these labels.

Symbols   on the label are to remind you to read the Honda TRK section for using the tyre sealant kit.

### **CAUTION**

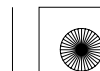
**Do not run the engine in enclosed areas, or when the vehicle is supported by the jack.**

### **CAUTION**

**Do not touch the air compressor with hands without protective clothing. Because it may be extremely hot while operating.**

**Never use the air compressor for 15 minutes or longer. When reusing, make sure the compressor is cool to the touch.**

**Do not use the air compressor for any other purpose than inflating your tyres.**





## Honda TRK (For some types)

### NOTE:

The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12 volt DC accessory socket.

### Directions

Before using the air compressor, drive your vehicle to the road shoulder and stop in a safe place that is far away from the traffic lanes.

#### Step 1.

Remove the valve cap from a flat tyre and securely connect the air compressor hose to the valve.

#### Step 2.

Connect the power plug of the air compressor to the socket of the cigarette lighter.

#### Step 3.

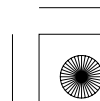
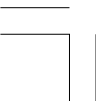
Turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. Turn on the air compressor switch and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure. Check the tyre pressure by using the air pressure gauge on the compressor.

### NOTICE

Turn off the switch on the air compressor before checking the air pressure.

#### Step 4.

When the tyre is inflated to specified air pressure, disconnect the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Make sure not to allow air to leak from the tyre. Then install and tighten the valve cap securely.

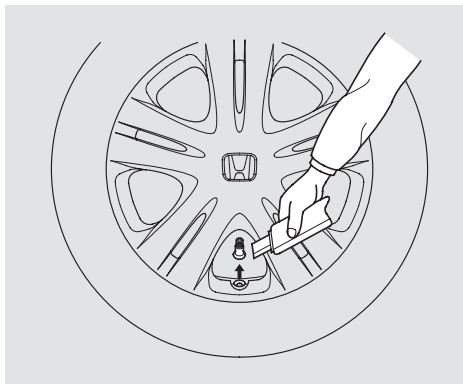




## Honda TRK (For some types)

### Sealant Extraction (For a Honda dealer)

Be careful not to spill sealant from a tyre.



1. Remove the tyre and wheel from the vehicle.  
Deflate tyre pressure.
2. Cut the valve off with a knife.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to cut a hand or a finger.

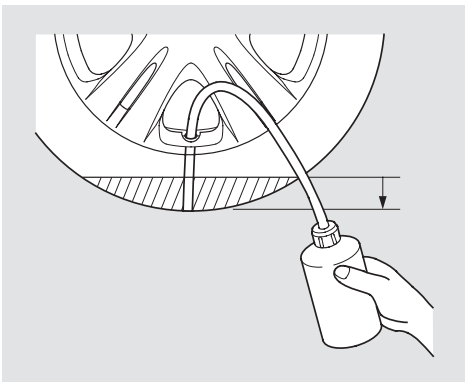
### NOTICE

Be careful not to damage the tyre or the wheel.

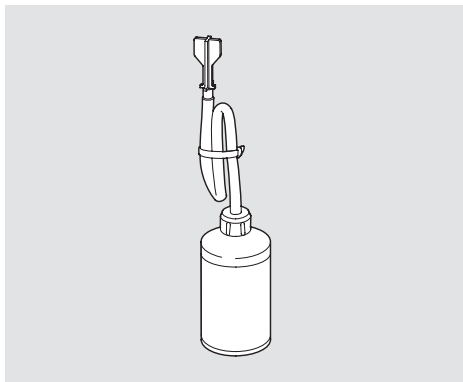




## Honda TRK (For some types)



3. Insert the hose through the valve hole into the tyre.  
The hose should enter the sealant as deeply as possible.
4. Squeeze the bottle and draw out the sealant.  
(It is better to stand a tyre on a table.)
5. Repeat step 4 until the sealant cannot be drawn out.

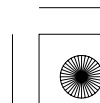
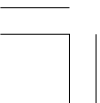


6. Bend the hose and tie it with the strap or tape, then insert the valve remover into the opening of the hose, so that sealant does not leak. Dispose of the bottle at your dealer when you replace it with a new bottle.

### NOTICE

Recycling sealant is important for protecting environmental resources. Please cooperate in collecting used sealant.

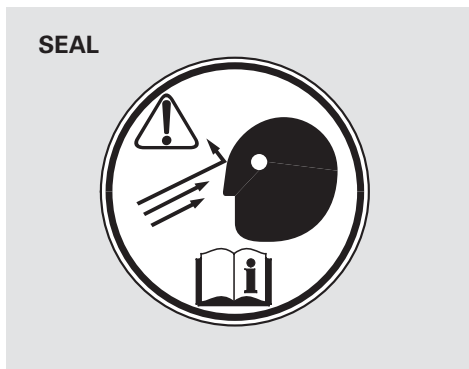
*CONTINUED*







## Honda TRK (For some types)

### Sealant Label



To remind you of the information for extracting the used sealant, this seal is attached on the wheel. It also shows you the tyre has been repaired by the tyre sealant kit. The following shows you the instructions on this seal.

Symbols   on the seal are to remind you to read this owner's manual for extracting the used sealant.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The sealant contains ethylene glycol.

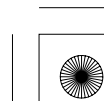
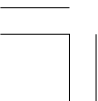
Swallowing the sealant can cause fatal poisoning. Drink with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Getting the sealant in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious injury. Flush with large quantities of water thoroughly. Call a physician immediately.

Keep out of the reach of children.

Make sure to keep the sealant enclosed in the bottle.

### 406 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## If the Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

### Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

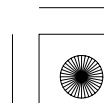
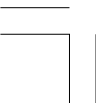
When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. With an automatic transmission, it must be in Park or neutral, or the starter will not operate.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 409.

- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 428.

*CONTINUED*





## If the Engine Won't Start

---

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 368 ). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 409 ).

### The Starter Operates Normally

In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 273 .
- Are you using a properly coded key? An improperly coded key will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 138 ).

- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the low fuel indicator may not be working.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 421 ).
- The fuel cutoff switch may be activated. If the switch is activated, it must be reset before starting the engine (see page 263 ).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 428 .





## Jump Starting

Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.**

**Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.**

You cannot start your vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

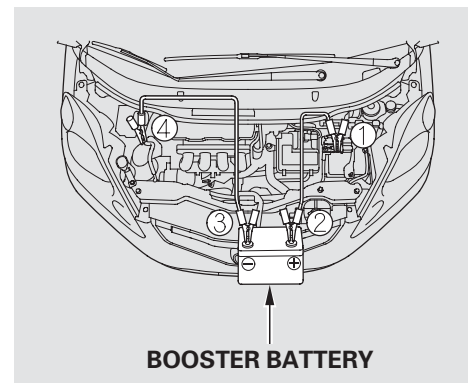
To jump start your vehicle:

1. Open the bonnet, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or frozen, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

### **NOTICE**

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: heater, A/C, climate control, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in neutral (M/T) or Park (A/T), and set the parking brake.



The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.

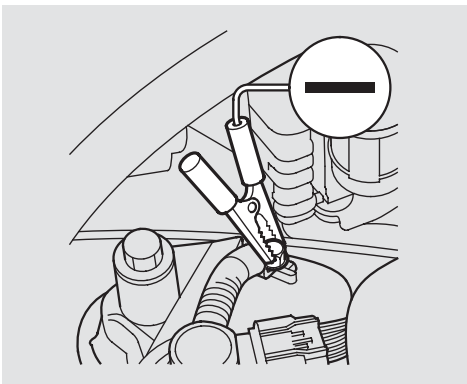
*CONTINUED*





## Jump Starting

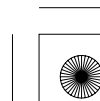
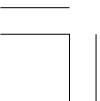
---



4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (–) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the grounding strap as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.
6. Start the vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.
7. Once the vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, and then from the booster battery.


Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.





## If the Engine Overheats

The high temperature indicator should be off under most conditions. If the engine coolant temperature gets higher than normal, the indicator will blink. If it stays on, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.).

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with an “ENGINE TEMP. HIGH” message on the multi-information display.

If the vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the high temperature indicator blinking or remaining on. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the bonnet.

### NOTICE

Driving with the high temperature indicator on can cause serious damage to your engine.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.**

**Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.**

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral (M/T) or Park (A/T), and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.

2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the bonnet, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the bonnet.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running, and check the high temperature indicator. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the high temperature indicator goes off, then continue driving.
4. If the high temperature indicator stays on, turn off the engine.

*CONTINUED*






## If the Engine Overheats

5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 428).
6. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.
7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the high temperature indicator goes off before checking the radiator.

### **WARNING**

**Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.**

**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap anticlockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.
9. Start the engine, and set the temperature to maximum heat (climate control to AUTO at “”). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the

proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.

10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the high temperature indicator. If it begins to blink or comes on again, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 428).
11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.






## Low Oil Pressure Indicator



This indicator should come on when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, and go out after the engine starts. It should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible and you should take immediate action.

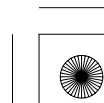
You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with an “OIL PRESSURE LOW” message on the multi-information display.

### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

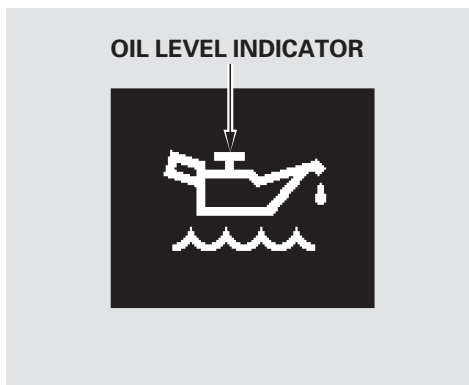
1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the bonnet, and check the oil level (see page 260). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving manoeuvres.


3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to between the upper and lower mark on the dipstick.
4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 428).





## Oil Level Indicator



Your vehicle has an engine oil level sensor to check the oil level. If the symbol “” for the oil level indicator comes on in the multi-information display when the engine is running, the engine oil level is low. You will also hear a beep when this symbol comes on. If you select the warning symbol with the message(s) in the customizing settings, you will see this symbol with a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message on the multi-information display.

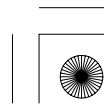
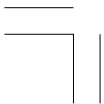
If this symbol comes on, safely pull off the road, park the vehicle on level ground, turn off the engine and let the vehicle sit for approximately 3 minutes.

Check the oil level. If the engine oil level is near or below the lower mark on the dipstick, you should add the engine oil (see page 328 ).

Do not fill above the upper mark on the dipstick and do not spill the engine oil in the engine compartment. This could damage the engine and other components.

If you do not carry spare engine oil in your vehicle, drive moderately to the nearest service area and add engine oil. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

The oil level symbol/message display can be reset each time you turn off the engine. When you start your trip again, the system begins to monitor the engine oil level. It may take a while until the system senses the engine oil level is low and the symbol, or the symbol with a message appear on the multi-information display. You should check the engine oil level and add engine oil before driving again if the oil level symbol, or the symbol with a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message comes on.





## Oil Level Indicator


### NOTICE

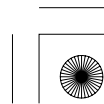
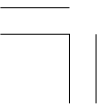
If you ignore the oil level symbol/message and keep driving with this symbol/message on, you can seriously damage the engine.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

### Oil Level Sensor Failure



If the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message appears on the multi-information display when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor. You will also hear a beep. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.






## Charging System Indicator

---

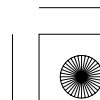
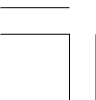


This indicator should come on when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, and go out after the engine starts. If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a dealer or a service station where you can get technical assistance.






## Malfunction Indicator Lamp



This indicator comes on, then goes out when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If the indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If this indicator comes on, safely pull off the road and turn off the engine. Restart the engine and watch the indicator. If it stays on, have your vehicle checked by the dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

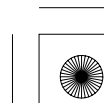
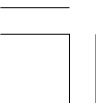
You should also have the dealer inspect your vehicle if the indicator comes on frequently, even though it goes off when you follow the above procedure.

### NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on with the “D” indicator.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on for about 20 seconds. It then goes off or blinks 5 times under various conditions. This is normal: it shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics for the emissions control systems.





## PGM-FI Warning



If you see this symbol or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display while the engine running, there is a problem with the engine control system. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If this symbol or the symbol with a message is displayed, safely pull off the road and turn off the engine. Restart and turn off the engine at least three times at intervals of approximately 30 seconds, then watch the multi-information display. If it appears again, have your vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

You should also have the dealer inspect your vehicle if this symbol “PGM-FI” appears on the multi-information display frequently, even though it goes off when you follow the above procedure.

### NOTICE

If you keep driving with the symbol “PGM-FI” on, you can damage your vehicle’s emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle’s warranties.

This symbol or the symbol with a message may also appear if you do not use the proper fuel for the climate or regional conditions. This may cause the engine power to reduce (see page 258 ).






## Brake System Indicator




The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and as a reminder to check the parking brake. It will stay on if you do not fully release the parking brake.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display.


If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 335 ).

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” message on the multi-information display.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system’s dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed, and repaired as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 428 ).

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display if there is a problem with the brake system or the front-to-rear braking distribution system.

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

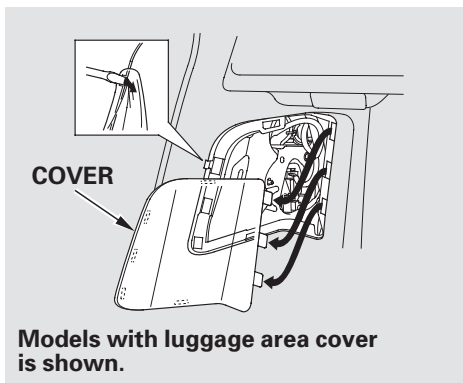
If the ABS indicator comes on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.



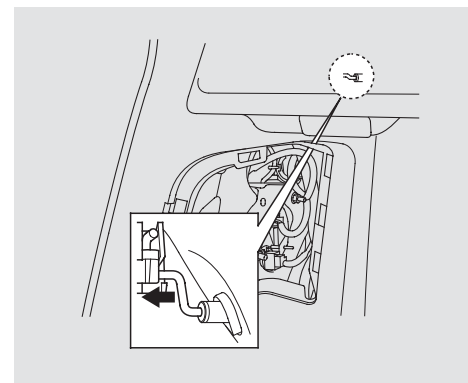


## Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually

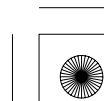
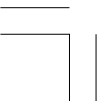
If there is a problem with the power door lock system and you cannot unlock the driver's door, use the release lever behind the left side cover in the luggage area.



1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover to prevent scratches. Remove it by carefully prying in the notch on its middle edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.



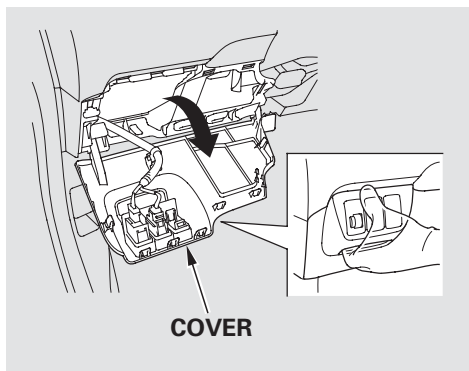
2. To open the fuel fill door, pull the release lever rearward.





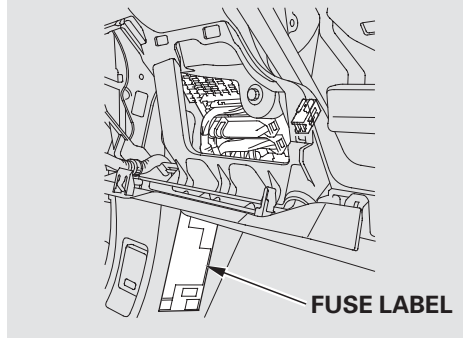
## Fuses

The vehicle's fuses are located in two fuse boxes.



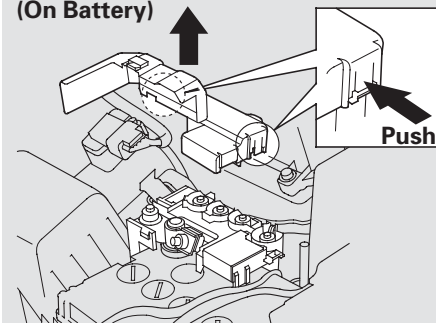
The interior fuse box is under the dashboard on the driver's side. To access the fuse box, pull the cover toward you.

### INTERIOR

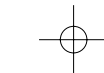


The fuse label is attached to the side panel.

### UNDER-BONNET (On Battery)



The under-bonnet fuse is on the positive terminal of the battery. To open it, push the tabs as shown.



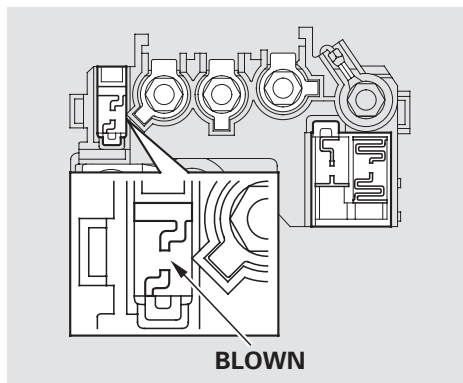


## Fuses

### Checking and Replacing Fuses

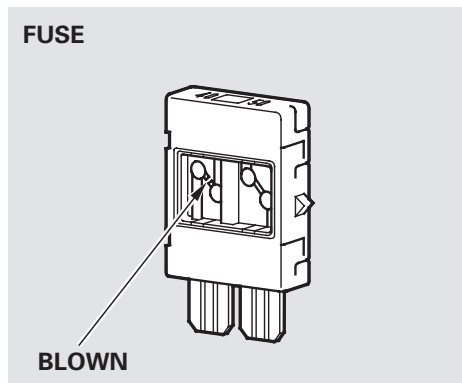
If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 425 – 427 , or the diagram on the fuse box lid or the fuse label, which fuse or fuses control that component. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is not the cause. Replace any blown fuses and check if the device works.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.
2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.

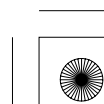


3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-bonnet fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside.

Replacement of these fuses should be done by your dealer.

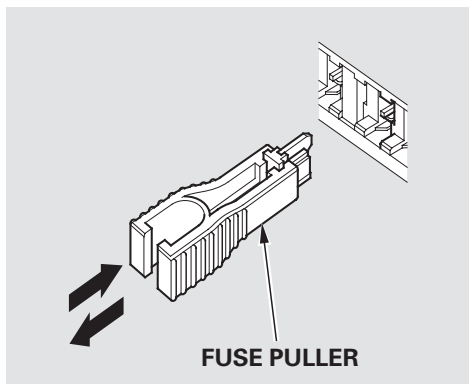


4. Check each of the large fuses in the interior fuse box by looking at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.

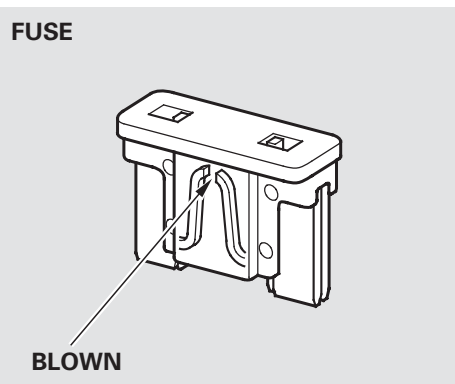




## Fuses



5. Check the smaller fuses in the interior fuse box by pulling out each one with the fuse puller provided in the interior fuse box.

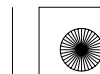


6. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate that anything is wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

*CONTINUED*





## Fuses

---

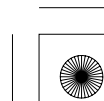
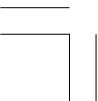
### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

7. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

### *On vehicles with audio system*

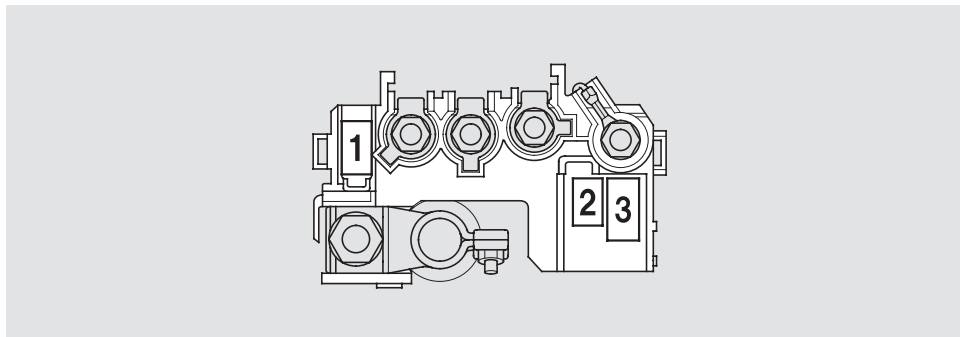
When the audio system is disabled, the clock setting in the audio system will be cancelled. You will need to reset the clock according to the instructions in the audio system section in this owner's manual.





## Fuse Locations

### UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX

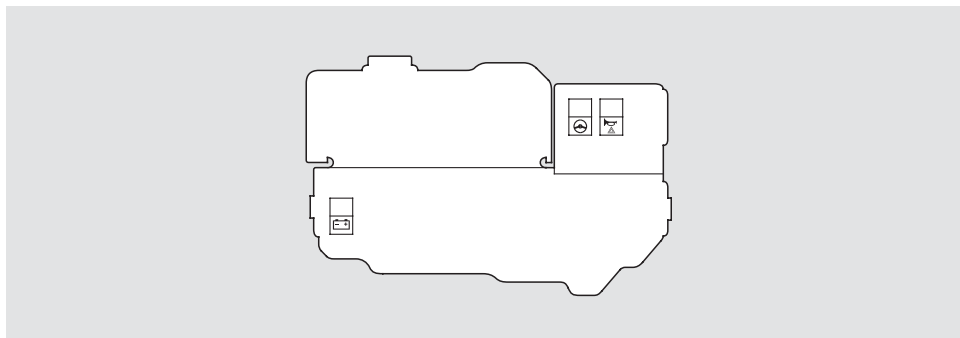


The locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table below for the fuses on your vehicle.

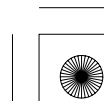
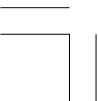
Replacement of these fuses should be done by your dealer.

No.	Circuits Protected
1	ACG
2	EPS
3	Horn, Stop

### FUSE BOX LABEL



*CONTINUED*



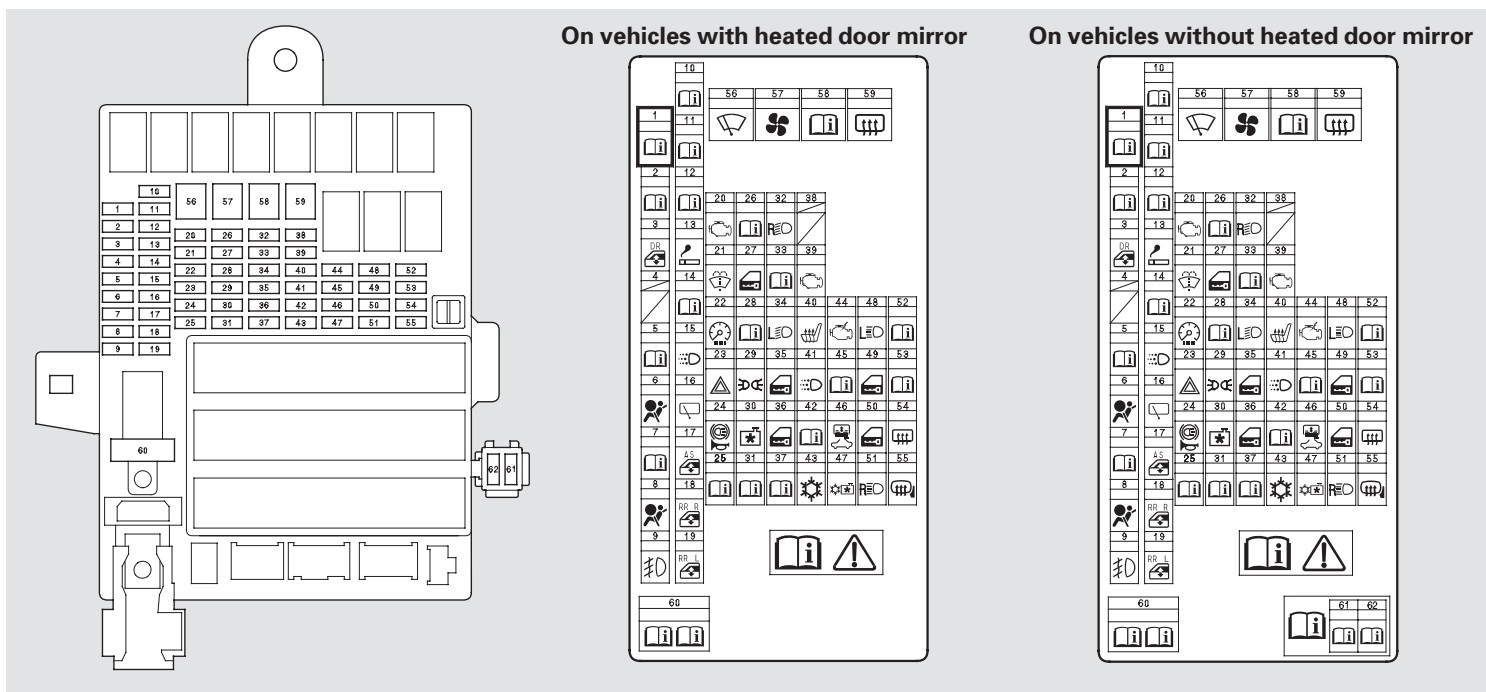


## Fuse Locations

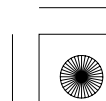
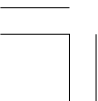
The fuses contained in the interior fuse box vary slightly depending on models. The locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label.

### INTERIOR FUSE BOX

### FUSE BOX LABEL



### 426 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Fuse Locations

Refer to the table on this page for the fuses on your vehicle.

No.	Circuits Protected
1	Back Up
2	Rear Fog Light
3	Driver's Power Window
4	Not Used
5	Back-up Light
6	SRS
7	MISS SOL*
8	Not Used
9	Front Fog Light*
10	Heater, Air Conditioning*
11	ABS
12	ACG
13	Accessory Power Socket
14	ACC
15	DAY LT*
16	Rear Wiper
17	Front Passenger's Power Window
18	Rear Right Power Window*
19	Rear Left Power Window*
20	Fuel Pump

No.	Circuits Protected
21	Washer Motor
22	Meter
23	Hazard
24	Horn, Stop
25	Not Used
26	LAF
27	Door Lock (Main)
28	Not Used
29	Small Light
30	Radiator Fan
31	Oil Level Sensor
32	Right Headlight Low
33	Ignition Coil
34	Left Headlight Low
35	Door Lock Motor 2 (Lock)
36	Door Lock Motor 1 (Lock)
37	ABS FSR/VSA FSR
38	Not Used
39	IGP
40	Heated Seat*
41	Daytime Running Lights*
42	Not Used
43	MG Clutch

No.	Circuits Protected
44	STS*
45	Super Locking*
46	Sunshade*
47	Condenser Fan
48	Left Headlight High
49	Door Lock Motor 2 (Unlock)
50	Door Lock Motor 1 (Unlock)
51	Right Headlight High
52	DBW
53	Not Used
54	Rear Demister 2
55	Heated Door Mirror*
56	Front Wiper
57	Heater
58	ABS Motor
59	Rear Demister 1
60	Not Used
	Ignition
61	ST MG*
62	Starter Cut*

\* : For some types





## Emergency Towing

---

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

There are three popular types of professional towing equipment.

***Flat-bed Equipment*** — The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

***Wheel-lift Equipment*** — The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The other two rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

***Sling-type Equipment*** — The tow truck uses metal cables with hooks on the ends. These hooks go around parts of the frame or suspension and the cables lift that end of the vehicle off the ground. Your vehicle's suspension and body can be seriously damaged. **This method of towing is unacceptable.**

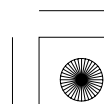
If, due to damage, your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do the following:

*Manual transmission:*

- Shift the transmission to neutral.
- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.

*Automatic transmission:*

- Start the engine.
- Shift to the D position and hold for 5 seconds, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.
- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.





## Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km (50 miles), and keep the speed below 55 km/h (35 mph).

If your vehicle is equipped with a front spoiler, remove it before towing so it is not damaged.

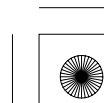
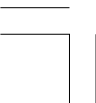
### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

If you decide to tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, make sure you use a properly-designed and attached tow bar. Prepare the vehicle for towing as described above, and leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock. Make sure the radio and any electrical accessories are turned off so they do not run down the battery.

### NOTICE

The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.

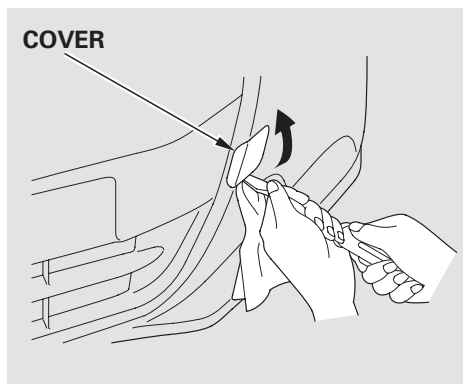




## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

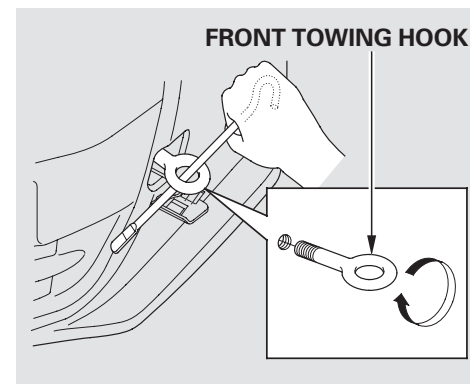
If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow, call a towing service to pull it out (see page 428).

For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on either anchor in the front or rear bumper.



To use the towing hook:

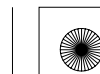
1. Take the towing hook and the extension out of the tool kit in the luggage area.
2. Put a cloth on the edge of the cover to prevent scratches. Remove the cover from the front bumper by using the flat-tip end of the extension.



3. Screw the towing hook into the bolt hole behind the bumper, then tighten the hook securely with the extension.

### NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. The tow hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.



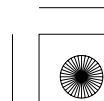
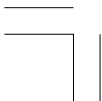


## Technical Information

---

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle, and the locations of the identification numbers.

Identification Numbers.....	432
Specifications .....	434
Three Way Catalytic Converters .....	438



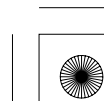
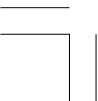
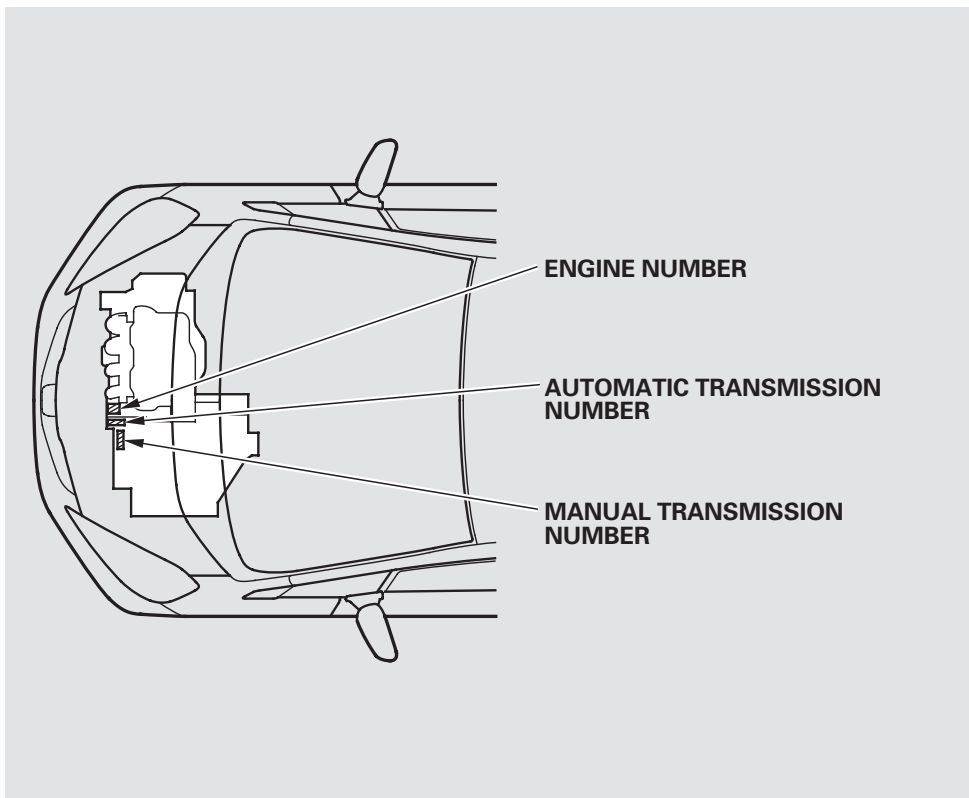


## Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers located in various places.

1. The chassis number is stamped on the fire wall.
2. The engine number is stamped into the engine block.
3. The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.

Do not mistake the transmission number for the engine number.



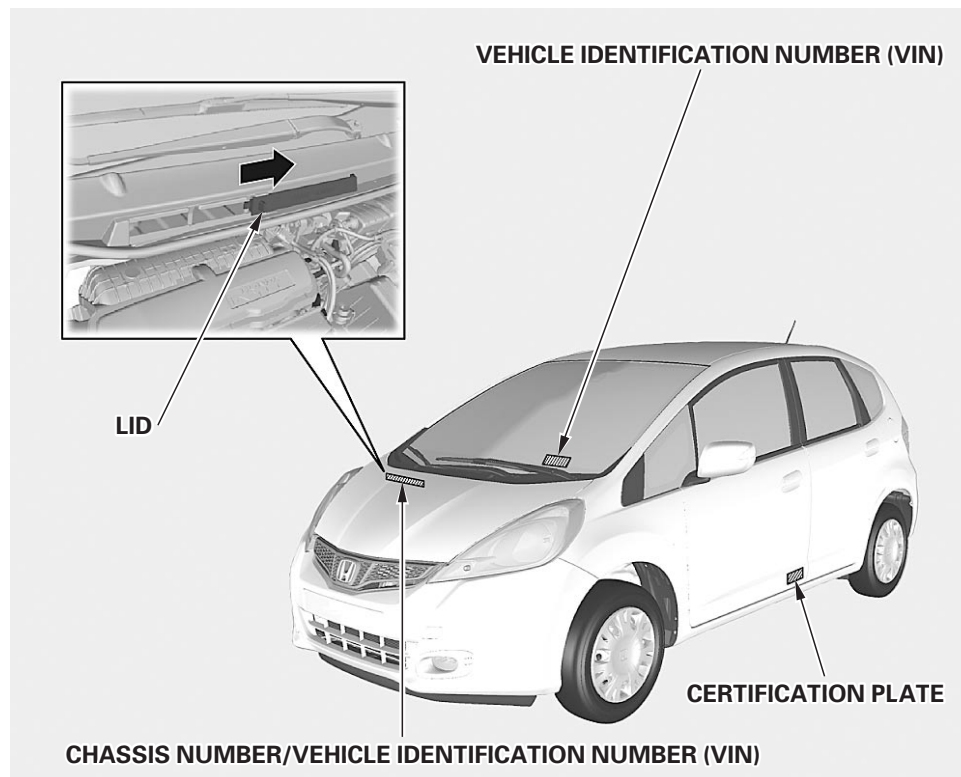


## Identification Numbers

The vehicle identification number (VIN) or the chassis number is moulded on the fire wall in the engine compartment. To access this number, slide the lid on the back of the engine compartment. Make sure to close this lid before closing the bonnet.

The certification plate is attached to the doorjamb on the left side.

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) appears on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard.





## Specifications

### Dimensions

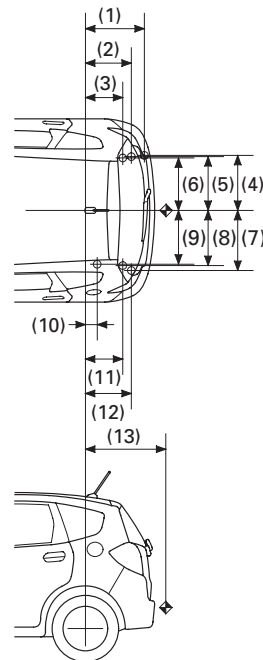
Length		3,900 mm (153.5 in)
Width		1,695 mm (66.7 in)
Height		1,525 mm (60.0 in) 1,655 mm (65.2 in)* <sup>1</sup>
Wheelbase		2,495 mm (98.2 in)
Track	Front	1,495 mm (58.9 in)* <sup>2</sup> 1,480 mm (58.3 in)* <sup>3</sup>
	Rear	1,475 mm (58.1 in)* <sup>2</sup> 1,460 mm (57.5 in)* <sup>3</sup>

\* 1 : With Roof Antenna

\* 2 : For tyre type 175/65R15 84H, 175/65R15 84T

\* 3 : For tyre type 185/55R16 83H, 185/55R16 83T

### The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device



No.	Dimensions
(1)	529 mm (20.8 in)*
(2)	433 mm (17.0 in)*
(3)	361 mm (14.2 in)*
(4)	495 mm (19.5 in)*
(5)	485 mm (19.1 in)*
(6)	478 mm (18.8 in)*
(7)	537 mm (21.1 in)*
(8)	488 mm (19.2 in)*
(9)	485 mm (19.1 in)*
(10)	129 mm (5.1 in)*
(11)	361 mm (14.2 in)*
(12)	432 mm (17.0 in)*
(13)	744 mm (29.3 in)

\* : The value is at unladen weight condition.

### NOTE:

1. ○ marks show towbar fixing points.

2. ◆ mark shows towbar coupling point.





## Specifications

### Weights

Curb weight		
Manual transmission		
1.2 l engine		1,047 – 1,070 kg (2,308 – 2,359 lbs)
1.34 l engine		1,051 – 1,112 kg (2,317 – 2,452 lbs)
Automatic transmission		1,079 – 1,140 kg (2,379 – 2,513 lbs)
Max. permissible weight <sup>*1</sup>		
1.2 l engine		1,580 kg (3,483 lbs)
1.34 l engine	M/T	1,610 kg (3,549 lbs)
	CVT	1,535 kg (3,384 lbs)
Max. permissible axle weight <sup>*1</sup>		
(Front)	1.2 l engine	820 kg (1,808 lbs)
	1.34 l engine	M/T 830 kg (1,830 lbs)
		CVT 840 kg (1,852 lbs)
(Rear)	1.2 l engine	840 kg (1,852 lbs)
	1.34 l engine	M/T 860 kg (1,896 lbs)
		CVT 705 kg (1,554 lbs)
Max. towing weight <sup>*2, *3, *4</sup>		
Trailer with brakes		1,000 kg (2,205 lbs)
Trailer without brakes		450 kg (992 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device <sup>*4</sup>		95 kg (209 lbs)

### Engine

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder gasoline engine	
Bore x Stroke	1.2 l engine	73 x 71.58 mm (2.87 x 2.82 in)
	1.34 l engine	73 x 80 mm (2.87 x 3.15 in)
Displacement	1.2 l engine	1,198 cm <sup>3</sup> (73.1 cu-in)
	1.34 l engine	1,339 cm <sup>3</sup> (82.0 cu-in)
Compression ratio	1.2 l engine	10.8 : 1 <sup>*5</sup>
	1.34 l engine	10.5 : 1 <sup>*6</sup>
Spark plug	NGK: DIFR6D13	
	NGK: DIFR6D13D <sup>*7</sup>	

<sup>\*3</sup> : The maximum towing weight should be reduced if you tow a trailer over 1,000 meters of elevation. For more information, see page 297.

<sup>\*4</sup> : If applicable

<sup>\*5</sup> : For engine type: L12B1, L12B2

<sup>\*6</sup> : For engine type: L13Z1, L13Z2

<sup>\*7</sup> : 1.2 LPG, 1.4 LPG only

<sup>\*1</sup> : See the plate attached to the driver's doorjamb or ask dealer for information.

<sup>\*2</sup> : The following is for Germany only.

The maximum trailer weight is valid for 12% slope. For an increasing of the trailer weight you have to look in your vehicle paper or ask your next dealer.





## Specifications

### Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 42 ℓ (11.1 US gal , 9.2 Imp gal)
Engine coolant	
Manual transmission Change* <sup>1</sup>	4.42 ℓ (1.168 US gal , 0.972 Imp gal) * <sup>2</sup> 4.46 ℓ (1.178 US gal , 0.981 Imp gal) * <sup>3</sup> 4.58 ℓ (1.210 US gal , 1.008 Imp gal) * <sup>4</sup>
Total	4.91 ℓ (1.297 US gal , 1.080 Imp gal) * <sup>2</sup> 4.95 ℓ (1.308 US gal , 1.089 Imp gal) * <sup>3</sup> 5.07 ℓ (1.339 US gal , 1.115 Imp gal) * <sup>4</sup>
Automatic transmission	
Change* <sup>1</sup>	4.54 ℓ (1.199 US gal , 0.999 Imp gal) * <sup>2</sup> 4.48 ℓ (1.184 US gal , 0.986 Imp gal) * <sup>3</sup> 4.71 ℓ (1.244 US gal , 1.036 Imp gal) * <sup>4</sup>
Total	5.03 ℓ (1.329 US gal , 1.107 Imp gal) * <sup>2</sup> 4.97 ℓ (1.313 US gal , 1.093 Imp gal) * <sup>3</sup> 5.20 ℓ (1.374 US gal , 1.144 Imp gal) * <sup>4</sup>
Engine oil	
Change* <sup>5</sup>	
Including filter	3.6 ℓ (3.8 US qt , 3.2 Imp qt)
Without filter	3.4 ℓ (3.6 US qt , 3.0 Imp qt)
Total	4.2 ℓ (4.4 US qt , 3.7 Imp qt)

\* 1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine.

Reserve tank capacity: 0.44 ℓ (0.116 US gal , 0.097 Imp gal)

\* 2 : VIN numbers beginning JHM

\* 3 : VIN numbers beginning LUC

\* 4 : VIN numbers beginning SHH

\* 5 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

### Capacities

Manual transmission fluid	Change Total	1.5 ℓ (1.6 US qt , 1.3 Imp qt) 1.6 ℓ (1.7 US qt , 1.4 Imp qt)
Automatic transmission fluid (CVTF)	Change Total	2.8 ℓ (3.0 US qt , 2.5 Imp qt) 6.15 ℓ (6.50 US qt , 5.41 Imp qt)
Windscreen washer reservoir		2.5 ℓ (2.6 US qt , 2.2 Imp qt)

### Tyres

Size/Pressure	See tyre information label on driver's doorjamb or ask dealer for information.
---------------	--

### Alignment

Toe-in	Front Rear	0 ± 3 mm (0 ± 0.12 in) in 2.5 ± 2.5 mm (0.10 ± 0.10 in)
Camber	Front Rear	0°2' ± 1° -1° ± 1°
Caster	Front	3°42' ± 1°

### Suspension

Type	Front Rear	Mcpherson Strut Torsion beam axle
------	---------------	--------------------------------------

### Steering

Type	Rack and pinion, with electrical power assistance
------	---

## 436 Technical Information





## Specifications

### Clutch

Type	Dry, single plate, diaphragm spring
------	-------------------------------------

### Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Mechanical

### Battery

Capacity	12 V — 28 AH/5 HR 12 V — 35 AH/20 HR 12 V — 32 AH/5 HR * <sup>1</sup> 12 V — 40 AH/20 HR * <sup>1</sup>
----------	--

### Fuses

Interior	See page 426 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door under the steering column.
Under-bonnet	See page 425 or the fuse box cover.

### Jack

Type	Honda Type-A or Type-D
------	------------------------

\* 1 : For some types

### Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	80 ± 5 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	91.5 ± 5 dB (A)

### Lights

Headlights	12 V — 60/55 W
Front turn signal lights	12 V — 21 W (Amber)
Front position lights	12 V — 5 W
Side turn signal lights (fender)* <sup>2</sup>	12 V — 5 W
Side turn signal lights (door mirror)* <sup>2</sup>	LED type* <sup>3</sup>
Rear turn signal lights	12 V — 21 W (Amber)
Stop/tail-lights	LED type* <sup>3</sup>
Back-up lights	12 V — 16 W
Front fog lights* <sup>2</sup>	12 V — 55 W (H11)
Rear fog light	12 V — 21 W
Licence plate lights	12 V — 5 W
High-mount brake light	LED type* <sup>3</sup>
Spotlights* <sup>2</sup>	12 V — 8 W
Ceiling light Rear	12 V — 8 W
Luggage area light	12 V — 5 W

\* 2 : For some types

\* 3 : Replacement of a light bulb should be done by your dealer.



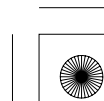
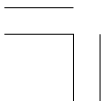


## Three Way Catalytic Converters

---

The three way catalytic converters must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. They can set on fire any combustible materials that come near them. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.

Always use unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded petrol can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converters ineffective.





## Index

### A

AAC ..... 222  
Accessories and Modifications .... 265  
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key  
    Position) ..... 139  
Adding Engine Coolant..... 330  
Additives, Engine Oil..... 328  
Airbag (SRS) ..... 13, 30  
Air Cleaner Element..... 337  
Air Conditioning System..... 185, 190  
    Maintenance..... 352  
    Usage ..... 185, 190  
Air Outlets (Vents) ..... 182  
Air Pressure, Tyres ..... 361  
Aluminium Wheels, Cleaning ..... 377  
Antenna..... 378  
Antifreeze ..... 330  
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)  
    Indicator Lights ..... 84, 289  
    Operation ..... 289  
Anti-theft Steering Column  
    Lock..... 139  
Appearance Care ..... 375  
Audio System ..... 195  
Automatic Intermittent Wipers.... 125

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners .... 27  
Auxiliary Input Jack..... 232

### B

Battery  
    Charging System  
        Indicator..... 83, 416  
    Jump Starting ..... 410  
    Maintenance..... 368  
    Replacing ..... 370  
    Specifications ..... 437  
Before Driving ..... 257  
Belts, Seat ..... 11, 23  
Beverage Holders ..... 171  
Bonnet, Opening the ..... 260  
Brakes  
    Anti-lock System (ABS) ..... 289  
    Break-in, New Linings ..... 258  
    Bulb Replacement ..... 344  
    Fluid ..... 335  
    Parking..... 168  
    System Indicator..... 84, 419  
    Wear Indicators ..... 288  
Braking System..... 288  
Break-in, New Vehicle ..... 258

Brightness Control,  
    Instruments ..... 132  
Bulb Replacement  
    Back-up Lights ..... 344  
    Brake Lights..... 344  
    Front Fog Lights..... 347  
    Front Position Lights ..... 344  
    Front Turn Signal Lights..... 343  
    Headlights ..... 341  
    High-mount Brake Light ..... 340  
    Interior Lights..... 349  
    Licence Plate Lights..... 346  
    Luggage Area Light ..... 350  
    Rear Fog Light..... 344  
    Rear Turn Signal Lights ..... 344  
    Side Turn Signal Lights  
        (Fender)..... 345  
    Specifications ..... 437  
    Stop/tail-lights..... 344  
Bulbs, Halogen..... 341, 347

### C

Capacities Chart..... 436

*CONTINUED*





## Index

Carbon Monoxide Hazard ..... 73  
Cargo Floor Box ..... 178  
Carrying Luggage..... 267  
Catalytic Converter ..... 438  
CAUTION, Explanation of ..... iii  
CD Care ..... 228  
CD Player..... 206  
CD Player Error Messages ..... 212  
Ceiling Light..... 179  
Certification Plate ..... 433  
Chains, Tyres ..... 366  
Changing a Flat Tyre ..... 385  
Changing Oil  
    When to ..... 307, 319  
Charging System Indicator .... 83, 416  
Chassis Number ..... 432, 433  
Checklist, Before Driving ..... 272  
Child Restraint Systems ..... 54, 56  
    Lower Anchorages ..... 59  
    Tether Anchor Points ..... 67  
Child Restraint Systems for EU..... 57  
Child Safety ..... 43  
    Booster Seats ..... 70  
    Child Restraint Systems ..... 54, 56  
    Important Safety  
        Reminders ..... 43, 48

Infants ..... 50  
Larger Children ..... 69  
Lower Anchorages ..... 59  
Risks with Airbags..... 44, 47  
Small Children..... 52  
Tethers..... 67  
    Where Should a Child Sit? ..... 44  
Cleaner Element, Air ..... 337  
Cleaning  
    Air Fresheners..... 381  
    Aluminium Wheels..... 377  
    Exterior ..... 376  
    Floor Mats ..... 379  
    Interior ..... 379  
    Leather ..... 380  
    Roof Antenna ..... 378  
    Seat Belts..... 381  
    Vinyl ..... 380  
    Windows ..... 380  
Climate Control System..... 190  
Clock ..... 233  
Clutch Fluid..... 335  
Coat Hook..... 174  
Cold Weather, Starting in ..... 273  
Compact Spare Tyre..... 384  
Controls, Instruments and..... 77

Coolant  
    Adding..... 330  
    Checking..... 262  
    Proper Solution ..... 330  
    Temperature Indicators..... 89  
Cool Box..... 171  
Corrosion Protection ..... 382  
Cruise Control Indicator ..... 83  
Cruise Control Operation ..... 235  
Cup Holders..... 171  
Customized Settings..... 102

## D

DANGER, Explanation of ..... iii  
Dashboard ..... 2, 78  
Daytime Running Lights..... 129  
Dead Battery ..... 409  
Default Settings ..... 102, 120  
Defrosting the Windows..... 188, 192  
Demister, Rear Window ..... 133  
Detachable Anchor..... 158  
Dimensions..... 434  
Dimming the Headlights ..... 128  
Dipstick, Engine Oil ..... 261  
Directional Signals..... 128





## Index

Disc Brake Pad Wear  
  Indicators..... 288  
Disc Player..... 206  
Doors  
  Locking and Unlocking..... 140  
  Power Door Locks..... 140  
  Super Locking..... 141  
Driver and Passenger Safety..... 7  
Driving ..... 271  
  Economy ..... 264  
  In Bad Weather..... 294  
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 353

### E

Economy, Fuel ..... 264  
Electric Power Steering (EPS)  
  Indicator..... 86  
  Symbol ..... 100  
Emergencies..... 383  
  Battery, Jump Starting ..... 409  
  Brake System Indicator ..... 419  
  Changing a Flat Tyre ..... 385  
  Charging System Indicator ..... 416  
  Checking the Fuses..... 421

Fuel Fill Door,  
  Opening Manually ..... 420  
Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 133  
Honda TRK ..... 392  
Jump Starting ..... 409  
Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 413  
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .... 417  
Oil Level Indicator ..... 414  
Overheated Engine ..... 411  
PGM-FI Warning ..... 418  
Towing ..... 428  
Tyre Sealant Kit..... 392  
Emergency Brake ..... 168  
Emergency Flashers ..... 133  
Emergency Towing ..... 428  
Engine  
  Coolant Temperature  
    Indicators..... 89  
  If It Won't Start ..... 407  
  Malfunction Indicator  
    Lamp ..... 82, 417  
  Oil Level Indicator ..... 414  
  Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 83, 413  
  Oil, What Kind to Use ..... 328  
  Overheating..... 411  
  Specifications ..... 435

Starting..... 273  
Engine Coolant..... 262, 330  
Engine Number..... 432  
Error Indications  
  CD Player ..... 212  
  iPod..... 219  
  USB Flash Memory Device..... 227  
Event Data Recorders..... ii  
Exhaust Fumes ..... 73  
Exterior, Cleaning the..... 376

### F

Fabric, Cleaning..... 380  
Fan, Interior ..... 185, 191  
Features ..... 181  
Filling the Fuel Tank..... 259  
Filters  
  Air Cleaner ..... 337  
  Dust and Pollen..... 353  
  Fuel..... 338  
Flashers, Hazard Warning..... 133  
Flat Tyre, Changing a ..... 385  
Flexible Luggage Board ..... 176

*CONTINUED*





## Index

Floor Mats ..... 379  
Fluids  
    Automatic Transmission  
        (CVT) ..... 333  
    Brake ..... 335  
    Clutch ..... 335  
    Manual Transmission ..... 335  
    Windscreen Washers ..... 332  
Folding Door Mirrors ..... 167  
Folding the Rear Seat Up ..... 155  
Folding the Rear Seats Down ..... 156  
Four-way Flashers ..... 133  
Front Seat ..... 149  
    Adjusting ..... 149  
    Airbags ..... 13, 31  
    Armrest ..... 150  
    Heaters ..... 160  
Front Airbags ..... 13, 31  
Front Console Box ..... 173  
Front Fog Light ..... 131  
Fuel ..... 259  
    Cutoff System ..... 263  
    Economy ..... 264  
    Fill Door and Cap ..... 259  
    Filter ..... 338  
    Gauge ..... 91

Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89  
Octane Requirement ..... 258  
Tank, Refueling ..... 259  
Fuses, Checking the ..... 421

### G

Gauges ..... 90  
    Fuel ..... 91  
    Speedometer ..... 91  
    Tachometer ..... 91  
Gearshift Lever Positions  
    Automatic Transmission  
        (CVT) ..... 277  
    Manual Transmission ..... 274  
Glass Cleaning ..... 380  
Glove Box ..... 170

### H

Halogen Headlight Bulbs ..... 341  
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)  
    System ..... 238  
Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 133  
Head Restraints ..... 151  
Headlight Adjuster ..... 134

Headlights  
    Aiming ..... 341  
    Automatic Lighting ..... 129  
    Daytime Running Lights ..... 129  
    High Beam Indicator ..... 88  
    Lights On Indicator ..... 88  
    Low Beams, Turning on ..... 128  
    Reminder Beeper ..... 128  
    Replacing Halogen  
        Bulbs ..... 341, 347  
    Turning on ..... 128  
Heated Mirrors ..... 167  
Heaters, Seat ..... 160  
Heating and Cooling ..... 184  
High Altitude, Starting at ..... 273  
High-Low Beam Switch ..... 128  
High-mount Brake Light ..... 340  
Honda TRK ..... 392  
Horn ..... 3, 122  
Hydraulic Clutch ..... 335

### I

Identification Number, Vehicle.... 432





## Index

Ignition  
  Keys..... 136  
  Switch..... 139  
Immobilizer System..... 138  
Important Safety Precautions ..... 8  
Indicators/Symbols ..... 82, 100  
  ABS (Anti-lock Brake) ..... 84, 289  
  Brake (Parking and Brake  
    System) ..... 84, 419  
  Charging System ..... 83, 416  
  Cruise Control..... 83  
  Door and Tailgate Open ..... 83  
  EPS..... 86  
  High Beam..... 88  
  High Temperature..... 89  
  Key (Immobilizer System) ..... 83  
  Lights On ..... 88  
  Low Fuel ..... 89  
  Low Oil Pressure ..... 83, 413  
  Low Temperature ..... 89  
  Malfunction Indicator  
    Lamp ..... 82, 417  
  Oil Level..... 414  
  Passenger Front Airbag Off..... 41  
  PGM-FI ..... 418  
  Seat Belt..... 82

Service Reminder ..... 307  
Shift Up/Down..... 276  
SRS ..... 85  
System Message ..... 85  
Turn Signal and Hazard  
  Warning ..... 88  
VSA..... 87, 291  
VSA Activation..... 87, 291  
Indicator Lights, Instrument  
  Panel..... 80  
Infant Restraint ..... 50  
  Passenger Front Airbag Off  
    System..... 33  
Infants Seats ..... 50  
  Lower Anchorages ..... 59  
  Tether Anchor Points ..... 67  
Inflation, Proper Tyre ..... 361  
Inside Mirror ..... 166  
Inspection, Tyre ..... 362  
Instrument Panel ..... 80, 81  
Instrument Panel Brightness ..... 132  
Interior Cleaning..... 379  
Interior Lights ..... 179  
Introduction ..... i  
iPod..... 213

### J

Jacking up the Vehicle ..... 385  
Jack, Tyre ..... 386  
Jump Starting ..... 409

### K

Keys..... 136

### L

Label, Certification ..... 433  
Lane Change, Signaling ..... 128  
Language Selection ..... 118  
Lap/Shoulder Belts ..... 18, 26  
Leather, Cleaning ..... 380  
Lights  
  Bulb Replacement ..... 341  
  Indicator ..... 88  
  Position ..... 128  
  Turn Signal ..... 128  
Load Limits..... 296, 435  
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) ..... 139

*CONTINUED*





## Index

Locks  
  Anti-theft Steering Column ..... 139  
  Door, Childproof ..... 142  
  Fuel Fill Door ..... 259  
  Power Door Locks ..... 140  
  Super Locking ..... 141  
  Tailgate ..... 147  
Low Coolant Level ..... 262  
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89  
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .... 83, 413  
Lower Anchorages ..... 59  
Lower Gear,  
  Downshifting to a ..... 274  
Lower Glove Box ..... 170  
Lubricant Specifications  
  Chart ..... 436  
Luggage Area Cover ..... 161  
Luggage Hooks ..... 270  
Luggage, How to Carry ..... 268  
Luggage, Storing ..... 267

### M

Maintenance ..... 305  
  Owner Maintenance Checks .... 325  
  Record ..... 323, 324

Safety ..... 306  
Schedule ..... 318-322  
Service Reminder System ..... 307  
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .. 82, 417  
Manual Transmission ..... 274  
Manual Transmission Fluid ..... 335  
Maximum Permissible Weight .... 435  
Meters, Gauges ..... 80, 90  
Mirrors ..... 166  
  Adjusting ..... 166  
  Folding ..... 167  
  Heated ..... 167  
Modifying Your Vehicle ..... 266  
MP3 ..... 207, 221  
Multi-Information Display ..... 92

### N

Neutral (N) Position ..... 279  
New Vehicle Break-in ..... 258  
NOTICE, Explanation of ..... i  
Numbers, Identification ..... 432, 433

### O

Octane Requirement, Petrol ..... 258

Odometer ..... 96  
Odometer, Trip ..... 96  
Oil  
  Change, When to ..... 307, 318, 319  
  Checking Engine ..... 261  
  Level Indicator ..... 414  
  Pressure Indicator ..... 83, 413  
  Selecting Proper Viscosity  
    Chart ..... 328  
ON (Ignition Key Position) ..... 139  
One-push Turn Signal ..... 128  
Opening the Bonnet ..... 260  
Opening the Fuel Fill Door  
  Manually ..... 420  
Opening the Tailgate ..... 147  
Outside Mirrors ..... 166  
Outside Temperature Indicator .... 97  
Overheating, Engine ..... 411  
Owner's Maintenance Checks .... 325

### P

Paddle Shifters ..... 282  
Paint Touch-up ..... 378  
Panel Brightness Control ..... 132  
Parking ..... 287





## Index

Parking Brake ..... 168  
Parking Brake and Brake  
System Indicator ..... 84, 419  
Parking Over Things That  
Burn..... 287  
Passenger Front Airbag Off  
System..... 33  
Indicator ..... 41  
Petrol ..... 258  
Filling the Fuel Tank..... 259  
Filter ..... 338  
Fuel Economy ..... 264  
Gauge ..... 91  
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89  
Octane Requirement ..... 258  
Refueling..... 259  
PGM-FI Warning ..... 418  
Polishing and Waxing ..... 377  
Pollen Filter ..... 353  
Position Lights ..... 128  
Power Door Locks ..... 140  
Power Windows ..... 162  
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts ..... 21  
Proper Seat Belt Usage..... 18  
Protecting Adults and Teens..... 15  
Additional Safety Precautions.... 21

Advice for Pregnant Women..... 21  
Protecting Children ..... 43  
Protecting Infants..... 50  
Protecting Larger Children ..... 69  
Protecting Small Children ..... 52  
Using Child Restraints with  
Tethers..... 67  
Using Lower Anchorages..... 59

### R

Radiator Overheating..... 411  
RDS..... 198  
Rear Fog Light..... 130, 131  
Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement... 344  
Rear Seats, Folding ..... 155, 156  
Rear View Mirror..... 166  
Rear Window Demister ..... 133  
Rear Window Wiper and  
Washer..... 127  
Reclining the Seat Backs ..... 149  
Reminder Indicators..... 80  
Remote Audio Controls..... 231  
Remote Transmitter ..... 143  
Replacement Information  
Air Cleaner Element..... 337

Battery ..... 370  
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 353  
Fuel Filter ..... 338  
Fuses ..... 421  
Light Bulbs ..... 339  
Schedule ..... 318, 319  
Service Reminder System..... 307  
Spark Plugs..... 435  
Tyres ..... 364  
Wiper Blades..... 357  
Replacing Seat Belts After a  
Crash ..... 28  
Reserve Tank, Engine  
Coolant..... 262, 330  
Restraint, Child ..... 43  
Reverse (R) Position ..... 279  
Roof Antenna ..... 378  
Roof Rack ..... 269  
Rotation, Tyre ..... 363

### S

Safety Belts..... 11, 26

*CONTINUED*





## Index

- |  |                                      |                                       |
|--|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Safety Features..... 10                | Side Airbags ..... 13, 38            | How Your Front Airbags                |
| Airbags..... 13                        | How Your Side Airbags Work.... 38    | Work..... 31                          |
| Seat Belts ..... 11                    | Risks to Children ..... 47           | How Your Side Airbags                 |
| Safety Labels, Location of ..... 74    | Side Curtain Airbags ..... 14, 39    | Work..... 38                          |
| Safety Messages..... iii               | Signaling Turns..... 128             | SRS Components ..... 30               |
| Seat Belts ..... 11, 26                | Snow Tyres..... 365                  | SRS Service..... 41                   |
| Additional Information..... 23         | Solvent-type Cleaners..... 376       | SRS Indicator..... 40, 85             |
| Automatic Seat Belt                    | Sound System..... 195                | START (Ignition Key Position) ... 139 |
| Tensioners..... 27                     | Spare Tyre ..... 384, 385            | Starting the Engine..... 273          |
| Cleaning..... 381                      | Compact..... 384                     | In Cold Weather at High               |
| Detachable Anchor..... 158             | Inflating..... 385                   | Altitude ..... 273                    |
| Lap/Shoulder Belt..... 18, 26          | Specifications ..... 436             | With a Dead Battery ..... 409         |
| Maintenance..... 28                    | Spark Plugs..... 435                 | Steam Coming from Engine ..... 411    |
| Reminder Indicator and                 | Specifications Charts..... 434       | Steering Wheel                        |
| Beeper..... 23, 82                     | Speed Alarm ..... 105                | Adjustments ..... 135                 |
| Replacement..... 28                    | Speedometer ..... 91                 | Anti-theft Column Lock ..... 139      |
| System Components..... 23              | Speed-sensitive Volume               | Stereo Sound System ..... 195         |
| Use During Pregnancy..... 21           | Compensation (SVC) ..... 205         | Storing Your Vehicle ..... 372        |
| Seat Heaters ..... 160                 | Spotlights ..... 179                 | Sunshade..... 164                     |
| Seat Under Box..... 173                | SRS, Additional Information..... 30  | Sun Visor..... 173                    |
| Seats, Adjusting the..... 149          | Additional Safety Precautions.... 42 | Super Locking ..... 141               |
| Service Intervals ..... 307, 318, 319  | Automatic Seat Belt                  | Supplemental Restraint                |
| Service Reminder System..... 307       | Tensioners..... 27                   | System..... 13, 30                    |
| Service Station Procedures ..... 259   | How the SRS Indicator                | Servicing ..... 41                    |
| Setting the Clock ..... 233            | Works..... 40                        | SRS Indicator..... 40, 85             |
| Shift Up/Shift Down Indicator..... 276 |                                      | System Components..... 30             |





## Index

System Message Indicator ..... 85  
System Warning Symbols,  
Multi-Information  
Display ..... 100, 101

### T

Tachometer ..... 91  
Tailgate ..... 147  
Opening the ..... 147  
Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 383  
Technical Descriptions  
Three Way Catalytic  
Converter ..... 438  
Temperature Indicators ..... 89  
Tether Anchor Points ..... 67  
Three Way Catalytic Converter... 438  
Time, Setting the ..... 233  
Tools, Tyre Changing ..... 386  
Tonneau Cover ..... 161  
Towing  
A Trailer ..... 296  
Emergency Wrecker ..... 428  
Equipment and Accessories  
Weight Limit ..... 296, 298  
Towing Hook ..... 430

Trailer Hitch Mounting Points..... 434  
Trailer Loading ..... 296, 297  
Trailer Towing Tips..... 301  
Transmission  
Checking Fluid Level,  
Automatic ..... 333  
Fluid Selection ..... 334, 335  
Identification Number ..... 432  
Shifting the Automatic ..... 277  
Shifting the Manual ..... 274  
Treadwear ..... 362  
Trip Computer ..... 95  
Trip Meter ..... 96  
Turn Signals ..... 128  
Tyre, How to Change a Flat ..... 385  
Tyres ..... 361  
Air Pressure ..... 361  
Balancing ..... 363  
Chains ..... 366  
Checking Wear ..... 362  
Compact Spare ..... 384  
Inflation ..... 361  
Inspection ..... 362  
Maintenance ..... 363  
Replacing ..... 364  
Rotating ..... 363

Snow ..... 365  
Specifications ..... 365, 436  
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) .. 392

### U

Underside, Cleaning ..... 382  
Unexpected, Taking Care  
of the ..... 383  
Upholstery Cleaning ..... 379  
Upper Glove Box ..... 170  
USB Adapter Cable ..... 215, 223  
USB Flash Memory Device ..... 220

### V

Vanity Mirror ..... 174  
Vehicle Capacity Load ..... 268, 435  
Vehicle Dimensions ..... 434  
Vehicle Identification Number .... 433  
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)  
System ..... 291  
Vehicle Storage ..... 372  
Ventilation ..... 187, 192

*CONTINUED*





## Index

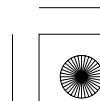
---

VIN ..... 433  
Vinyl Cleaning ..... 380  
Viscosity, Oil..... 328

### W

WARNING, Explanation of ..... iii  
Warning Labels, Location of ..... 74  
Washers, Windscreen  
    Checking the Fluid Level ..... 332  
    Operation ..... 125  
Washing ..... 376  
Waxing and Polishing ..... 377  
Wheels  
    Adjusting the Steering ..... 135  
    Alignment and Balance ..... 363  
    Cleaning Aluminium Alloys..... 377  
    Compact Spare ..... 384  
    Nut Wrench..... 387  
Windows  
    Auto Reverse..... 163  
    Cleaning ..... 380  
    Operating the Power ..... 162  
    Rear, Demister ..... 133

Windscreen  
    Automatic Intermittent  
        Wipers ..... 125  
    Cleaning ..... 380  
    Washers ..... 125  
Winter Tyres ..... 365  
Wipers  
    Changing..... 357  
    Operation ..... 124  
WMA..... 207, 221  
Worn Tyres ..... 362  
Wrecker, Emergency Towing..... 428





10/10/25 19:32:50 32TF0630\_454



## “EC Declaration of Conformity” Content Outline

### Declaration of Conformity

The Council Directive 2006/42/EC Machinery

Declare in sole responsibility that the equipment

Designation of Machinery: Pantograph Jack

Model: SNB, SJD, S2A, SAH

Type: Honda Type-A, Honda Type-B, Honda Type-C, Honda Type-D

Is herewith confirmed to comply with the requirements set out in the Council Directive 2006/42/EC.

For the evaluation of compliance with the directive, the following standards were applied:

EN1494:2000 + A1:2008 according to Annex I of 2006/42/EC.

Technical File Compiler: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Aalst Office wijngaardveld1 (Noord V), 9300 Aalst, Belgium

This declaration is based on:

Third party testing performed by the Notified Body TUV Rheinland, Product Safety GmbH

Registration Number: AM50100492 0001/JAPAN (MODEL SNB, SJD, S2A).

AM50118203 0001/CHINA (MODEL SAH).

TUV Rheinland Technical Report No.: 1213870 001-002/JAPAN.

15025133 001/CHINA



Note: This declaration becomes invalid, if technical or operational modifications are introduced without the manufacturers consent.

Names and Signature:

Type; Honda Type-A, Honda Type-B, Honda Type-C

RIKENKAKI CO.,LTD.

5-6-12 Chiyoda Sakado-shi, Saitama 350-0214 JAPAN

Type; Honda Type-D

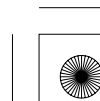
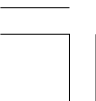
CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO.,LTD.

No.1903 Zhongwu Ave. Zhonglou Changzhou, Jiangsu CHINA

Date and Place:01.12.2009 Saitama/JAPAN

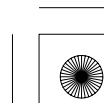
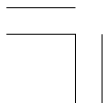


President



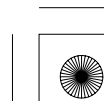
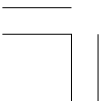
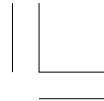


10/10/25 19:32:52 32TF0630\_455





10/10/25 19:32:54 32TF0630\_456





10/10/25 19:32:56 32TF0630\_457

